FRENCH PROSE COMPOSITION.

FRENCH PROSE COMPOSITION

COURSES AND GRAMMARS IN FRENCH AND GERMAN

ISSUED BY

The University Tutorial Press.

THE TUTORIAL FRENCH ACCIDENCE. By Prof. E. WEEKLEY, M.A., Professor of French at University College, Nottingham, late Examiner in the University of London. With Exercises, Passages for Translation into French, and a Chapter on Elementary Syntax. *Fourth Edition.* EXERCISES (separately).

THE TUTORIAL FRENCH SYNTAX. By Prof. E. WEEKLEY, M.A., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. With Exercises. *Second Edition.* EXERCISES (separately).

SCHOOL FRENCH GRAMMAR. Being the Grammatical part of the *Matriculation French Course* without the Exercises. By Prof. E. WEEKLEY, M.A.

THE MATRICULATION FRENCH COURSE. By Prof. E. WEEKLEY, M.A. *Third Edition.*

MATRICULATION FRENCH ESSAYS. By H. J. CHAYTOR, M.A., Fellow of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge, late Headmaster, Plymouth College, and Dr. W. G. HARTOG, M.A., late Examiner in French at the University of London.

SENIOR FRENCH COURSE. By Professor E. WEEKLEY, M.A., and C. GILLI, B.A.

Adapted from the *Matriculation French Course* for the Cambridge Senior Local Examination.

NEW JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS, M.A., Headmaster, Russell Hill School, Purley.

DIRECT FRENCH COURSE. By H. J. CHAYTOR, M.A., late Headmaster of Plymouth College. Illustrated. With Vocabulary.

SECOND YEAR DIRECT FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS, M.A., and H. J. CHAYTOR, M.A.

SCHOOL CERTIFICATE PRACTICE IN FRENCH. By H. J. CHAYTOR, M.A.

DIRECT GERMAN COURSE. By H. J. CHAYTOR, M.A.

FRENCH PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

PROFESSOR OF FRENCH AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, NOTTINGHAM

Fifteenth Impression (Third Edition)

London: W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

High St., New Oxford St., W.C.

1920

PREFACE.

THE increased importance now attached to French Prose Composition is but a natural outcome of the more systematic study of modern languages which is happily becoming general. And indeed the translation of English into French is not only an acquirement of practical utility, but is also an indispensable aid to gaining a sound general knowledge of French, while, for examination purposes, no better written test could be devised of the candidate's intelligent acquaintance with the accidence, syntax, and vocabulary of the language.

The present work is intended to be used alongside the same Author's *Tutorial French Accidence* and *Tutorial French Syntax*, but for the benefit of those who have not mastered the latter book a *résumé* of the most important rules of syntax is here given, accompanied by illustrative exercises; these are followed by some practical hints on the essential differences between English and French prose style and a number of graduated continuous extracts for translation. The first fifty-two of these are short and easy, and will be suitable for candidates at London Matriculation and other examinations of similar standard. The remaining prose extracts are of a more difficult character and are relatively less fully annotated. A few pieces of verse have been added, not because the translation of English verse into French prose is regarded by the present writer as a valuable exercise, but as a concession to the needs of candidates for examinations at which such translation is required.

The sentences used in the Exercises are taken without exception from the continuous extracts which occur later on. Such sentences are in every way preferable to manufactured examples, though they may not illustrate the rules so obviously as the latter. It is not suggested that these Exercises should be worked through in their entirety before the student begins the second part of the book: they should be used rather for purposes of revision when repeated mistakes with regard to any one rule show that further practice is desirable.

The "Hints on Translation," pp. 104-130, have been limited to the most striking cases. A somewhat exhaustive treatment of the subject, suitable to very advanced students, will be found in Professor Meissner's *French Prose Composition*, to which I owe a few hints. On points of syntax I have usually referred to the excellent works of Lücking and Plattner.

As it is hoped that this book may be found useful by the private student, great pains have been bestowed upon the Key*. The French versions have been taken partly from standard French translations, while others have been compiled by various competent scholars. In both cases they have been subjected to a searching revision by myself and my friend Louis Dedet, Esq., L.ès.L., of the University of Paris, to whom I wish to tender my hearty thanks, both for the excellent translations which he has himself contributed and for general assistance in writing the book.

E. W.

NOTTINGHAM,
March 8th, 1898.

* Supplied only to Teachers, or to Private Students certified as such by a Clergyman or Schoolmaster.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
GRAMMATICAL REFORMS AUTHORISED BY THE FRENCH MINISTER OF INSTRUCTION, FEBRUARY 26, 1901 ..	ix-xii
PART I.—SYNTAX	1-103
Concord of Subject and Predicate	1
Auxiliaries	3
Government of Verbs	7
Reflexive Verbs	11
Impersonal Verbs	13
Use of the Tenses	15
The Subjunctive Mood	21
The Infinitive	33
The Present Participle	42
The Past Participle	44
Negation	49
Agreement of the Adjective	51
Position of the Adjective	52
Conjunctive Personal Pronouns	54
Disjunctive Personal Pronouns	57
Relative Pronouns	60
Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns	64
Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns	68
Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns	70
The Numerals	79
Repetition of Words in French	81
Words used in French but not in English	84

PAGE

Omission of the Indefinite Article in French 94
The Order of Words 96
The Order of Clauses 101

PART II.—HINTS ON TRANSLATION 104-130
Substantives 104
Adjectives 108
Pronouns 111
Verbs 114
Adverbs 121
Prepositions 122

PART III.—PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION 131-234

PART IV.—NOTES 235-275

NOTES ON THE EXERCISES: Reference Table .. 277-280

PART V.—VOCABULARY TO PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION 1-100 281

INDEX.
I.—GENERAL INDEX, ETC. 329
II.—FRENCH WORDS 332

GRAMMATICAL REFORMS

AUTHORISED BY THE

FRENCH MINISTER OF INSTRUCTION,

FEBRUARY 26, 1901.

By a decree of the French Minister of Education (February 26th, 1901), a good many modifications have been introduced into the grammatical rules hitherto observed. In each case the suggested simplification is to be regarded as a "tolérance," the original usage remaining equally correct. The following is an abstract of the changes so far as they deal with rules contained in this book.

Substantives with Two Genders.

Aigle may always be masculine except when used in the sense of "standard."

Amour and **orgue** may be indifferently masculine or feminine in both numbers.

Gens. An adjective used with this word may always be feminine, no matter what its position: e.g. *instruits* or *instruites par l'expérience les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux* or *soupçonneuses.*

Orge may be always feminine.

Hymne may be indifferently masculine or feminine whether used in the ecclesiastical or secular sense.

Pâques, used as a date, may be feminine plural as well as masculine singular: e.g. *à Pâques prochain* or *prochaines*.

Plural of Substantives.

Proper names used in the plural may in every case take the sign of the plural.

Compound Substantives.

Compound substantives may always be written without hyphens: e.g. *un chef d'œuvre*.

The Article.

When two adjectives united by **et** refer to the same substantive in such a way as to indicate two different things the article may be suppressed before the second substantive: e.g. *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne* or *l'histoire ancienne et moderne* (§ 163).

The partitive article may be used instead of **de** before a substantive preceded by an adjective (§172, 1).

The definite article followed by **plus**, **moins**, **mieux**, and an adjective may always agree with the substantive qualified: e.g. *on a abattu les arbres le plus* (or *les plus*) *exposés à la tempête*.

The Adjective.

Nu, **demi**, and **feu** may always agree with the substantive they refer to, independently of their position. When **nu** and **demi** precede, no hyphen need be used (§§ 94, 95).

Compound adjectives, except those denoting colours, may always be written in one word and be inflected according to the general rule; e.g. *nouveauné*, *nouveaunée*, *nouveaunés*, *nouveaunées*.

Past participles used absolutely as adjectives may always agree with the substantive independently of their position. The same applies to the adjective **franc** in **franc de port**: e.g. *j'ai reçu franc* (or *franche*) *de port la lettre que vous m'avez promise*.

An adjective used with the locution **avoir l'air** may agree indifferently with the subject of the sentence or with **air**: e.g. *elle a l'air doux* or *douce*.

Numerals.

Vingt and **cent**, when multiplied, may take the sign of the plural though followed by another number. No hyphen need be used in compound numerals: e.g. *trois cents quatre vingts dix sept hommes*.

Mille may be used for **mil** in dates.

Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.

Même, when added to a disjunctive personal pronoun, requires no hyphen.

Tout, used in the sense of **chaque**, may be indifferently singular or plural: e.g. *des marchandises de toute sorte* or *de toutes sortes* (§ 143, iii.).

Aucun, used negatively, may be indifferently singular or plural: e.g. *il n'a aucun souci* or *aucuns soucis*.

When **chacun** comes after the verb but refers to a plural subject, the corresponding possessive may be indifferently **son, sa, ses** or **leur, leurs**.

The Verb.

Compound verbs may be written without hyphen or apostrophe: e.g. *entrecroiser*, *entrouvrir*.

The hyphen may be omitted in the interrogative conjugation.

A verb which has two or more subjects not united by **et** may always be plural unless the subjects are summed up by an indefinite pronoun such as **tout, rien, chacun**.

A verb which has two or more subjects united by **ni, comme, ainsi que, avec,** or equivalent locutions may always be plural (§ 3, ii).

A verb which has for its subject a collective followed by a plural complement may always be plural (§ 4).

The plural may also be used with **plus d'un** (§ 5, Note).

C'est may be used instead of **ce sont** when the complement is third person plural (§§ 24, Note 1 ; 103, 5, Note).

The present subjunctive may be used (instead of the imperfect) in a subordinate clause dependent on a verb in the present conditional: e.g. *il faudrait qu'il vînt* or *vienne.*

The Past Participle.

The past participle followed by an infinitive may always remain invariable (§ 84).

When the preceding direct object of a past participle used with **avoir** is a collective accompanied by a plural complement, the past participle may be indifferently singular or plural (§ 81).

Adverbs.

The expletive **ne** used, in certain cases, in dependent sentences after (i) verbs of hindering, (ii) verbs or conjunctions expressing fear, (iii) verbs of doubt or denial, (iv) **il s'en faut,** (v) comparatives, (vi) **à moins que,** may in every case be omitted (§ 184).

FRENCH PROSE COMPOSITION.

PART I.—SYNTAX.

CONCORD OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. The verb agrees with its nominative case in number and person, as in English. When there is more than one subject the verb is put in the plural. If the subjects are of different persons, the first is preferred to the second, and the second to the third.

Vous, mon oncle et moi, (nous) lirons cette histoire.
You, my uncle, and I shall read this story.

Vous et lui perdrez à ce marché.
You and he will lose by that bargain.

Two or more Subjects with Singular Verb.

§ 2. The verb is put in the singular when two or more subjects are merely different names for the same person or thing, or when they are nearly synonymous.

Quand le prince des pasteurs et le pontife éternel apparaîtra.
When the prince of shepherds and the eternal pontiff shall appear.

§ 3. When two subjects are united by **ou**, *or*, or by **ni**, *nor*, the verb is found both in the singular and in the plural.

(i) When the two subjects are mutually exclusive the verb is put in the singular, but if no strict alternative is implied the plural is generally used.

Votre père ou votre oncle sera maire de cette ville.
Your father or your uncle will be mayor of this town.

Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes.
Time or death are our remedies.

(ii) **Ni l'un ni l'autre** takes a singular verb when it is the negative of **l'un ou l'autre** (which usually takes a singular verb), but a plural verb when it is the negative of **l'un et l'autre.**

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père.
Neither is my father.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir.
Neither of them has done his duty.

(iii) When the subjects are of different grammatical persons the verb is always plural.

Lui ou moi
Ni lui ni moi n' } **irons à Rome.**

He or I
Neither he nor I } *shall go to Rome.*

Collective Subject.

§ 4. When the subject is a collective followed by a genitive, much the same distinction is drawn as in English, that is to say, the verb is put in the singular or in the plural according as the collective or its complement is emphasized.

Un grand nombre de chefs nuit à la discipline.
A large number of commanders is inimical to discipline.

Un grand nombre de personnes furent volées dans la foule.
A great number of people were robbed in the crowd.

§ 5. **Assez de, beaucoup de, bien des, moins de, peu de, trop de, la plupart des, la plus grande partie des, moins de deux, moins de trois,** followed by a plural substantive, all require a plural verb.

La plupart des hommes meurent sans en avoir conscience.
The majority of men die without knowing it.

Note.—**Plus d'un** takes a singular verb.

Plus d'un témoin a été entendu.
More than one witness has been heard.

§ 6. In English a plural verb is often used with a singular collective, e.g. *the people were excited, the committee were undecided*, etc. In French the verb must always be in the singular unless it agrees with a plural complement (§ 4).

La foule hurlait la faim.
The crowd were howling with hunger.

EXERCISE 1.

1. Numbers of the citizens climbed upon the roof and killed all the prisoners.
2. Neither seemed inclined to break the silence.
3. Respect, esteem, and confidence had vanished for ever.
4. All the school, teachers included, rose *en masse*.
5. Surely that handful of men are not going to charge an army in position!
6. A party of Indians stood apart, with countenances of inflexible gravity.
7. This ship's crew had been guilty of depredations on the Spanish commerce.
8. Trade, plenty, and good faith were restored in the markets.
9. The crowd broke up.
10. The French host, horse and foot, were coming across from Telham.
11. Polly and I were very happy and merry together.
12. — My robe,
And my integrity to Heaven, is all
I dare now call my own.

AUXILIARIES.

§ 7. The auxiliary **avoir** is used with all transitive and most intransitive verbs. The auxiliary **être** is used with all reflexive and the following intransitive verbs.

aller, *to go.*	**naître**, *to be born.*
arriver, *to arrive.*	**partir**, *to start.*
choir, *to fall.*	**retourner**, } *to return.*
décéder, *to die.*	**revenir**, }
éclore, *to be hatched.*	**sortir**, *to go out.*
entrer, *to enter.*	**tomber**, *to fall.*
mourir, *to die.*	**venir**, *to come.*

Note.—Compounds of these verbs, with few exceptions, are also conjugated with être.

§ 8. The following verbs are conjugated with **avoir** to denote action, with **être** to denote completed action, state.

avancer, *to advance.*	**descendre**, *to descend, come* or *go down.*
cesser, *to cease.*	**disparaître**, *to disappear.*
changer, *to change.*	**empirer**, *to become worse.*
croître, *to grow, increase.*	**grandir**, *to grow.*
déchoir, *to fall, decline.*	**monter**, *to mount.*
décroître, *to decrease.*	**passer**, *to pass.*
dégénérer, *to degenerate.*	**rester**, *to remain.*
demeurer, *to dwell, remain.*	**vieillir**, *to age.*

Il a descendu promptement.
He came down at once.

Il n'est plus ici, il est descendu.
He is here no longer; he is downstairs.

Il a passé par Lyon.
He passed through Lyons.

L'hiver est bientôt passé.
Winter is soon over.

§ 9. A few intransitive verbs are conjugated with **avoir** or **être**, but with entirely different meanings.

	with **avoir.**	with **être.**
convenir + à	*to suit*	+ de *to agree.*
échapper	*to escape*	*to slip out.*
expirer	*to die*	*to elapse.*
repartir	*to reply*	*to start again.*

Le mot m'a échappé.
The word escaped my ear.

Le mot m'est échappé.
The word escaped my tongue.

§ 10. The intransitive verbs **descendre, monter, passer, rentrer, retourner, sortir** are also used as transitive verbs, and are then of course conjugated with **avoir.**

Avez-vous monté mes bagages?
Have you taken my luggage up?

On l'a sorti d'une affaire fâcheuse.
He was extricated from an awkward position.

Other Auxiliaries.

§ 11. **Devoir, pouvoir, savoir, vouloir** are transitive verbs, but are also used as modal auxiliaries, corresponding to the English *ought, must; may, can; can; will.* When thus used they are followed by an infinitive without preposition (§ 60).

Note 1.—It is important to distinguish the various uses of **devoir**: (i) it is a transitive verb, *to owe;* (ii) in the conditional it corresponds to the English auxiliary *ought;* (iii) in other moods it corresponds to the English auxiliary *must,* or to the auxiliaries *to have* and *to be,* used to indicate duty, compulsion, or destiny.

(i) **Il faut payer ce qu'on doit.**
We must pay what we owe.

(ii) **Vous devriez avoir honte de votre conduite.**
You ought to be ashamed of your conduct.

(iii) **Ce doit être lui.** *That must be he.*
J'ai dû lui céder la place. *I had to make way for him.*

Cet enfant chétif devait vivre plus de quatre-vingts ans.
This sickly child was (destined) to live more than eighty years.

Note 2.—In rendering *might have, ought to have,* in French, the conditional perfect of **pouvoir** and **devoir** should be used, and the following verb should be in the present infinitive.

Vous auriez dû revenir hier.
You ought to have come back yesterday.

Note 3.—*Can* must be translated by **savoir** when it denotes acquired ability, by **pouvoir** when it denotes ability resulting from the absence of obstacles.

A peine sait-il lire. *He can hardly read.*
Pouvez-vous nous accompagner? *Can you come with us?*

§ 12. **Aller** is used in the present and imperfect as an auxiliary to indicate the immediate future.

Je vais tout avouer. *I am going to confess everything.*
Il allait partir. *He was about to start.*

§ 13. **Venir de** and **ne faire que de** are used as auxiliaries in the present and imperfect to indicate the immediate past.

Ils venaient d'arriver. *They had just arrived.*
Il ne fait que de sortir. *He has only just gone out.*

NOTE.—These must be distinguished from **venir à**, *to happen to*, and **ne faire que**, *to do nothing but . . .*

S'il venait à mourir.	**Il ne fait qu'entrer et sortir.**
If he should die.	*He does nothing but pop in and out.*

EXERCISE 2.

1. I took him for a god, and was about to address him in Greek.
2. Professions of patriotism are become stale and ridiculous.
3. Now that I had grown old, each rock and stone was dear to me.
4. Aunt Maria had brought her when she came, but only stayed one night.
5. Whoever thinks that that man must be sad in solitude, is greatly mistaken.
6. I have had means of information of which you could never have dreamed.
7. You might have robbed with impunity.
8. Respect, esteem, and confidence had vanished for ever.
9. His information respecting my past life and conversation was to brand me as a bad child for ever.
10. I will follow the example of the spider.
11. The house in which I was born stood near this hill.
12. The aged prince announced that his last hour had come.
13. He had just been arrested for debt.
14. Do we mean, then, that a childish error could permanently master his understanding?
15. This childish error must have impressed a false bias upon his way of viewing things.
16. That sort of false bias might long survive a mere error of the understanding.
17. Thou, the hall of my fathers, art gone to decay.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 14. Some verbs which in English take a direct object require to be followed, in French, by an indirect complement governed by a preposition.

applaudir à, *to applaud.*
contrevenir à, *to infringe.*
nuire à, *to hurt.*
obéir à, *to obey.*
ordonner à, *to order.*
pardonner à, *to pardon (a person).*
plaire à, *to please.*
permettre à, *to allow.*
remédier à, *to remedy.*
renoncer à, *to renounce.*
résister à, *to resist.*
ressembler à, *to resemble.*
succéder à, *to succeed.*
survivre à, *to survive.*
douter de, *to doubt.*
jouir de, *to enjoy.*
manquer de, *to lack* (§ 16).
user de, *to use* (§ 16).
entrer dans, *to enter.*
pénétrer dans, *to penetrate.*

Un bon citoyen obéit aux lois et n'y contrevient jamais.
A good citizen obeys the laws and never infringes them.

Pour jouir de la vie il faut en user avec sagesse.
To enjoy life we must use it wisely.

Note.—**Obéir** and **pardonner**, though intransitive, may be used in the passive. The latter verb is transitive when its object is not a person.

§ 15. In some cases the converse holds, an English verb followed by a preposition being rendered by a French transitive verb.

approuver, *to approve of.*
attendre, *to wait for.*
chercher, *to look for.*
demander, *to ask for.*
écouter, *to listen to.*
espérer, *to hope for.*
fuir, *to flee from.*
méditer, *to meditate on.*
payer, *to pay for.*
regarder, *to look at.*

Qui casse les verres, les paye.
He who breaks the glasses, pays for them.

§ 16. Many verbs vary in meaning according as they are

followed by a direct object or by an indirect complement governed by a preposition.

abuser, *to deceive (a person).*	**abuser de**, *to misuse (a thing).*
assister, *to assist (a person).*	**assister à**, *to be present at to help in.*
atteindre, *to attain.*	**atteindre à**, *to attain (with an effort).*
changer, *to (ex)change.*	**changer de**, *to change, to alter.*
demander, *to ask for.*	**demander à**, *to ask (from).*
insulter, *to insult (a person)*	**insulter à**, *to deride.*
jouer, *to play (a part).*	**jouer à**, *to play (cards, chess, etc.).*
	jouer de, *to play (musical instruments).*
juger, *to judge.*	**juger de**, *to form an opinion on.*
manquer, *to miss.*	**manquer à**, *to be lacking.*
	manquer de, *to lack.*
présider, *to preside over.*	**présider à**, *to preside over (with a sense of actual influence).*
satisfaire, *to satisfy (a person).*	**satisfaire à**, *to fulfil (an obligation*
servir, *to serve.*	**servir à**, *to be of use for.*
	servir de, *to serve as.*
suppléer, *to replace.*	**suppléer à**, *to make up for.*
témoigner, *to show.*	**témoigner de**, *to attest.*
tenir, *to hold.*	**tenir à**, *to attach value to.*
	tenir de, *to be akin to.*
toucher, *to touch, to feel.*	**toucher à**, *to touch, to near.*
user, *to wear out.*	**user de**, *to use.*

Je vais changer mon épicier.
I am going to change my grocer.

Elle a changé d'avis.
She has changed her mind.

Il témoigna la reconnaissance la plus vive.
He showed the liveliest gratitude.

Tout témoigne de la pureté de ses intentions.
Everything attests the purity of his intentions.

§ 17. The following verbs are not followed by a direct object, but they vary in meaning according to the preposition which precedes the indirect complement.

convenir à, *to suit* (§ 9).	**convenir de**, *to agree upon.*
échapper à, *to evade* (§ 9).	**échapper de**, *to escape from.*

s'occuper à, *to be employed in.*	**s'occuper de**, *to be (earnestly) employed in.*
participer à, *to share in.*	**participer de**, *to be akin to.*
répondre à, *to answer, to correspond to.*	**répondre de**, *to be answerable for.*
Cet habit ne lui convient pas. *This coat does not suit him.*	**Nous en sommes convenus.** *We are agreed upon it.*

Le voleur a échappé à la gendarmerie.
The robber has evaded the police.

Il a échappé de prison.
He has escaped from prison.

§ 18. The following verbs, when followed by two objects, take a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing. This replaces various English constructions—*e.g.* with verbs of teaching, it usually replaces a double accusative; with verbs of taking away, an accusative of the thing followed by *of* or *from*.

acheter, *to buy.*	**emprunter**, *to borrow.*
apprendre, *to teach.*	**enlever**, *to carry off.*
arracher, *to tear away.*	**enseigner**, *to teach.*
assurer, *to assure.*	**envier**, *to envy.*
cacher, *to hide.*	**inspirer**, *to inspire.*
conseiller, *to advise.*	**ôter**, *to take away.*
demander, *to ask.*	**persuader**, *to persuade.*
dérober, *to take away.*	**refuser**, *to refuse.*

Nous allons lui apprendre la politesse.
We are going to teach him manners.

Il faut demander cela à vos parents.
You must ask your parents that.

L'horreur qu'il leur avait inspirée.
The horror with which he had inspired them.

NOTE 1.—When these verbs have only one object, it is always in the accusative, whether person or thing.

Personne ne peut enseigner ceux qui préfèrent rester ignorants.
No one can teach those who prefer to remain ignorant.

Monsieur, on vous demande.
You are wanted, sir.

NOTE 2.—**Assurer** and **persuader** also admit of the English construction.

Je lui ai persuadé
Je l'ai persuadé de } **votre sincérité**
I have persuaded him of your sincerity.

§ 19. The verbs **retourner** and **habiter** can be either transitive or intransitive.

Il y a longtemps que j'habite Paris.
I have been in Paris for a long time.

Où habitez-vous maintenant ?
Where are you living now?

Il a retourné son habit.
He has turned his coat.

Il est retourné chez lui.
He has gone home.

EXERCISE 3.

1. We mean him no harm.
2. These were the means which she had at her command for resisting foreign enemies.
3. They were ordered to enter the cell.
4. The king made the prince ask for pardon.
5. He humbly begged the judge to forgive him.
6. She asked him what he thought of the army.
7. Margaret survived her son only nine years.
8. The church had escaped the last earthquake.
9. He used his vast power wisely and well.
10. Those who enjoyed the privilege of hearing his familiar conversation declared that it was superior even to his writings.
11. Mr. Campbell himself performs very well on the violin.
12. It is a hard lesson of life to find how little we are missed.
13. The intensity of the cold was so great that no one might dare to touch any metal substance in the open air.
14. Alfred the Great entered the enemy's camp.
15. Soon the flames reached her.
16. He listened to the account of all that this dreadful beast had done.
17. Not for a moment was this destiny hidden from thyself.
18. The most daring veterans would, like children, obey his slightest sign.
19. Aunt Maria never allowed any of the girls to travel alone.
20. Their welfare pleased him, and their cares distrest.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

§ 20. REFLEXIVE verbs are employed in French much more extensively than in English. A reflexive verb may be used for—

(i) an English transitive.
(ii) an English intransitive.
(iii) an English passive.
(iv) an English phrase.

(i) **s'apercevoir de,** *to perceive.*
se défier de, / **se méfier de,** } *to distrust.*
se douter de, *to suspect.*
s'emparer de, *to seize.*
se fier à, *to trust.*
se figurer, / **s'imaginer,** } *to imagine*
se moquer de, *to mock.*
se rappeler, / **se souvenir de,** } *to remember.*
se servir de, *to use.*

(ii) **s'abstenir,** *to abstain.*
s'accorder, *to agree.*
s'arrêter, *to stop.*
se baigner, *to bathe.*
se baisser, *to stoop.*
s'étonner, *to wonder.*
s'évaporer, *to evaporate.*
s'évanouir, *to faint, vanish.*
se glorifier, / **se vanter,** } *to boast.*
se hâter, *to hasten.*
se laver, *to wash.*
se lever, *to rise.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
se promener, *to walk.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
se reposer, *to rest.*
se retirer, *to retire.*
se révolter, *to rebel.*
se soumettre, *to submit.*

NOTE.—In English many verbs, e.g. *to stop, to wash, to hasten*, etc., can be either transitive or intransitive. In French the intransitive force is usually supplied by the reflexive.

Nous anticipons l'avenir comme pour hâter son cours.
We anticipate the future as though to hasten its course.

Ils se hâtèrent de rejoindre l'armée.
They hastened to rejoin the army.

(iii) The use of the French reflexive for the English passive is best illustrated by complete sentences.

Vous vous trompez.
You are mistaken.
Le tigre se trouve en Asie.
The tiger is found in Asia.
Cela se comprend.
That is understood.
Cela se vend partout.
That is sold everywhere.

(iv) **s'asseoir**, *to sit down.* **s'enrhumer**, *to catch cold.*
se coucher, *to go to bed.* **s'envoler**, *to fly away.*
s'endormir, *to fall asleep.* **se lever**, *to get up.*
s'enfuir, *to run away.* **se fâcher**, *to get angry.*

§ 21. The reflexive may also be used reciprocally, with or without **l'un l'autre** or **les uns les autres.**

Ces deux hommes se détestent (l'un l'autre).
These two men detest each other.

Les Chinois et les Japonais se détestent (les uns les autres).
The Chinese and Japanese detest each other

EXERCISE 4.

1. His attendants immediately fell upon him with their swords.
2. The French alone retreated in good order.
3. He went off under the protection of a regiment of cavalry, and fled to Dublin.
4. He immediately exclaimed, "What a lesson for mankind!"
5. The church has collapsed.
6. Kneeling down, they all kissed the ground.
7. Even the soldiers were hushed.
8. "We are lost!" an English soldier muttered, as the crowd broke up.
9. This is a feature in their character which was never wholly erased.
10. The English stood on the hill.
11. Mary resolved to comply with the wishes of her subjects.
12. She embarked at Calais.
13. Meanwhile the insurgents had seized the Capitol.
14. They all made fun of him on hearing this.
15. When the gratitude of thy king shall awaken, thou wilt be sleeping the sleep of the dead.
16. The news flew like lightning throughout the country.
17. The people remembered Mary's gentleness, grace, and beauty.
18. I was about to address him in Greek.
19. They who were in the ship perceived the earthquake.
20. I had only time to seize hold of a piece of wood.
21. One was called Blanche and the other Rose.
22. They jested at the absurdity of the notion.
23. It seemed that the king's distress could hardly be increased.
24. All the wits had combined to keep up the joke.

25. A great internal change passed over the empire.

26. Whoever thinks that that man must be sad in solitude, is very much mistaken.

27. Seven or eight persons formed themselves into a sort of little club to meet at one another's houses.

28. The French language was forming.

29. The duke said the animal had not behaved well lately.

30. The woods began to rejoice that they were no longer infested with robbers.

31. The two sisters felt very depressed.

32. Silence had settled upon this lonely dwelling.

33. Great events had taken place in India.

34. Arethusa arose
From her couch of snows.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 22. IMPERSONAL constructions are used more freely in French than in English.

Tous les seigneurs furent invités à prendre part à l'expédition: il en vint des provinces même les plus éloignées.
All the nobles were invited to take part in the expedition: they flocked even from the most distant provinces.

Il ne me reste que très peu de temps à passer en ce monde.
I have very little time left to pass in this world.

Il est and c'est.

§ 23. Both **il est** and **c'est** may be used for the impersonal *it is*.

§ 24. **C'est** is used (i) before a substantive preceded by a determining word, (ii) before a personal, possessive, or demonstrative pronoun, (iii) before an adverb of quantity, (iv) before an adjective or adjectival phrase which has no subordinate clause or infinitive dependent on it (*see* Note 2).

(i) **C'est la vérité**, but, **Il est midi.**
It is the truth. *It is noon.*

(ii) **C'est moi.** *It is I.* **C'est le mien.** *It is mine.* **C'est cela.** *That's it.*

(iii) **C'est peu de connaître les régles, c'est beaucoup de les observer.**
It is a small thing to know the rules, but a great thing to observe them.

(iv) **Vous avez tort, c'est clair,** but, **Il est impossible de le faire.**
You are wrong, it is clear. *It is impossible to do it.*

Viendra-t-il ? C'est à espérer, but, **Il est à espérer qu'il viendra.**
Will he come ? It is to be hoped so. *It is to be hoped that he will come.*

NOTE 1.—**C'est** is replaced by **ce sont** before a complement in the third person plural.

C'est nous, but, **Ce sont eux.**
It is we. *It is they.*

Ce sont les Espagnols qui les premiers ont colonisé l'Amérique.
It was the Spaniards who first colonized America.

NOTE 2.—In a few phrases **c'est** is used before a substantive used without article as an adjective, which may have an infinitive or subordinate clause dependent on it. **C'est dommage,** *it is a pity;* **c'est plaisir,** *it is a pleasure;* **c'est raison,** *it is right.*

C'est dommage qu'il ne soit pas venu.
It is a pity that he has not come.

§ 25. **C'est** is often used in the present, when the verb of the subordinate clause is in a past tense.

C'est à Pevensey que débarquèrent les Normands.
It was at Pevensey that the Normans landed.

§ 26. **C'est** is a favourite introduction to a sentence, and is often used where in English a simple adverb is employed.

C'est ainsi que mourut cet homme illustre.
Thus died this illustrious man.

La reine voulut aussi laisser quelque souvenir de la victoire de son mari; c'est pourquoi elle fit cette fameuse tapisserie.
The queen also wished to leave some memorial of her husband's victory; so she made this famous tapestry.

EXERCISE 5.

1. It was impossible to make out the inscriptions.
2. I seemed to read on their grim, harsh features the record of that long ten years of struggle.
3. It is a sad sight to see a fine ship beyond control.
4. It is known that eleven persons have been killed in the town.
5. It was Homer who formed the character of the Greek nation.
6. With such a commander it might not have been easy to reduce the insurgents.
7. It became impossible for the insurgents to hold out.
8. It was about the middle of April that Columbus arrived at Barcelona.
9. It was the latter who used the influence of his office to form a league with Charles the Fifth of Germany.
10. "It is," he replied, "a brave army."
11. It seemed that the king's distress could hardly be increased.
12. It is a hard lesson of life to find how little we are missed.
13. It will not do, however, to deny that you are in some measure implicated in them.
14. It is rather strange to find the word "hardship" applied to any obstacle to the growth of a plant.
15. One consequence of this was, that they were the most helpless creatures that I have ever beheld.
16. Though a tear dim his eye at this sad separation,
'Tis nature, not fear, that excites his regret.

USE OF THE TENSES.

THE following sections deal only with cases in which there is a marked difference of idiom in the two languages.

§ 27. The historical present is used much more freely than in English. It is often found in the same passage side by side with the past definite.

C'est en vain qu'à travers des bois, avec sa cavalerie toute fraîche, Bek précipite sa marche pour tomber sur nos soldats épuisés ; le prince l'a prévenu, les bataillons enfoncés demandent quartier ; mais la victoire

va devenir plus terrible pour le duc d'Enghien que le combat. Pendant qu'avec un air assuré il s'avance pour recevoir la parole de ces braves gens, ceux-ci, toujours en garde, craignent la surprise de quelque nouvelle attaque ; leur effroyable décharge met les nôtres en furie ; on ne voit plus que carnage ; le sang enivre le soldat, jusqu'à ce que le grand prince, qui ne put voir égorger ces lions comme de timides brebis, calma les courages émus, et joignit aux plaisir de vaincre celui de pardonner.

NOTE.—In such a passage the past indefinite takes the place of the pluperfect (*see l.* 3).

§ 28. The present and imperfect are used for the English perfect and pluperfect to express an action or state still continuing.

Il y a longtemps que je suis ici.
I have been here for a long time.

Depuis dix ans il était le conseiller du prince.
For ten years he had been the prince's adviser.

§ 29. The imperfect may be used for the conditional perfect to express an imminent contingency.

Fairfax se signala à la bataille de Naseby, mais sans Cromwell la victoire était à Charles.
Fairfax distinguished himself at the battle of Naseby, but the victory would have remained with Charles but for Cromwell.

§ 30. The imperfect is only used of actions or states which have no definite limits. Otherwise the past definite must be used.

Pendant près de trois siècles le christianisme lutta avec le paganisme expirant.
For nearly three centuries Christianity strove with expiring paganism.

§ 31. The following piece of prose should be carefully studied. It will be seen that the incidents, each of which moves the narrative a step onward, are in the past definite, while the introductory conditions and accompanying circumstances are in the imperfect. In other words, the outline is drawn in the past definite and the details are filled in in the imperfect.

Lannes marcha le 16 et le 17 mai sur Aoste, où se trouvaient quelques Croates, qui furent jetés dans le bas de la vallée ; puis il s'achemina

vers le bourg de Châtillon où il arriva le 18. Un bataillon ennemi qui se trouvait là fut culbuté, et perdit bon nombre de prisonniers. Lannes s'engagea ensuite dans la vallée, qui, à mesure qu'on descendait, s'élargissait sensiblement, et montrait aux yeux charmés de nos soldats des habitations, des arbres, des champs cultivés, tous les avant-coureurs, en un mot, de la fertilité italienne. « Ces braves gens marchaient tout joyeux, lorsque la vallée, se resserrant de nouveau, leur présenta une gorge étroite, fermée par un fort hérissé de canons. C'était le fort de Bard, déjà désigné comme un obstacle par plusieurs officiers italiens, mais comme un obstacle qu'on pouvait vaincre. Les officiers du génie attachés à l'avant-garde s'avancèrent, et, après une prompte reconnaissance, déclarèrent que le fort obstruait complètement le chemin de la vallée, et qu'on ne pouvait passer sans forcer cette barrière, qui, au premier aspect, semblait à peu près insurmontable. Cette nouvelle, répandue dans la division, y causa la plus pénible surprise. Voici quelle était la nature de cet obstacle imprévu.—THIERS.

Obs.—In a more vivid narrative, such as a description of a battle or shipwreck, the past definite would often be replaced, especially at critical points, by the historical present (§ 27).

NOTE.—The imperfect is used in giving the import of a treaty, letter, etc.

Du Guesclin reçut du roi une lettre qui lui ordonnait de se retirer jusqu'à la Loire.
Du Guesclin received from the king a letter which ordered him to retire as far as the Loire.

§ 32. The past definite is only used in narrative: in conversational style it is replaced by the past indefinite. It is often replaced, in vivid narrative, by the historical present (§ 27).

Je l'ai vu à Paris il y a trois ans.
I saw him at Paris three years ago.

§ 33. The past anterior is, as a rule, used only in sentences beginning with à peine, aussitôt que, dès que, quand, lorsque, when the sentence contains another verb in the past definite.

A peine eurent-ils fini, qu'ils recommencèrent.
They had hardly finished, when they began again.

Aussitôt qu'il fut parti, on se mit à rire de sa simplicité.
As soon as he had left they began to laugh at his simplicity.

but, **Jamais il n'avait perdu un seul moment favorable.**
He had never lost a single favourable moment.

§ **34.** The future and future-perfect, and the conditional present and perfect, are used in temporal clauses for the English present and past indefinite, simple perfect and pluperfect, when future time is referred to.

Appelez-moi dès qu'il sera ici.
Call me as soon as he is here.

Avertissez-moi dès qu'il aura fini.
Let me know as soon as he has finished.

Il promettait de me donner les oiseaux quand je les prendrais.
He promised to give me the birds when I caught them.

Dans le moment où les Prussiens auraient porté toutes leurs forces de ce côté, nous leur tomberions en flanc.
At the moment when the Prussians had turned all their forces in this direction, we should fall upon their flank.

§ **35.** The same construction occurs in relative clauses.

Celui qui volera sera pendu.
He who steals will be hanged.

Un peuple qui n'aurait que ces métaux serait très misérable.
A race which only had these metals would be very wretched.

§ **36.** The future and future-perfect may both be used to express probability.

Le chœur de cette église sera du quinzième siècle.
The chancel of this church dates, I should say, from the fifteenth century.

On l'aura informé de votre retour.
He must have been informed of your return.

§ **37.** The conditional is used in (i) diffident questions, (ii) statements which the speaker does not guarantee.

(i) **Trouveriez-vous mauvais qu'on protège les arts ?**
Do you disapprove of supporting art ?

(ii) **Suivant d'autres il aurait vécu jusqu'à un âge avancé et serait mort vers la fin du règne de Jacques Ier.**

According to others he lived to an advanced age and died towards the end of the reign of James I.

§ 38. Neither the future nor conditional must ever be used after **si**, except when it means *whether*.

S'il découvrait cela, vous seriez perdu.
If he should discover that, you would be lost.

NOTE.—The English auxiliary *would*, used to express habit, must be rendered by the French imperfect.

Il s' interrompait souvent au milieu de ses récits pour se fortifier la voix avec une lampée de vin.
He would often stop in the middle of his stories to reinforce his voice with a draught of wine.

§ 39. The conditional is used after **quand, quand même,** *even if*, **dans le cas où, au cas que,** *in case*.

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrais pas.
Even if I wanted to, I could not.

Dans le cas où le château serait attaqué.
In case the castle is attacked.

§ 40. The following curious variation on the preceding construction should be noticed.

Ils auraient tout l'or du Pérou qu'ils en désireraient encore.
Even if they had all the gold of Peru, they would want more.

Un Bazile! Il médirait qu'on ne le croirait pas.
A man like Bazile! Even if he slandered, no one would believe him.

§ 41. The conditional perfect is often replaced by the pluperfect subjunctive.

Sans ce secours, l'armée eût péri de faim et de misère.
But for this aid, the army would have perished of hunger and want.

EXERCISE 6.

1. He entered the enemy's camp, and was admitted to the principal generals, who praised his talent for music.

2. Margaret survived her son only nine years, of which she spent five a prisoner in the Tower.

3. The insect slipped and fell several times to the ground.

4. Fernand Cortez was born in the year 1485. He belonged to a noble but poor family.

5. The natives took them for children of the sun.

6. Crœsus was showing Solon his ornaments, and displaying his riches.

7. It was Homer who formed the character of the Greek nation.

8. When the thunders of Universal France shall proclaim the grandeur of the poor shepherd-girl, thy ear, young shepherd-girl, will have been deaf for five centuries.

9. As he drew near the place, many of the more youthful courtiers came forth to meet him.

10. While we were eating and drinking the island suddenly trembled.

11. What we supposed to be an island was no more than the back of a large fish.

12. A poor widow once lived in a little cottage.

13. When they were ordered to enter the cell they imagined that the soldiers were joking.

14. Twenty-two refused to sign a document expressing their approval of the proceedings by which Monarchy had been overthrown.

15. She asked him what he thought of the army.

16. Isaac Bickerstaff was an imaginary person.

17. Aunt Maria never allowed any of the girls to travel alone.

18. He found the guinea changed into a bottle of Madeira wine, which he uncorked while Goldsmith unfolded his manuscript.

19. The despatch left it free to Peterborough to join or not to join the expedition, as he pleased.

20. The loss of life among the crews of the vessels was immense. On shore the sufferings of the army were unspeakable.

21. The late Duke of Rutland had a favourite retriever called Prince.

22. The great events which had taken place in India had called into existence a new class of Englishmen, to whom their compatriots gave the name of Nabobs.

23. These persons had generally sprung from families neither ancient nor opulent.

24. Enmity for the aristocracy long continued to distinguish the servants of the Company.

25. A certain physiognomist asserted of Socrates, that he plainly discovered by his features that he was a rogue in his nature.

26. Many a long winter's night I had thought of the profound remarks I should make to Goethe if I should ever see him.

27. The most daring and experienced veterans watched his looks on the field of battle, and would like children obey his slightest sign.

28. The intensity of the cold was so great that no one might dare to touch any metal substance in the open air with his bare hand.

29. I have had means of information of which you could never have dreamed.

30. When we understand what atomic forces really are, when we have solved the riddles of chemistry, we shall be fit to start on our quest after the deepest mystery of life.

31. Had an angel from heaven bid him abandon his work, he would have answered with a curse.

32. Then Alpheus bold,
On his glacier cold,
With his trident the mountains strook;
And opened a chasm
In the rocks:—with the spasm
All Erymanthus shook.

33. When I am forgotten, as I shall be,
And sleep in dull cold marble, where no mention
Of me more must be heard of—say I taught thee.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

I.—The Subjunctive in Principal Sentences.

42. The subjunctive is used in principal sentences—

1. As the imperative of the third person, with or without que.

Que votre volonté soit faite. **Vive le roi!**
Thy will be done. *Long live the king!*

Que celui qui est sans péché jette la première pierre.
Let him that is without sin cast the first stone.

Dure à jamais le mal s'il y faut ce remède.
Let the evil last for ever if this is the only remedy.

2. Optatively, with or without **que**, with inversion.

Puissé-je la voir heureuse!
May I see her happy!

À Dieu ne plaise!
God forbid!

Plût au ciel!
Would to heaven!

Puissiez-vous réussir!
May you succeed!

3. Concessively, with or without **que**.

Que ces faits soient vrais ou non.
Whether these facts be true or not.

Soient *v* **la vitesse,** *t* **le temps, et** *d* **la distance parcourue.**
Let v *be the velocity,* t *the time, and* d *the distance traversed.*

NOTE.—The concessive use of the inverted imperfect subjunctive, in subordinate clauses, for **quand (même)** with the conditional, is common.

Elle supplia l'abbesse de lui donner un asile, ne fût-ce que dans les cloîtres.
She implored the abbess to give her refuge, if only in the cloisters.

§ 43. The use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional perfect has already been mentioned (§ 41).

On eût dit un orage d'été.
It was like a summer storm.

§ 44. The present subjunctive, **je ne sache pas**, is used in principal sentences for **je ne sais pas** to make the assertion less absolute, or to give a touch of irony.

Je ne sache pas que vous ayez le droit de . . .
I am not aware that you have any right to . . .

Note also the parenthetical use of **que je sache** (Lat. *quod sciam*).

Aucun voyageur, que je sache, n'en a fait mention.
No traveller, so far as I know, has mentioned the fact.

II.—The Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.

Scheme of the Subjunctive.

A. Subjunctive with que, dependent on a verb denoting—	1. desire, *e.g.* exiger que, *to require that.*	
	2. emotion, *e.g.* enrager que, *to be furious that.*	
	3. doubt, *e.g.* douter que, *to doubt that.*	
B. Subjunctive with compound conjunctions, which may be—	1. final, *e.g.* afin que, *in order that.*	
	2. conditional, *e.g.* pourvu que, *provided that.*	
	3. temporal, *e.g.* avant que, *before.*	
	4. concessive, *e.g.* quoique, *although.*	
	5. negative, *e.g.* non que, *not that.*	
C. Subjunctive introduced by a relative—	1. expressing purpose.	
	2. expressing doubt.	
	3. modifying a superlative.	

A. The Subjunctive with Que.

§ 45. 1. The subjunctive is used after a verb denoting desire.

(i) Wish, choice: *e.g.* **vouloir, désirer,** *to wish;* **aimer mieux, préférer,** *to prefer.*

(ii) Command, permission, request: *e.g.* **commander, ordonner,** *to order;* **permettre,** *to permit;* **défendre,** *to forbid;* **prier,** *to beg;* **exiger,** *to require.*

(iii) Decision, opinion: *e.g.* **convenir,** *to agree;* **approuver, trouver bon,** *to approve;* **blâmer,** *to disapprove.*

To these may be added a number of impersonal expressions of similar force.

il faut, / **il est nécessaire,** } *it is necessary.*	**il vaut mieux,** *it is better.*
il suffit, *it is enough.*	**il est temps,** *it is time.*
il convient, *it is fitting.*	**il est bon,** *it is good.*
il importe, *it is important.*	**il est juste,** *it is right.*
	il est naturel, *it is natural.*

Je désire qu'il fasse ce voyage.
I wish him to make this journey.

Le général défendit qu'aucun soldat entrât dans la ville.
The general prohibited all soldiers from entering the town.

Nous trouvons bon que l'affaire lui soit confiée.
We approve of the matter being entrusted to him.

Il faut que vous ayez patience.
You must have patience.

§ 46. 2. The subjunctive is used after a verb denoting emotion.

(i) Joy: *e.g.* **se réjouir**, *to rejoice;* **être charmé, ravi, bien aise**, etc., *to be charmed, delighted, very glad*, etc.

(ii) Sorrow, shame, pity: *e.g.* **se fâcher**, *to be angry;* **avoir honte**, *to be ashamed;* **regretter**, *to regret;* **être désolé, mortifié**, etc., *to be very sorry, annoyed*, etc.

(iii) Astonishment, fear: *e.g.* **s'étonner, trouver étrange**, *to be astonished;* **craindre, avoir peur**, *to fear.*

To these may be added a number of impersonal expressions of similar force.

il est heureux, *it is fortunate.*
il est fâcheux, *it is annoying.*
il est honteux, **c'est une honte**, } *it is shameful.*
il est curieux, *it is curious.*
il est regrettable, *it is to be regretted.*
c'est dommage, **c'est pitié**, } *it is a pity.*

Nous sommes charmés que vous ayez réussi.
We are delighted that you have succeeded.

Il enrageait q'un ennemi presque barbare lui opposât une résistance invincible.
He was furious at the invincible resistance offered him by an almost barbarous enemy.

Nous craignons que cela ne vous coûte cher.
We fear that that will cost you dear.

C'est dommage qu'il soit si obstiné.
It is a pity he is so obstinate.

NOTE 1.—After verbs of fearing an expletive **ne** accompanies the subjunctive (§ 184, 2).

NOTE 2.—Many of the above verbs may be followed by **de ce que**, *of this that*, and the indicative: in that case the subordinate sentence is supposed to have a tone of greater certainty.

{ **Il se plaint que vous l'ayez trompé.**
Il se plaint de ce que vous l'avez trompé.
He complains that you have deceived him.

In the first sentence the speaker is neutral; in the second he accepts the complaint as legitimate.

NOTE 3.—The subjunctive is replaced by the future after **espérer**, *to hope*, when used affirmatively.

§ 47. 3. The subjunctive is used after a verb expressing doubt. This applies to—

(i) Verbs which of themselves express doubt: *e.g.* **douter**, *to doubt*; **se douter**, *to suspect*; **nier**, *to deny*.

(ii) Verbs which acquire the same force by being used negatively, interrogatively, or hypothetically: *e.g.* **croire**, *to believe*; **penser**, *to think*; **espérer**, *to hope*; **se rappeler**, **se souvenir**, *to remember*; **dire**, *to say*; **déclarer**, *to declare*; **prétendre**, *to maintain*; **promettre**, *to promise*, etc. Such verbs usually express perception or assertion.

To these may be added many impersonal expressions.

(i) **il est rare**, *it is rare.*
il semble, *it seems.*
il est douteux, *it is doubtful.*
il se peut, **il est possible**, } *it is possible.*
il est impossible, *it is impossible.*

(ii) **il est sûr**, *it is sure.*
il est certain, *it is certain.*
il est évident, *it is evident.*
il est probable, *it is probable.*
il paraît, *it appears.*
il me semble, *it seems to me.*
il est vrai, *it is true.*

The verbs and impersonal expressions in class (i) almost always take the subjunctive; those in class (ii) take the indicative when used affirmatively.

(i) **Il nie que nous ayons raison.**
He denies that we are right.

Il est possible que cela soit vrai.
That may be true.

(ii) **Il ne croit pas que nous ayons raison.**
He does not believe we are right.

but, **Il croit que nous avons raison.**
He believes we are right.

Espérez-vous qu'il en soit ainsi?
Do you hope it will be so?

but, **J'espère qu'il en sera ainsi.**
I hope it will be so.

Il était loin de deviner qu'il eût été trahi.
He was far from guessing that he had been betrayed.

but, **Il devinait qu'on le trahissait.**
He guessed that he was being betrayed.

Il n'est pas sûr que vous ayez raison.
It is not certain that you are right.

but, **Il est sûr que cela est vrai.**
It is certain that that is true.

NOTE 1.—For expletive **ne** after **douter** and **nier** *see* § 184, 5.

NOTE 2.—**Il semble**, which asserts nothing, is usually followed by the subjunctive; but **il me semble** and **il paraît**, the use of which implies the recognition by the speaker of the statement that follows, take the indicative.

§ 48. The present subjunctive is also used as a future.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne.
I do not believe he will come.

B. The Subjunctive with Compound Conjunctions.

§ 49. 1. Final conjunctions which require to be followed by the subjunctive are—

afin que **pour que**	*in order that.*
de crainte que . . . ne **de peur que . . . ne**	*for fear that, lest* (§ 184, 2).

Afin qu'aux yeux de tous la leçon soit plus haute,
Je veux que le malheur soit plus grand que la faute.
I wish the suffering to be greater than the offence, in order that the lesson may be more conspicuous to all.

Rentrez de bonne heure de crainte qu'il ne pleuve.
Come home early for fear it should rain.

NOTE.—Consecutive conjunctions are followed by the subjunctive when they are used with final force. When purely consecutive they are followed by the indicative. Such are—

de sorte que **en sorte que** **de telle sorte que** **de façon que** **de manière que** **si que** **tellement que**	*in such a way that, so that.*

Faites en sorte qu'on soit content de vous.
Act in such a way as to give satisfaction.

but, **Il a fait en sorte qu'on a été content de lui.**
He has acted in such a way as to give satisfaction.

§ 50. 2. Conditional conjunctions requiring to be followed by the subjunctive are—

en cas que **au cas que**	*in case.*
à condition que	*on condition that.*
pourvu que	*provided (that).*
supposé que **en supposant que**	*supposing (that).*
à moins que . . . ne	*unless* (§ 184, 2).

En cas qu'il soit parti avant mon arrivée, donnez-lui ce billet.
In case he has started before my arrival, give him this note.

Je n'irai pas à moins que vous ne m'accompagniez.
I shall not go unless you go with me.

NOTE.—**Dans le cas où** is followed by the conditional, and **à condition que** may be followed by the future, *e.g.* **dans le cas où cela serait vrai,** *in case of that being true;* **à condition que vous le permettrez,** *on condition that you allow it.* **Si** (and **comme si**) are sometimes

followed by the pluperfect subjunctive, *e.g.* **s'il eût voulu le faire, il l'aurait fait,** *if he had wanted to, he would have done it;* **les sauvages semèrent la poudre comme si c'eût été du grain,** *the savages sowed the gunpowder as if it had been grain.*

§ 51. 3. Temporal conjunctions are followed by the subjunctive when the action referred to in the subordinate sentence takes place in future time, from the point of view of the principal sentence. Such are—

avant que	*before.*
en attendant que	*until.*
jusqu'à ce que	

La bataille fut perdue avant que le général se fût réveillé.
The battle was lost before the general woke up.

NOTE.—**Après que,** *after,* **dès que, aussitôt que,** *as soon as,* **tant que,** *as long as,* **quand, lorsque,** *when,* **puisque,** *since,* are followed by the indicative.

La prison perdit ce nom aussitôt qu'il y fut entré.
The prison lost the name as soon as he had entered.

§ 52. 4. Concessive conjunctions requiring to be followed by the subjunctive are—

bien que	*although.*
quoique	
encore que	
nonobstant que	
malgré que	*notwithstanding.*
soit que . . . soit que	*whether . . . or.*
pour peu que	*if . . . ever so little.*

Bien que la chose soit improbable, elle n'est pas impossible.
Although the thing is improbable, it is not impossible.

Pour peu que vous lui offriez un prix raisonnable.
If only you offer him anything like a reasonable price.

NOTE.—Akin to the concessive construction is the subjunctive after the conjunctival phrases **où que, en quelque lieu** (or **endroit**) **que,** *wherever,* **aussi loin que,** *as far as,* and in sentences introduced by **quelque . . . que, si . . . que** (§ 152), *however,* **quel que,** *whatever* (*adj.*) (§ 152), **qui que,** *whoever,* **quoi que** *whatever* (*pron.*).

§ 53. 5. Negative conjunctions requiring to be followed by the subjunctive are—

non que ce n'est pas que	*not that.*
loin que	*far from.*
sans que	*without.*

Je ne peux parler sans que vous m'interrompiez.
I cannot speak without your interrupting me.

Idiomatic Uses of que.

§ 54. **Que** may be used,

1. To avoid repeating the simple conjunctions **comme, quand,** and **si.**

Comme il était tard et qu'il commençait à pleuvoir.
As it was late and beginning to rain.

Quand on est jeune et qu'on n'a pas de soucis.
When we are young and have no cares.

Note.—When **que** is thus used for **si** it is followed by the subjunctive.

Si cela était vrai et que Louis l'apprît.
If that were true and Louis heard of it.

2. To avoid repeating any of the compound conjunctions. It is then followed by the same mood as the conjunction which it replaces.

Lorsqu'on pense à ces choses, et qu'on veut s'en rendre compte, on est frappé d'étonnement.
When we think of these things, and try to understand them, we are struck with astonishment.

Bien qu'il soit résolu, et qu'il ait trouvé des amis, je ne crois pas qu'il réussisse.
Although he is resolute, and has found friends, I do not think he will succeed.

§ 55. **Que** may also be used instead of the compound conjunctions **jusqu'à ce que, afin que, pour que, depuis que, pendant que, à moins que, sans que.**

Attendez qu'on vienne vous trouver.
Wait till some one comes for you.

Combien y a-t-il que vous avez quitté Cambridge ?
How long is it since you left Cambridge?

NOTE.—**Que** used for **sans que** is followed by an expletive **ne**.

{**On ne peut rien faire sans qu'il se trouve offensé.**
On ne peut rien faire qu'il ne se trouve offensé.
It is impossible to do anything without his being offended.

§ 56. **Que**, whether followed by the indicative or subjunctive, must never be omitted.

J'espère qu'il réussira.
I hope he will succeed.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne.
I do not believe he will come.

C. THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY A RELATIVE.

§ 57. 1. The subjunctive is used after a relative to indicate purpose.

Formons un traité,
Qui mette pour jamais mes droits en sûreté.
Let us make a treaty to secure my rights for ever.

NOTE.—The subjunctive is used in the same way after the conjunction **où**, used instead of a relative governed by a preposition (§ 114).

Montrez-moi un asile où je puisse trouver le repos.
Show me a refuge where I can find rest.

§ 58. 2. When the existence of the object denoted by the antecedent is denied or put in doubt by the principal sentence.

Il n'y en a pas un seul qui réponde.
There is not one of them to answer.

Où trouver un homme qui soit sans défaut ?
How find a faultless man?

§ 59. 3. When the subordinate clause modifies a superlative.

C'est le plus grand fourbe que j'aie jamais connu.
He is the greatest rascal I ever met.

NOTE.—Le premier, le dernier, le seul, and l'unique, are regarded as superlatives.

Les hommes sont le premier livre que l'écrivain doive étudier.
Mankind is the first book that the writer must study.

EXERCISE 7.

1. Whatever were the misfortunes that had overwhelmed her, Mary Queen of Scots had not allowed herself to be cast down.
2. It seemed that the king's distress could hardly be increased.
3. That nothing might be wanting to Frederick's distress, he lost his mother just at this time.
4. The English commander may have thought that he should be pressed to stay.
5. However poor he may seem to the eyes of some, he is really richer than most men.
6. You have done nothing which you could have avoided, nothing, certainly, which renders you culpable.
7. It will be the last week I am ever likely to have with you.
8. It was natural that these men should exhibit some of the awkwardness and some of the pomposity of upstarts.
9. In this estimate of Goethe as a moral being, few people will differ with us, unless it were the religious bigot.
10. Do we mean, then, that a childish error could permanently master his understanding?
11. Indeed, to the latter circumstance might be owing that meekness of spirit which gained him such universal popularity.
12. Providence never intended to make the management of public affairs a mystery to be comprehended only by a few people of sublime genius.
13. I did not doubt he was making disclosures to her of my villainy.
14. They never talked about anything worth talking about.
15. They fear that their special topics may not be cared for by some of the persons present.
16. Steele said that the conversation of Anderson was at once the most polite and the most mirthful that could be imagined.

17. The rules of the service insured that every face should be clean-shaven.

18. This sword is all the fortune, my dear Le Fèvre, which God has left thee; but if He has given thee a heart to fight thy way with it in the world, and thou dost it like a man of honour, 'tis enough for us.

19. Jacques Cœur was one of the richest merchants who ever existed.

20. These were the only means which she had at her command for carrying her decrees into execution.

21. Thereupon the judge ordered him to be taken to prison.

22. All these fine fellows are praying that the enemy may land, and that there may be a battle.

23. "I will take it, were its walls of iron," Philip exclaimed in wrath.

24. They were the most helpless creatures at a railway station that I ever beheld.

25. The Senate decreed that all such display must cease, and a solemn unembellished black be substituted.

26. Though she would not hurt a toad, she cannot love it like the bird.

27. It would have been impossible to find any individual article wanted.

28. It seemed to her the only way of being in harmony with circumstances would be to live in a little brown tent on the commons.

29. It seemed that the negotiations would be broken off.

30. The buccaneer was not regarded as a personage with whom it was disreputable to traffic.

31. Curses and falsehoods do verily return "always home," wide as they may wander.

32. There was no fear that an imprudent word might expose one to matrimony and settlements.

33. Celestial Nepenthe! though a Pyrrhus conquer empires, and an Alexander sack the world, he finds thee not.

34. The duke said the animal had not behaved well lately.

35. Maggie thought her misery had reached a pitch at which gipsydom was her only refuge.

36. The piper declared he could not give up for a moment this privilege.

37. She had been often told she was like a gipsy.

38. When decay'd, may he mingle his dust with your own.

39. Costly thy habit as thy purse can buy,
But not expressed in fancy.

THE INFINITIVE.

The Pure Infinitive.

§ 60. The infinitive without a preposition may be used—

1. As the subject of the verb **être**.

Travailler est un plaisir.
Work is a pleasure.

Note.—When the complement is also an infinitive the neuter pronoun **ce** is added (§ 183). If the sentence is negative **ce** may be omitted.

Penser c'est vivre.
To think is to live.

Végéter (ce) n'est pas vivre.
Vegetating is not living.

2. As the logical subject of the impersonal verbs **il faut, il vaut mieux, il vaut autant, (mieux vaut, autant vaut,) il fait bon, il fait beau, il fait cher, il me semble.**

Il faut battre le fer pendant qu'il est chaud.
Strike the iron while it is hot.

Il ferait beau voir cela!
A fine sight that would be!

Note.—When **il vaut mieux** is followed by two contrasted infinitives the second of them is preceded by **de**.

Mieux vaut se taire que de dire des sottises.
It is better to hold your tongue than to talk nonsense.

3. As the nominative complement of **paraître, sembler, se trouver, être jugé (censé, réputé,** etc.).

Vous paraissez hésiter.
You appear to hesitate.

4. After the modal auxiliaries **vouloir, pouvoir, savoir, devoir** (§ 11), and also after **oser, faire, laisser,** used with auxiliary force.

À peine sait-il lire.
He can hardly read.

Faites ouvrir les portes.
Have the gates opened.

5. After verbs of motion to indicate purpose.

Quand irez-vous le voir ?
When are you going to see him ?

6. After verbs of wishing or preferring.

Daignez me dire ce que vous entendez faire.
Be so good as to tell me what you mean to do.

NOTE 1.—**Aimer mieux** followed by two infinitives has the same construction as **il vaut mieux**.

J'aime mieux dire des sottises que de me taire toujours.
I had rather talk nonsense than always be silent.

7. After verbs of thinking and perception.

Il croit avoir découvert la pie au nid.
He thinks he has made a great discovery.

Le moine tira la corde et se sentit enlever.
The monk pulled the rope and felt himself lifted.

8. After verbs of assertion.

Il prétend vouloir parler d'une affaire qui peut vous être profitable.
He says that he wants to speak of a matter which may be to your advantage.

9. In the following elliptical constructions :— (i) in questions, (ii) in exclamations, (iii) in formal directions, (iv) for English *to think that . . .*

(i) **Qu'y faire ?** *How can it be helped ?*

(ii) **Lui, s'oublier à un tel point !** *He to so far forget himself !*

(iii) **S'adresser au bureau de ce journal.**
Apply at the office of this paper.

(iv) **Et penser (or dire) que personne n'ose dire la vérité pour le défendre !**
And to think that no one dares to tell the truth to defend him !

§ **61.** The following is a pretty complete list of verbs which are followed by the infinitive without any preposition.

affirmer	aller	avouer	considérer
aimer autant	assurer	compter	courir
aimer mieux	avoir beau	confesser	croire

daigner	il fait bon	*préférer	sentir
*désirer	il faut	pressentir	*souhaiter
devoir	se figurer	*prétendre	soutenir
dire	s'imaginer	pouvoir	témoigner
écouter	*jurer	protester	se trouver
entendre	laisser	raconter	autant vaut
envoyer	mener	reconnaître	mieux vaut
*espérer	*nier	rentrer	venir
être censé	oser	retourner	voir
faillir	ouïr	revenir	vouloir
faire	paraître	savoir	
il fait beau	penser	sembler	

* Also with **de**.

Faire, Laisser, Entendre, Voir, Sentir.

§ **62.** The verbs **faire**, *to make*, **laisser**, *to let*, **entendre**, *to hear*, **voir**, *to see*, **sentir**, *to feel*, followed by the infinitive of an intransitive verb, take an accusative object.

Il faut laisser parler le monde.	**On les vit venir.**
People will talk.	*They were seen coming.*

§ **63.** When these verbs are followed by the infinitive of a verb which can be used transitively, this infinitive may correspond to an English active or passive.

Active.	Passive.
Il fit signer les témoins.	**Il fit arrêter les coupables.**
He made the witnesses sign.	*He had the culprits arrested.*

§ **64.** When these verbs are followed by the infinitive of a transitive verb, which is itself accompanied by a direct object, their own object becomes indirect.

On lui a fait avaler bien des affronts.
He has had to pocket many insults.

J'ai entendu raconter à ce voyageur l'histoire de ses aventures.
I have heard this traveller relate the story of his adventures.

NOTE.—Such sentences, without context, are often ambiguous—*e. g.* **je le lui ai entendu dire**, *I heard him* (*her*) *say it*, or *I heard it said to him* (*to her*).

Obs. The employment of these verbs is further dealt with in the rules on the past participle (§§ 84–85).

The Infinitive with À.

§ 65. The infinitive with à is used —

1. After the following verbs.

s'abaisser	condescendre	exhorter	se plaire
aboutir	consentir	exposer	porter
s'accorder	consister	se fatiguer	pousser
accoutumer	conspirer	former	se prendre
s'acharner	contribuer	gagner	préparer
aider	convier	habituer	provoquer
aimer	décider (trans.)	haïr	réduire
amener	se décider	se hasarder	seefusrer
amuser	désapprendre	hésiter	renoncer
animer	destiner	incliner	répugner
appeler	déterminer (trans.)	instruire	se résigner
s'appliquer	dévouer	s'intéresser	résoudre (trans.)
apprendre	disposer	inviter	se résoudre
s'apprêter	divertir	se mettre	rester
aspirer	donner	montrer	réussir
s'attacher	employer	s'obstiner	servir
attendre	encourager	s'offrir	songer
autoriser	engager	s'opiniâtrer	se soumettre
avoir	enhardir	parvenir	suffire
avoir peine	enseigner	passer le temps	surprendre
balancer	s'entendre	pencher	tarder
se borner	s'épuiser	penser	tendre
chercher	s'étudier	perdre	tenir
se complaire	exceller	persévérer	travailler
concourir	exciter	persister	trouver
condamner	exercer	plaire	viser

2. As the complement of the following adjectives—

aisé / **facile**	*easy.*	**lent**	*slow.*
		long	*long.*
attentif	*attentive.*	**mauvais**	*bad.*
bon	*good.*	**prêt**	*ready.*
dangereux	*dangerous.*	**prompt**	*quick.*
difficile	*difficult.*	**sujet**	*subject.*
disposé / **enclin**	*inclined.*	**le dernier**	*the last.*
		le premier	*the first.*
habile	*clever.*	**le seul**	*the only.*

Les Anglais sont prompts à s'enflammer, lents à s'apaiser.
The English are quick to anger and slow to be appeased.

Le capitaine fut le dernier à quitter le vaisseau.
The captain was the last to leave the ship.

NOTE.—When such an adjective forms part of an impersonal expression the infinitive with **de** must be used (§ 66).

Il serait dangereux de faire cela.
It would be dangerous to do that.

3. As the equivalent of the Latin gerundive in **-dus**.

C'est une occasion à ne pas perdre.
It is an opportunity not to be lost.

4. To modify substantives and adjectives by indicating purpose or characteristics.

Une salle à manger.
A dining-room.

Un problème à rendre fou.
A maddening problem.

Il est fou à lier.
He is raving mad.

Il n'est pas homme à perdre le fruit de ses efforts.
He is not the (kind of) man to lose the fruit of his efforts.

5. Adverbially.

À vouloir trop prouver, on ne prouve rien.
By trying to prove too much, we prove nothing.

THE INFINITIVE WITH DE.

§ 66. The infinitive with **de** is used—

1. After the following verbs.

s'abstenir	appréhender	cesser	il convient
accuser	s'attrister	charger	craindre
achever	avertir	choisir	crier
affecter	s'aviser	commander	décider(intrans.)
s'affliger	n'avoir garde	conjurer	dédaigner
il s'agit	avoir peur	conseiller	défendre
ambitionner	blâmer	se consoler	défier
s'apercevoir	briguer	se contenter	dégoûter
s'applaudir	brûler	convenir	se dépêcher

désespérer	féliciter	omettre	se réjouir
se désoler	finir	ordonner	remercier
disconvenir	se flatter	oublier	se repentir
dispenser	*forcer	pardonner	reprocher
dissuader	frémir	parler	résoudre (intr.)
écrire	se garder	permettre	se ressouvenir
*s'efforcer	se glorifier	persuader	rire
empêcher	gronder	se piquer	risquer
*s'empresser	hasarder	plaindre	rougir
enjoindre	se hâter	se plaindre	il sied
ennuyer	imaginer	prescrire	sommer
s'enorgueillir	s'indigner	presser	se soucier
enrager	s'inquiéter	présumer	souffrir
entreprendre	jurer	prévenir	souhaiter
essayer	louer	prier	soupçonner
s'étonner	mander	promettre	se souvenir
éviter	méditer	proposer	il suffit
excuser	se mêler	protester	suggérer
exempter	menacer	punir	supplier
se fâcher	mériter	se rappeler	tarder (impers.)
faire bien	mourir	recommander	tenter
faire mieux	négliger	redouter	trembler
faire semblant	*obliger	refuser	trouver bon
feindre	offrir	regretter	se vanter

* Also with à.

2. After impersonal verbs not mentioned in § 60.

Il importe de savoir la vérité.
It is important to know the truth.

3. After many adjectives denoting mental attitudes.

Je suis heureux de vous voir.
I am glad to see you.

4. For the English verbal substantive in *-ing* dependent on another substantive.

L'art d'être grand-père. **La joie de vivre.**
The art of being a grandfather. *The joy of living.*

The Infinitive after other Prepositions.

§ 67. **Après** is only used with the perfect infinitive.

Après avoir dit cela, il se tut.
After saying that, he was silent.

§ 68. **Par** is only used after **commencer** and **finir**.

Il commença par rire et finit par pleurer.
He began by laughing and ended by weeping.

§ 69. **Pour** usually expresses purpose. It is also used—

(i) Before an infinitive dependent on an adjective modified by **trop** or **assez**.

(ii) Before a perfect infinitive to translate the English *for* and *through*.

(iii) Forming with the infinitive **être** the equivalent of the English *though*.

Il faut travailler pour devenir riche.
One must work to become rich.

(i) **Il est trop paresseux pour travailler.**
He is too lazy to work.

(ii) **Il fut chassé pour avoir désobei.**
He was dismissed for disobedience.

Il échoua pour s'être trop hâté.
He failed through over haste.

(iii) **Notre histoire, pour être ensanglantée, n'est pas sans gloire.**
Our history, although bloody, is not inglorious.

§ 70. The infinitive is also used after a number of compound prepositions. Such are—

à condition de, *on condition of.*	**de peur de**, *for fear of.*
afin de, *in order to.*	**de crainte de**,
à force de, *by dint of.*	**de manière à**, *so as to.*
avant de, *before.*	**de façon à**,
à moins de, *unless.*	**jusqu'à**, *so far as to.*

À force de forger on devient forgeron.
Practice makes perfect.

Quelques-unes des villes allaient jusqu'à bannir les Juifs.
Some of the towns went so far as to banish the Jews.

The Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 71. The construction of the accusative and infinitive, so common in English, is in French limited to the following cases—

1. With **faire** and **laisser** used causatively.

Nous l'avons laissé partir.
We let him depart.

2. With verbs of perception such as **entendre, voir, sentir.**

La nuit il entendait rugir les lions.
At night he heard the lions roar.

3. In relative clause dependent on a verb of thinking or asserting.

Une inscription qu'on prétend être illisible.
An inscription said to be illegible.

§ 72. In other cases a subordinate clause must be substituted.

Je sais qu'il est honnête homme.
I know him to be an honest man.

Note.—On the other hand, the infinitive is preferred to a subordinate clause when the subject of the principal sentence is also that of the subordinate clause.

Je voudrais être vous.
I wish I were you.

EXERCISE 8.

1. The king asked him how he dared to come to England in arms.
2. I came to recover my father's kingdom.
3. He endeavoured to throw the blame of the defeat on the brave Irish.
4. William the Conqueror had a monastery built on the battle-field.
5. Crœsus was showing Solon his ornaments, hoping to excite the philosopher's envy.
6. It was reserved to a poet to form the character of the Greeks.
7. The parliament sent a message to his widow, requesting her to come over and assume the government of the Scotch kingdom.
8. All the chiefs of the Senate appeared in arms to support Marius.
9. It might not have been easy to reduce the insurgents.

10. Persons are always advised to drink no water without mixing wine or spirit with it.

11. He amazed those present by saying that he would go and kill this lion if they would find him a guide.

12. Every preparation had been made to give him a solemn and magnificent reception.

13. First were paraded the Indians.

14. Many gentlemen of high rank pledged themselves to defend her person and restore her power.

15. I claim no merit for endeavours to do a service to my fellow-subjects.

16. Without looking for the approbation of other men, my conscience is satisfied.

17. What remains to be done concerns the collective body of the people.

18. They called to us to re-embark as soon as possible.

19. Rose loved to run about the fields and to pick flowers and catch butterflies.

20. Thereupon the judge ordered him to be taken to prison, for having struck one of the officers of the law.

21. It was agreed to let the past be.

22. Mary Queen of Scots had not allowed herself to be cast down.

23. He had made an arrangement with the French generals, which left them at liberty to turn their arms against the Prussian dominions.

24. All the wits had combined to keep up the joke.

25. The corruption of death began to ferment into new forms of life.

26. Many men have over-reached themselves by an exaggerated estimate of their own importance.

27. He was interested by what he heard of the nascent society.

28. Richelieu sent to ask the members of the new society whether they would be willing to become a body with a regular character.

29. The duke hastened to make his apologies.

30. Pray be sure to order your matters so as to spend all the next week with me.

31. The brilliant Mary Montague said that she had known all the wits.

32. I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on.

33. Still in thy right hand carry gentle peace,
To silence envious tongues.

34. Why should I die, then, or basely despair?

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

§ 73. The present participle is invariable, while the adjective of similar form agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

Au fond, se détachant à l'horizon, on voyait quelques dômes étincelant au soleil.

In the distance, standing out on the horizon, could be seen a few domes sparkling in the sun.

Des Muses la troupe dansante,
Heureuse d'une sœur naissante,
Accourut près de mon berceau.

The dancing troop of the Muses, rejoicing in a new sister, flocked round my cradle.

§ 74. The present participle may be distinguished from the verbal adjective by the following tests: it may be the equivalent of (i) a relative clause, (ii) an adverbial clause; it may have (iii) a direct or (iv) an indirect object, and (v) may be accompanied by a negative. All these are illustrated by the following sentence.

Les Bourguignons, ne connaissant pas la prudence, et n'obéissant qu'à leurs passions, se trouvèrent dans une situation terrifiante.

The Burgundians, not knowing (or, *who did not know*, or, *because they did not know*) *prudence* (dir. obj.) *and only obeying their passions* (indir. obj.) *found themselves in a terrible position.*

THE GERUND.

§ 75. The gerund in **-ant** is, like the present participle, invariable, but is usually preceded by the preposition **en**. It should always relate to the subject of the sentence.

"Bonjour," reprit-il, en faisant un pas vers la jeune fille.
"Good-day," he replied, taking a step towards the girl.

Je l'ai rencontré en descendant l'escalier.
I met him (as I was) coming downstairs.

Je l'ai rencontré descendant l'escalier.
I met him (as he was) coming downstairs.

§ 76. (i) The present participle must be used in assigning a motive.

(ii) The gerund must be used to denote a means.

(iii) Otherwise the two forms may generally be employed indifferently.

(i) **Tout l'équipage, désespérant alors de son salut, se précipitait à la mer.**
All the crew, giving up all hope of rescue, threw themselves into the sea.

(ii) **On tâcha de sauver le vaisseau en jetant les canons à la mer.**
They tried to save the ship by throwing the guns overboard.

(iii) **Il sortit à pied, précédant les gardes et promenant de tous côtés ses regards, comme s'il eût marché à la tête de ses soldats. En passant devant la prison de Laud, il s'arrêta.**
He came out on foot, preceding the guards, and looking about him on every side as though he were marching at the head of his soldiers. (While) passing in front of Laud's prison, he paused.

§ 77. The gerund is often preceded by the adverb **tout** in the sense of *while* or *though*.

Tout en étudiant les livres il faut aussi étudier les hommes.
While studying books we should also study men.

Ils se montrèrent indignes de la liberté, tout en y prétendant.
Though aspiring to freedom, they showed themselves unworthy of it.

EXERCISE 9.

1. The insect, not finding a firm hold for its little feet, slipped and fell to the ground.
2. An earthquake, exceeding in violence that of last January, laid almost every house in the island in ruins.
3. The dress of the Spaniards, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising to the natives.
4. The chief, looking at the gentleman, asked him how he was dressed when he lost his cloak.
5. A St. Petersburger, on returning from a journey, always congratulates himself on being able to slake his thirst.
6. They all made fun of him on hearing this.
7. The aged prince, feeling himself weak, announced to them that his last hour had come.

8. She thought of her father as she ran along, but she reconciled herself to the idea of parting with him by determining that she would secretly send him a letter.

9. As each terrible feature of the catastrophe became more apparent, the excitement became more intense.

10. "And this," said my uncle Toby, taking up the sword in his hand, and drawing it out of the scabbard as he spoke, "and this, Le Fevre, I'll save for thee."

11. They worship his first appearance by uncovering their heads and bowing to the earth with the most humble prostration.

12. I caught sight of my cousin, pulling stroke to the second boat, with set teeth and flashing eyes, the great muscles on his bare arms springing up into knots at every rapid stroke.

13. And gliding and springing,
She went, ever singing.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The Past Participle without an Auxiliary.

§ 78. The past participle may be used as a simple adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the substantive which it qualifies.

Il me reconnut à la lueur des maisons embrasées.
Né recognized me by the light of the burning houses.

Un homme y était couché, les yeux fermés.
A man was lying there, with closed eyes.

Il fut livré aux ennemis, pieds et poings liés.
He was delivered to the enemy, bound hand and foot.

The Past Participle with Être.

§ 79. The past participle with **être** agrees with the subject of the sentence. This rule applies to all verbs used in the passive voice, and to all intransitive verbs conjugated with **être** (§§ 7–9). For reflexive verbs *see* §§ 86–88.

Les portes seront fermées à huit heures.
The gates will be shut at eight o'clock.

Vos deux tantes sont arrivées.
Your two aunts have arrived.

The Past Participle with Avoir.

§ 80. The past participle used with **avoir** agrees with a preceding direct object, but in all other cases remains invariable. Such agreement can obviously only take place in the compound tenses of transitive verbs. The preceding direct object may be—

(i) A personal pronoun.

(ii) A relative.

(iii) An interrogative, including **que de . . . ! combien de . . . ! quel . . . !**

(i) **Il nous a trompés.**
He has deceived us.

(ii) **Voici la lettre qu'il a écrite.**
Here is the letter which he has written.

(iii) **Quels livres avez-vous lus ?**
Which books have you read?

Que de larmes il a versées !
How many tears he has shed!

Obs. It should be remembered that many verbs which take a direct object in English govern the dative in French, and *vice versâ* (§§ 14–15).

Pourquoi ne nous (dat.) **avez-vous pas obéi ?**
Why have you not obeyed us?

Il nous (acc.) **a écoutés avec beaucoup d'attention.**
He listened to us with great attention.

§ 81. In the case of collective substantives followed by a plural complement the participle may agree with the collective or with the complement according to sense. It always agrees with the plural complement of adverbs of quantity, **combien de, autant de, beaucoup de**, etc.

C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.
Half of the furniture has been seized.

Il a revendu la moitié des meubles qu'il avait achetés.
He has re-sold half of the furniture that he had bought.

Autant de combats il a livrés, autant de victoires il a remportées.
He has gained as many victories as he has fought battles.

Combien d'otages a-t-on exigés ?
How many hostages are required ?

§ 82. After the pronoun **en**, taking the place of a direct object, the participle remains invariable, except when **en** is accompanied by an adverb of quantity.

Les éléphants de Pyrrhus effrayèrent les Romains, qui n'en avaient jamais vu auparavant.
The elephants of Pyrrhus terrified the Romans, who had never seen any before.

Combien en avez-vous vus ?
How many of them have you seen ?

§ 83. The modal auxiliaries always have as direct object an infinitive, expressed or understood.

Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu (rendre).
I rendered him all the services that I could.

§ 84. The past participles **vu, entendu, laissé**, followed by an infinitive (§§ 62–64), can only vary when the preceding direct object is governed by the past participle, and not by the following infinitive.

Je les ai vus tomber.
I saw them fall.

Here **les** is the direct object of **ai vus**; but in the sentence

Je les ai vu décapiter,
I saw them beheaded,

les is the object of the transitive verb **décapiter**, the construction being really *I saw* (*some one*) *behead them.* Similarly—

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.
The lady that I heard sing.

La ballade que j'ai entendu chanter.
The ballad that I heard sung.

Il les a laissés partir.
He let them go.

Il les a laissé congédier.
He had them dismissed.

§ 85. The past participle of **faire**, followed by an infinitive, is invariable.

On les a fait mourir.
They have been put to death.

Les maisons qu'il a fait construire.
The houses that he has had built.

The Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.

§ 86. The auxiliary **être**, used in forming the compound tenses of reflexive verbs, is equivalent to **avoir**. Accordingly, the past participle of reflexive verbs follows the same rule as the past participle used with **avoir**—*i.e.* it agrees with a preceding direct object only. In the case of all naturally reflexive verbs, except **s'arroger**, this direct object is the reflexive pronoun, which agrees in gender and number with the subject.

Elles s'en sont repenties.
They have repented of it.

§ 87. In the case of transitive verbs used reflexively, the reflexive pronoun may be dative, and the participle will then be invariable, unless there be a preceding direct object.

Elles se (acc.) **sont lavées.**
They have washed (themselves).

Elles se (dat.) **sont lavé les mains.**
They have washed their hands (to themselves the hands).

Elles se (acc.) **sont brûlées aux doigts.**
They have burnt their fingers (themselves in the fingers).

Elles se (dat.) **sont brûlé les doigts.**
They have burnt their fingers (to themselves the fingers).

Les droits qu'elles se (dat.) **sont arrogés.**
The rights which they have arrogated to themselves.

§ 88. The past participle of intransitive verbs used reflexively is of course invariable.

Elles se sont nui.
They have injured themselves.

The Past Participle of Impersonal Verbs.

§ 89. The past participle of impersonal verbs is invariable

Les orages qu'il y a eu.
The storms that there have been.

Les efforts qu'il a fallu.
The efforts which it has needed,

La chaleur excessive qu'il a fait.
The great heat that has prevailed.

EXERCISE 10.

1. The church, which escaped the last earthquake, has collapsed.
2. Eleven persons have been killed in the town and about eighty injured.
3. Once accustomed to the Neva water, most people grow so fond of it, that they prefer it to every water in the world.
4. Professions of patriotism are become stale and ridiculous.
5. The freedom of Florence as a republican city was finally destroyed.
6. Whatever were the misfortunes that had overwhelmed her, whatever sorrows she had had to endure, Mary Queen of Scots had not allowed herself to be cast down.
7. The trust she had reposed in the Almighty had never forsaken her.
8. She had shown herself more courageous than would have been supposed, considering her previous conduct, which even her partisans had censured.
9. Threatened with immediate death, and deprived of the spiritual aid which she had so earnestly desired, she had administered it to herself.
10. She had prepared for herself a truly Christian end.
11. They had there acquired large fortunes, which they had brought back to their native land.
12. The projected expedition being one of paramount importance, Mrs. Jarley adjusted Nell's bonnet with her own hands.
13. My eyes, raised in abstraction to the window, caught sight of a figure just passing.
14. To Berlin he was invited by a series of letters, couched in terms of the most enthusiastic friendship and admiration.
15. Under the humble walls of the little Catholic churchyard,
In the heart of the city, they lie, unknown and unnoticed.

NEGATION.

Ne alone used as a Negative.

§ 90. 1. **Ne** alone must be employed to express negation—

(i) After **que** used for **pourquoi**.

(ii) After **prendre garde**, *to take care*.

(iii) In subordinate clauses, dependent on **si** or **tellement** accompanied by a negative.

(i) **Que n'est-il assis lui-même à ce festin!**
Why is he himself not seated at this feast?

(ii) **Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe.**
Take care that you are not deceived.

(iii) **Il n'est si bonne compagnie qui ne se sépare.**
The best of friends must part.

§ 91. 2. **Ne** alone may be employed to express negation—

(i) With **savoir, pouvoir, oser, cesser, bouger.**

(ii) After the interrogatives **qui, que,** used in exclamations.

(iii) In subordinate clauses introduced by **si.**

(iv) In subordinate clauses dependent on sentences beginning with **il y a, voilà,** and referring to time.

(v) Before adverbial phrases of time commencing with **de.**

(vi) In relative clauses dependent on a negative or interrogative sentence.

(vii) Before **autre . . . que.**

(i) **Je ne sais que faire.** **Il n'osa résister.**
I don't know what to do. *He dared not resist*

(ii) **Qui n'en aurait été touché?**
Who would not have been touched by it?

(iii) **Si je ne me trompe, il a quatre-vingts ans.**
He is eighty, if I am not mistaken.

(iv) **Il y a déjà six mois que je ne l'ai vu.**
I have not seen him for six months.

(v) **Elle ne verra sa fille de quinze jours.**
She will not see her daughter for a fortnight.

(vi) **Avez-vous un ami qui ne soit des miens ?**
Have you a friend who is not also mine?

(vii) **Il n'a d'autre loi que ses passions.**
He has no other law than his passions.

NOTE.—When **savoir** means *to have learnt*, **pas** must not be omitted, *e.g.*, **nous ne savons pas notre leçon.** **Pas** is always omitted in **je ne saurais, je ne puis,** *I cannot.*

§ 92. **Ne** alone also occurs in the following stereotyped phrases and others similar to them.

À Dieu ne plaise!	**Qu'à cela ne tienne!**
God forbid!	*Never mind that!*
N'importe.	**Qui ne dit mot, consent.**
No matter.	*Silence gives consent.*
N'eût été son dévouement. . . .	**Ne vous en déplaise.**
But for his devotion. . . .	*An it please you.*

Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort.
Still waters run deepest.

N'avoir garde de . . .
To have not the slightest intention of . . .

EXERCISE 11.

1. I cannot think of such a battle without dismay.
2. How should a man know this story if he had not read it ?
3. Elizabeth could not have formed a very pleasing picture of conjugal felicity.
4. Employments could not be put into more dangerous hands.
5. All along I had been dreading the fulfilment of this promise.
6. Swift could not but confess to Stella that, after all, he had never known any associate so agreeable as Addison.
7. The piper declared he could not give up for a moment the privilege he derived from his ancestors.

8. All that day, from morning until past sunset, the cannon never ceased to roar.

9. They would have demolished him for his ignorance, had not Socrates himself prevented them.

10. My heart's so hardened, I cannot repent.

11. Long ere this I should have slain myself,
Had not sweet pleasure conquered deep despair.

AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 93. The adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive it qualifies; if it qualifies substantives of different gender it is put in the masculine plural.

L'ordre et l'utilité publics ne peuvent être le fruit du crime.
Public order and usefulness cannot be the outcome of crime.

Note 1.—In the case of a substantive with a complement consisting of a preposition and a substantive, the adjective follows the complement, but must agree with the substantive to which it refers, *e.g.* **des bas de coton rouges,** *red cotton stockings,* but, **des bas de coton écru,** *unbleached cotton stockings.*

Note 2.—Substantives used as adjectives of colour are invariable. Such are—**orange, olive, carmin, noisette, marron, cerise, paille, ponceau,** etc. The same rule applies to compound adjectives of colour, such as **rose tendre, bleu foncé, feuille morte,** etc., *e.g.* **des gants paille,** *straw-coloured gloves;* **des cheveux châtain clair,** *light brown hair.*

§ 94. The adjectives **demi** and **nu** are invariable when they precede a substantive with which they are united by a hyphen.

Une demi-heure.	**Une heure et demie.**
Half-an-hour.	*An hour and a half.*

Une grande fille, nu-pieds, tête nue, vint m'ouvrir la barrière.
A tall girl, barefooted and bareheaded, came and opened the gate for me.

§ 95. The adjective **feu,** *late, deceased,* is invariable when it precedes the definite article.

Feu la reine or **la feue reine.**
The late queen.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 96. The natural position of the adjective, used to define a substantive, is in French after the substantive. An adjective preceding a substantive usually indicates a quality inseparable from that substantive, or is used rhetorically. Hence in poetry and in the 'style élevé' the adjective precedes much more frequently than in prose. Compare—

Les Femmes Savantes.	**Le savant professeur.**
The Blue-stockings.	*The learned professor.*
La terre sainte.	**La sainte Bible.**
The Holy Land.	*The Holy Bible.*
De l'eau douce.	**La douce espérance.**
Fresh water.	*Sweet hope.*
Un gentilhomme pauvre.	**Les pauvres prisonniers.**
An impecunious noble.	*The poor prisoners.*

§ 97. The following adjectives usually precede the substantive—**beau, bon, cher, excellent, grand, gros, haut, jeune, joli, long, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, pire, sot, vaste, vieux, vilain.**

§ 98. The following classes of adjectives follow the substantive—

1. Adjectives denoting physical qualities, such as colour, form, temperature, etc.

Une étoffe noire.	**Une tête carrée.**
A black material.	*A square head.*

Un hiver froid.
A cold winter.

2. Adjectives denoting nationality, dignity, office, religion, etc.

L'armée francaise.	**Le prince impérial.**
The French army.	*The Prince Imperial.*

L'église catholique.
The Catholic Church.

3. Adjectives which are themselves modified by adverbs or adverbial phrases.

Un paysage extrêmement beau.
An extremely fine landscape.

Un livre admirable à tous les points de vue.
An admirable book from every point of view.

NOTE.—This does not apply to the adverb **très**, *e.g.* **un très beau paysage.**

4. Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive.

Un homme vertueux et bon.
A virtuous and good man.

NOTE.—It should be noticed that the conjunction **et** must be used in French when two adjectives qualify the same substantive, unless one of them is so closely connected with the substantive as to form with it one idea; thus we say **le bon vieux temps**, *the good old times*, but **un homme avare et mesquin**, *an avaricious, mean man.*

EXERCISE 12.

1. The late Duke of Rutland had a favourite retriever called *Prince.*
2. She bade a touching farewell to that pleasant land of France.
3. Marius insisted on a regular trial.
4. A St. Petersburger always congratulates himself on being able to slake his thirst in the water of his beloved river.
5. On Sunday Mary was a sad and helpless captive in a lonely tower.
6. A poor widow once lived in a little cottage.
7. "It is," he said, "a brave army."
8. But this did not turn the brave hunter from his purpose.
9. Just here, in the most barren and dreary tract of European history, all feudal privileges, all modern nobility take their source.
10. He was able to read a sharp lecture to his impatient landlady.
11. Though she would not hurt a toad, she cannot love it like the bird, with its graceful form, soft feathers, and bright speaking eyes.
12. Mr. Campbell has an invincible antipathy to the Highland bagpipe, which sings in the nose with a most alarming twang, and, indeed, is quite intolerable to ears of common sensibility.
13. In this happy frame of mind, Gabriel strode along, returning a short, sullen growl to the good-humoured greetings of his neighbours.

14. The man is not of god-like physiognomy ; close-shut mouth with thin lips, prominent jaws and nose, receding brow.

15. Scarce can I name salvation, faith, or heaven,
But fearful echoes thunder in mine eye.

16. Then Alpheus bold,
On his glacier cold,
With his trident the mountains strook.

CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 99. **Tu** is used for the English *you* (singular) (i) in poetry and dignified style, (ii) in addressing relatives, intimate friends and children, (iii) as a term of contempt.

C'est à toi, sainte liberté, que j'ai voué ma vie.
It is to you, holy liberty, that I have devoted my life.

Qu'as tu, ma petite chérie ?
What's the matter, darling ?

Va-t'en, espèce d'idiot.
Get out, you idiot.

§ 100. **Ce** is often used for **il, elle, ils, elles.**

C'est un farceur.
He is a humbug.

C'est une coquette.
She is a flirt.

Quant aux chefs du parti, ce sont des aventuriers.
As for the leaders of the party, they are adventurers.

NOTE.—**Ce** cannot be thus used if the nominative complement is an adjective or a substantive used without article, *e.g.* **il est ambitieux,** *he is ambitious ;* **il est médecin,** *he is a doctor.*

§ 101. Conjunctive pronouns used as objects, direct or indirect, precede the verb in simple tenses, and the auxiliary in compound tenses. With the negative imperative they take the same position and order as with the other moods, but with the affirmative imperative (§ 102) they follow the verb and the order is different.

Normal Order of Conjunctive Pronouns Governed by a Verb.

Nom. in Aff. and Neg. sentences.	Negative.	1st and 2nd Pers. Dat. and Acc. and Reflex.	3rd Pers. Acc.	3rd Pers. Dat.	Dat. or Adverb.	Gen. or Adverb.	Finite Verb.	Nom. in Inter. sentences.	Completion of Negative.	Past. Part.
je	ne	me	—					je		
tu		te						tu		
il / elle		se	le / la	lui				il / elle		
nous		nous			y	en	—	nous	pas	—
vous		vous						vous		
ils / elles		se	les	leur				ils / elles		

Vous ne me l'avez pas dit. — *You did not tell me so.*

Il se les répétait. — *He was repeating them to himself.*

Nous la leur présenterons. — *We shall introduce her to them.*

Ne vous en désolez pas. — *Do not be distressed at it.*

Note 1.—The dative precedes the accusative unless both are of the third person.

Note 2.—**Me, te, nous** and **vous** may be reflexive ; **se** is reflexive only.

Note 3.—The following are the only allowable combinations (disregarding **en** and **y**), viz., those in which a dative of any person is used with **le, la, les**, the accusative of the third person. There is no limitation to the use of **en** and **y**, but ugly combinations should be avoided.

Dat.	Acc.
me	le *or* la *or* les
te	
se	
nous	
vous	

Acc.	Dat.
le	lui *or* leur.
la	
les	

NOTE 4.—In other cases the disjunctive pronouns are used for the dative.

Je vous le présenterai.	but,	**Je vous présenterai à lui.**
I will introduce him to you.		*I will introduce you to him.*

Cette condition est injuste, ne vous y soumettez pas.
This condition is unjust, do not submit to it.

but, **Cet homme vous tyrannise; ne vous soumettez pas à lui.**
This man bullies you; do not submit to him.

NOTE 5.—Pronouns governed by an infinitive observe the same order, but if the infinitive is dependent on one of the verbs **faire, laisser, entendre, sentir, voir** (§ 62–64), all governed pronouns precede the first verb.

Nous allons vous les donner.	but,	**On le lui a fait octroyer.**
We are going to give them to you.		*He has been made to grant it.*

NOTE 6.—Pronouns governed by an infinitive dependent on a modal auxiliary used to stand before the latter; *e.g.* **je le veux faire**, *I wish to do so.* This usage is restricted in modern French to the pronouns **en** and **y**.

Je veux le faire.	**Je n'en veux rien faire.**
I wish to do so.	*I will do nothing of the sort.*

§ **102.** In the imperative affirmative all pronouns follow the verb, and are connected with it by hyphens.

ORDER OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY AN IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

Verb.	Acc. of 3rd Pers.	Dat. and Acc. of 1st and 2nd Pers. Dat. of 3rd Pers.	Dat. or Adverb.	Gen. or Adverb.
		moi, m'		
		toi, t'		
—	**le, la**	**lui**	**y**	**en**
		nous		
		vous		
		leur		

Montrez-le nous. **Donnez-m'en.**
Show it to us. *Give me some.*

NOTE 1.—**Moi** and **toi** are used for **me** and **te**, but suffer elision before **en** and **y**.

NOTE 2.—Although the order **donnez-les-nous** is more strictly correct, the inverted order **donnez-nous-les** is common.

NOTE 3.—The same limitations hold with regard to combinations of pronouns as in the normal order (§ 101, Notes 3 and 4).

Votre père est votre meilleur ami ; soumettez-vous à lui.
Your father is your best friend ; be ruled by him.

DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 103. DISJUNCTIVE personal pronouns are used—

1. Standing alone in answer to a question.

Qui l'a fait ? **Moi.**
Who did it ? *I.*

2. After all prepositions.

Nous allons dîner chez eux.
We are going to dine with them.

NOTE.—The use of **lui** or **elle** in the sense of *it* governed by a preposition is avoided. **De lui, d'elle, à lui, à elle** are replaced by **en** and **y**. After other prepositions the difficulty is surmounted in various ways, *e.g.* **ils ôtèrent leurs manteaux et s'assirent dessus**, *they took off their cloaks and sat down on them.*

3. In the second term of a comparison.

Nous sommes plus riches qu'eux.
We are richer than they.

4. With the adjective **même** to form the emphatic pronouns.

Il l'a fait lui-même.
He did it himself.

5. As nominative complements to the impersonal **c'est.**

C'était elle.	**C'est nous.**	**Ce sont eux.**
It was she.	*It is we.*	*It is they.*

NOTE.—**Ce sont, c'étaient,** etc., are used before the third person plural.

6. As subject of a verb, separated from the verb.

Toi, qui as fait tant d'efforts, n'auras aucune récompense.
You, who have made so many efforts, will have no reward.

7. To emphasize a conjunctive personal pronoun.

Moi, je ne le crois pas.
I (for my part) do not believe it.

NOTE.—The disjunctive **lui** may be used conjunctively for the sake of emphasis.

Je travaillais pendant que lui s'amusait.
I worked while he amused himself.

8. When a verb has two or more subjects or objects, if one or more of such subjects or objects is a pronoun. In such cases a conjunctive pronoun is usually added.

Lui et toi (vous) partirez ensemble.
He and you will start together.

Je vous laisserai partir, toi et ton frère.
I will let you and your brother start.

9. With the infinitive in exclamations.

Moi, trahir ma patrie ! jamais !
I, betray my country ! never !

10. As the direct object of a transitive verb modified by **ne que.**

Je n'aime qu'elle.
I love none but her.

THE REFLEXIVE SOI.

§ 104. Soi is used, in speaking of persons, only when the subject is one of the indefinite pronouns **on, aucun, chacun,**

quiconque, celui qui, qui, nul, personne, or after an infinitive used indefinitely, or after an impersonal verb.

Nul n'est prophète chez soi.
No one is a prophet in his own country.

Chacun ne songeait qu'à soi.
Each one was thinking only of himself.

Quiconque rapporte tout à soi n'a pas beaucoup d'amis.
Whoever refers everything to his own interests has not many friends.

N'aimer que soi, c'est être mauvais citoyen.
To love only oneself is to be a bad citizen.

Il est beau de triompher de soi.
It is a fine thing to conquer oneself.

§ 105. In speaking of things, **soi** is used only to refer to singular substantives; if the subject is plural the disjunctive personal pronouns **eux, elles,** are used.

L'aimant attire le fer à soi.
The loadstone attracts iron to itself.

Un bienfait porte en soi sa récompense.
A kindness brings its own reward with it.

Les guerres entraînent bien des maux après elles.
Wars bring many evils in their train.

EXERCISE 13.

1. The attendants immediately fell upon him with their swords and killed him.
2. I took him for a god, and was about to address him in Greek.
3. As for me, I was still on the island.
4. The door was instantly shut and locked upon them.
5. I, who know that enemy well, cannot think of such a battle without dismay.
6. Polly and I were very happy and merry together.
7. Aunt Mary never allowed any of the girls to visit without her.
8. The imbecility and the disputes of his descendants began to bring contempt on themselves and destruction on their subjects.
9. A weak mind does not accumulate force enough to hurt itself.
10. I too, was a man, and an Englishman.

11. He—far rather than Chaucer or Spenser—he alone was the true Apollo of our dawn.

12. In summer these fiords glitter with golden sunshine, and purple and green shadows from the mountain and forests lie on them.

13. A little while and thou too shalt sleep no more.

14. Thou, the hall of my fathers, art gone to decay.

15. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.

16. Daily the tides of life go ebbing and flowing beside them.

17. Oh, save me! Oh, guide me!
And bid the deep hide me,
For he grasps me now by the hair.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui.

§ **106. Qui,** used after prepositions, can only refer to persons. In reference to things the various forms of **lequel** must be used (§ 109).

Ceux pour qui je me suis dévoué.
Those for whom I have devoted myself.

NOTE.—The genitive **de qui** is usually replaced by **dont** (§ 110).

Que.

§ **107.** The accusative **que** must never be omitted in French.

Voilà l'homme que je cherche.
That is the man I am looking for.

§ **108.** The accusative **que** is used as a nominative complement to the verb **être.**

De berger qu'il était il devint roi.
From the shepherd that he was he became a king.

Malheureux que je suis!
Wretch that I am!

Lequel.

§ 109. **Lequel** must be used for **qui** (i) when the relative refers to a thing and is governed by a preposition, (ii) when the relative, whether referring to persons or things, is governed by the prepositions **parmi** or **entre**.

(i) **Il a prononcé un discours auquel personne n'a fait attention.**
He delivered a speech to which nobody attended.

(ii) **Il y avait une foule de prisonniers, parmi lesquels se trouvait le général.**
There was a crowd of prisoners, among whom was the general.

Dont.

§ 110. **Dont**, *whose, of whom, of which*, is the usual genitive of the relative pronoun. The substantive dependent on it is preceded by the article.

La nature, dont les secrets nous échappent, suit des lois immuables.
Nature, whose secrets escape us, follows unchanging laws.

§ 111. If the substantive dependent on **dont** is the direct object of a transitive verb it must follow that verb. The order thus differs from that observed in English after *whose*.

La nature, dont nous ne connaissons pas les secrets, suit des lois immuables.
Nature, whose secrets we do not know, follows unchanging laws.

§ 112. **Dont** must be replaced by **de qui, duquel**, etc., if the substantive dependent on the relative is governed by a preposition.

L'homme à la probité de qui (duquel) je me fie.
The man on whose integrity I rely.

Les principes pour la défense desquels il a lutté.
The principles in defence of which he has striven.

NOTE.—When an English relative clause introduced by *whose* contains a personal pronoun referring to the subject of the sentence, the construction must be altered in French.

Celui que ses ennemis poursuivent.
He whose enemies pursue him.

§ 113. The verb *to be* is sometimes omitted in a relative clause introduced by **dont**.

Il ne restait que cinquante hommes, dont plusieurs blessés.
Only fifty men were left, many of whom were wounded.

Où.

§ 114. The adverbial conjunction **où**, *where*, is often used relatively instead of **lequel** and a preposition.

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.
The moment in which we are born is a step towards death.

Voilà le chemin par où nous sommes venus.
That is the road by which we came.

NOTE.—**Où**, in this use, is often replaced by **que**, especially after adverbial phrases referring to time.

Au moment qu'il allait partir.
At the moment when (in which) he was about to start.

Ce qui, ce que.

§ 115. The neuter relative **ce qui**, accusative **ce que**, is equivalent to the English relative *what*.

Nous aimons ce qui est juste et équitable.
We like what is just and fair.

Nous ferons ce que vous voudrez.
We will do what you like.

NOTE.—**Ce qui** must accordingly be used for the interrogative **que** in indirect questions (§ 125).

Dites-nous ce qui vous alarme.
Tell us what alarms you.

§ 116. After prepositions **quoi** must be used.

Voilà ce sur quoi l'on a tant disputé.
That is what there has been so much wrangling about.

§ 117. The English *which*, relating to the whole sense of a preceding clause, must be rendered by **ce qui, ce que**.

Il était malade, ce qui l'empêcha de sortir.
He was ill, which hindered him from going out.

On les pria de rester, ce qu'ils firent volontiers.
They were asked to stop, which they willingly did.

§ 118. **Quoi** is similarly used, without **ce**, after prepositions.

Il mit de l'ordre à ses affaires, après quoi il partit.
He set his affairs in order, after which he departed.

§ 119. The accusative **ce que**, like **que** (§ 108), can be used as the nominative complement of être and of other verbs which admit a nominative complement.

On le nomma président, ce que de fait il avait toujours été.
He was nominated president, which in fact he always had been.

Je ne sais ce qu'il est devenu.
I do not know what has become of him.

EXERCISE 14.

1. He held up before his nation the mirror in which they were to behold the world of gods and heroes.
2. The French soldier whom we have referred to well deserves his name of the "Lion Killer."
3. What we supposed to be an island was no more than the back of a large fish.
4. A soldier passed to her a rough cross he had made from a stick he held.
5. He urged upon his chiefs to execute the provisions set forth in the will he had that day dictated to his secretary.
6. It will be the last week I am ever likely to have with you.
7. The trust she had reposed in the Almighty had never forsaken her.
8. He was interested by what he heard of the nascent society.
9. There were diamonds, some of them exceedingly large and fine.
10. It was not necessary for me to look up in order to ascertain whose entrance they thus saluted.
11. Demi-gods could not have done what they had failed to do.
12. The man from whom you take his life, to him can the whole combined world do more?
13. One had nothing to dread from the cold, or, what is worse, the warm looks of ladies in the drawing-room.
14. Those who say that her power was absolute, do not sufficiently consider in what her power consisted.
15. The English troops rushed from the post from which no enemy had been able to dislodge them.
16. Not what is called a beautiful man; nor yet, by all appearance, what is called a happy.

17. This is no cabinet science, in which things are tested to a scruple.

18. The writer was able to pay his rent, and, moreover, which was still a greater satisfaction, to read a sharp lecture to his impatient landlady.

19. The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel.

20. Mark but my fall, and that that ruined me.

21. Had I but served my God with half the zeal
I served my King, He would not in mine age
Have left me naked to mine enemies.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

Quel?

§ 120. The interrogative adjective **quel** may be used in direct or indirect questions.

Quelle route dois je suivre?
Which road must I follow?

Indiquez-moi quelle route je dois suivre.
Show me the road that I must follow.

Qui?

§ 121. The masculine or feminine interrogative pronoun **qui**, *who, whom*, can refer to persons only, and has the same form for both numbers. It may be used (i) in the nominative, (ii) in the accusative, (iii) after prepositions. It can be used in direct or indirect interrogation.

(i) **Qui vous l'a dit?**
Who told you so?

Ne savez-vous pas qui vous l'a dit?
Do you not know who told you so?

(ii) **Qui cherchez-vous?**
Whom are you looking for?

Dites-moi qui vous cherchez.
Tell me whom you are looking for.

(iii) **À qui est cette maison?**
Whose is this house?

Dites-moi pour qui vous me prenez.
Tell me whom you take me for.

§ 122. **Qui**, used in direct interrogation, may be replaced in the nominative by the locution **qui est-ce qui**, and in the other cases by **qui est-ce que**.

Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit? *Who told you so?*

Qui est-ce que vous cherchez? *Whom are you looking for?*

De qui est-ce que vous parlez? *Of whom are you speaking?*

Que?

§ 123. The neuter interrogative pronoun **que**, *what*, can refer to things only. It can be used (i) in the nominative (*but see* § 124), (ii) in the accusative. It cannot be used in indirect interrogation (§ 125). After prepositions it must be replaced by **quoi** (§ 128).

(i) **Qu'est-il arrivé?** *What has happened?*

(ii) **Que voulez-vous?** *What do you want?*

§ 124. **Que** must be replaced in the nominative by the locution **qu'est-ce qui**, except with être and other verbs which admit a nominative complement. The accusative may always be replaced by **qu'est-ce que**.

Qu'est-ce qui nous empêche d'en faire autant? *What prevents us from doing the same?*

Qu'est-ce que cela prouve? *What does that prove?*

§ 125. In indirect interrogation **que** is replaced by the compound relative **ce qui, ce que** (§ 115), unless followed by an infinitive.

Dites-nous ce qui vous déplaît. *Tell us what annoys you.*

Dites-nous ce que vous désirez. *Tell us what you want.*

but, **Il ne savait que faire.** *He did not know what to do.*

§ 126. **Que** can be used, like the Latin *quid*, as an interrogative adverb for **pourquoi**, *why*, in negative questions; **pas** is not then required with the accompanying verb (§ 90).

Que n'est-il ici présent? *Why is he not here?*

§ 127. **Que** may also be used to replace the adverb **combien**, *how, how much, how many*, in exclamations.

Que de services il m'a rendus !
How many services he has rendered me !

Que vous êtes méchant !
How naughty you are !

NOTE.—In the first case the meaning is the same if the sentence is made negative and inverted.

Que de services ne m'a-t-il pas rendus !

Quoi ?

§ 128. The neuter interrogative pronoun **quoi**, *what*, is chiefly used for **que** after prepositions. It may be either directly or indirectly interrogative. It is rarely employed in the nominative (§ 130) and the accusative (§ 131).

De quoi parlez-vous ? **A quoi pensez-vous ?**
What are you speaking of ? *What are you thinking of ?*

Dites-moi en quoi je peux vous servir.
Tell me in what way I can be of service to you.

§ 129. The same form with **est-ce que** may be used with **quoi** as with **qui** and **que** (§§ 122, 124).

De quoi est-ce que vous parlez ? **A quoi est-ce que vous pensez ?**

§ 130. **Quoi** is used in the nominative in elliptical constructions only.

Quoi de nouveau ? **Quoi de plus beau ?**
What's the news ? *What could be finer ?*

Il y a du nouveau. Quoi ?
There is news. What ?

§ 131. **Quoi** is used in the accusative in elliptical constructions only, or in the expression **je ne sais quoi**, *I know not what.*

J'ai quelque chose à vous dire. Quoi ?
I have something to tell you. What ?

Il y avait un je ne sais quoi de noble dans sa mine.
There was something indescribably noble in his mien.

NOTE.—**Quoi** must not be used for English *what*, indicating that the hearer has failed to catch a remark: **plait-il? comment?** or **monsieur?** should be used instead. Note, however, its exclamatory use.

Quoi! Vous me bravez!
What! You defy me!

§ 132. **Lequel**, *which* (with its variations for gender, number, and case), is used instead of **qui** and **que** to indicate a choice of two or more objects. It may be directly or indirectly interrogative, and is usually followed by the preposition **de**.

Lequel de ces deux livres préférez-vous?
Which of these two books do you prefer?

Il serait difficile de dire lequel est le plus coupable.
It would be difficult to say which is the more guilty.

EXERCISE 15.

1. One day he presented himself to the monarch, who said to him: "Who are you?"
2. She asked him what he thought of the army.
3. It was indeed some time before Lovel could perceive in what sort of den his friend had constructed his retreat.
4. What is the use of my saying what some of these opinions are?
5. What is the secret mesmerism which friendship possesses?
6. What is it that makes the lawyer eschew his own cause?
7. What causes the doctor, when ailing, to send for his rival?
8. By some beings, I knew not whom, a battle, a strife, an agony was conducting.
9. What matter where, if I be still the same?

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

The Adjective Ce.

§ 133. The adjective **ce** is often used for the English definite article, especially before a substantive which has a relative clause dependent on it, and in the phrase **ce dernier**, *the latter*.

Je n'ai pas sollicité l'honneur de la société de cette dame.
I did not solicit the honour of the lady's society.

§ 134. The particles **-ci** and **-là** are not only used to contrast *this* and *that*, but also for emphasis.

Ce jour-là il avait mis ses meilleurs vêtements.
On that day he had put on his best clothes.

The Pronoun celui.

§ 135. **Celui** (celle, ceux, celles) is used (i) before the relative **qui**, which it immediately precedes, (ii) before a genitive. Before a relative **celui** and **celle** are used for *he* and *she*.

Celui qui volera sera pendu.
He who steals will be hanged.

Son style ressemble beaucoup à celui de Boileau.
His style much resembles Boileau's.

Celui-ci, Celui-là, etc.

§ 136. **Celui-ci, celui-là** are usually equivalent to the English *the latter, the former*.

Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant on néglige celle-ci, et on sacrifie tout pour celui-là.
The body perishes, the soul is immortal; yet we neglect the latter, and sacrifice everything for the former.

§ 137. **Celui-là** is sometimes used as antecedent to a relative, but does not come immediately before it.

Celui qui croit que cet homme est malheureux se trompe.
Celui-là se trompe, qui croit que cet homme est malheureux.
He who thinks this man unhappy is mistaken.

The Pronouns ce, ceci, cela.

§ 138. For the various uses of the neuter **ce** *see* §§ 24, 100. In addition to these uses **ce**, before the verb **être**, may mean *this*.

C'est un fait très important.
This is a very important fact.

§ 139. When *this, these,* or *that, those* are used emphatically as the subject of the verb **être**, they are rendered by **ce . . . . ici** and **ce . . . . là**.

Ce sont ici nos bagages.
This is our luggage.

C'était là son seul espoir.
That was his only hope.

Note.—*That is, that was,* etc., may sometimes be expressed by **voilà**, or, more emphatically, by **voilà quel** and the verb être.

Agir et souffrir, voilà quel fut ton lot dans la vie.
To suffer and to do, that was thy portion in life.

§ 140. **Ceci** and **cela** are not used of persons or in reference to a preceding substantive. They are employed to call attention to something present, or in reference to the sense of a preceding sentence.

Donnez-moi cela.
Give me that.

Ceci est la maison que Jacques a bâtie.
This is the house that Jack built.

Il avait toujours été timide, et cela avait empêché son avancement.
He had always been nervous, and that had hindered his promotion.

Note.—In French **cela, là,** and **voilà** are preferred to **ceci, ici** and **voici**, where no contrast is required.

C'était à cause de cela.
It was on this account.

Me voilà.
Here I am.

EXERCISE 16.

1. An earthquake, exceeding in violence that of last January, laid every house in ruins.

2. Kneeling down, they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see.

3. This is a feature in their character which was not wholly erased, even in the period of their degeneracy.

4. This lasts, however, for a very short time.

5. But this did not turn the brave hunter from his purpose.

6. Those who say that her power was absolute, do not sufficiently consider in what her power consisted.

7. These were the means, and the only means, which she had at her command.

8. It was the latter who used the influence of his office to form a league with the Emperor.

9. He who reads much, learns much.

10. He was interested by what he heard of the nascent society.

11. This is not the sort of happiness which a man would in general wish to owe to his wife.

12. I knew that, if there were any freedom left in Europe, it was to these men that we owed it.

13. And this, Le Fevre, I'll save for thee.

14. "Is this the region, this the soil, the clime,"
Said then the lost archangel, "this the seat
That we must change for heaven?"

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

Tel.

§ **141.** Tel, *such*, corresponds pretty closely with its English equivalent, but is never followed by the indefinite article. Its different uses are illustrated by the following examples.

Une telle conduite vous fait honneur.
Such conduct does you honour.

Sa mémoire est telle (*or* **Telle est sa mémoire**) **qu'il n'oublie jamais rien.**
His memory is such that he never forgets anything.

Les voilà tels que la mort nous les a faits.
Behold them such as death has made them for us.

Monsieur un tel. **Tel maître, tel valet.**
Mr. So-and-so. *Like master, like man.*

Pour être heureux ou malheureux, il faut se croire tel.
To be happy or unhappy, you have only to believe yourself so.

Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera.
Sorrow treads upon the heels of mirth.

Tout.

§ **142.** As an adjective, if qualifying a following substantive, **tout** is usually (but not invariably) followed by the definite article or another adjective; if qualifying a preceding substantive or a pronoun, it is not accompanied by the article.

Tous les hommes sont mortels.
Les hommes sont tous mortels.
All men are mortal.

Toute la maison est en feu.
La maison est toute en feu.
The whole house is on fire.

Toute sa famille est en bonne santé.
All his family is in good health.

Tous les lundis. **Tous les deux jours.**
Every Monday. *Every other day.*

Tous chemins vont à Rome.
All roads lead to Rome.

Ils sortirent tous furieux.
They all went out furious.

Vous tous.
All of you.

NOTE.—The definite article is omitted (i) before a singular substantive when **tout** has a distributive sense; (ii) before a proper name; (iii) frequently after prepositions.

(i) **Toute peine mérite salaire.**
The labourer is worthy of his hire.

(ii) **Tout Paris le sait.**
All Paris knows it.

(iii) **Il vend des étoffes en tous genres.**
He sells materials of all kinds.

Les coups pleuvaient de tous côtés.
Blows fell on all sides.

§ 143. The examples of the preceding paragraph indicate how the English *the whole, all, every,* are to be translated into French.

(i) *The whole* is in every case **tout le, toute la,** before the substantive.

Toute la terre.
The whole earth.

(ii) *All, all the,* qualifying a following substantive, are usually translated by **tout le, toute la, tous les, toutes les.**

Tout le monde. *All the world (everybody).*

Tous les hommes. *All men.*

(iii) *Every* is translated **tout, toute,** or in the same way as *all,* according to whether its distributive (*any whatsoever*) or its collective (*all*) sense predominates; in some cases either translation is admissible.

Tout homme a ses défauts. *Every man has his faults.*

Toutes les semaines. *Every week.*

Obs.—Between **tous deux, tous trois,** etc., and **tous les deux, tous les trois,** etc., there is the same difference that the presence or absence of the article always makes. The latter are more definite, and alone can be used before a following substantive.

Tous (les) trois périrent dans les guerres civiles.
All three perished in the civil wars.

Tous les deux prisonniers seront condamnés.
Both prisoners will be condemned.

§ 144. As a pronoun (*i. e.* without reference to any expressed substantive) **tout** is used in the neuter singular, meaning *all, everything,* in the masculine plural,* **tous,** and (more rarely) in the feminine plural, **toutes,** meaning *all.*

Il veut tout avoir. *He wants to have everything.*

À tout prendre. *On the whole.*

Tous vinrent au-devant de lui.
All came to meet him.

* When thus used the final -s is pronounced.

§ 145. As an adverb, **tout** is equivalent to **tout à fait**, *quite, altogether.*

Elle était tout heureuse.
She was quite happy.

La pièce est tombée tout à plat.
The piece fell quite flat.

Le chien est tout zèle, tout ardeur, tout obéissance.
The dog is all zeal, eagerness, and obedience.

§ 146. The adverb **tout** is the only exception to the rule of the invariability of adverbs. When followed by a feminine adjective or participle beginning with a consonant or **h**- aspirate it varies for gender and number.

Ella resta toute surprise, toute honteuse.
She remained altogether surprised and ashamed.

Ces fleurs sont toutes fraîches.
These flowers are quite fresh.

Obs.—Hence an ambiguity may arise.

Elles sont toutes malades.
{ *They are all ill.*
{ *They are quite ill.*

§ 147. The adverb **tout** may be followed by **que**, and (usually) the indicative mood in much the same sense as **quelque . . . que** or **si . . . que** (§§ 52, 152) with the subjunctive.

Tout estimées que sont ces dames.
Esteemed as these ladies are.

Tout spirituels qu'ils sont.
Witty as they are.

Toutes spirituelles que sont ces demoiselles.
Witty as these young ladies are.

Même.

§ 148. **Même** has three distinct uses. (i) Preceded by the (usually definite) article, it is an adjective meaning *same* (Lat. *idem*). (ii) Without the article and following

a substantive or pronoun (with the latter it is connected by a hyphen), it means *self, very* (Lat. *ipse*). (iii) In all other cases it is an adverb, meaning *even, also,* and therefore invariable.

§ 149. **Même, mêmes,** after the article, means *same.*

Il a encore le même habit qu'il avait.
He still has the same coat that he had.

Notre nation n'est point excitée à faire les mêmes efforts que les Grecs.
Our nation is not roused to make the same efforts as the Greeks.

Cette femme est toujours la même.
This woman is always the same.

§ 150. **Même, mêmes,** following substantives or pronouns with which it agrees, means *self, selves, very.*

Les Romains ne vainquirent les Grecs que par les Grecs mêmes.
The Romans conquered the Greeks only through the Greeks themselves.

Lui-même l'a dit. *He himself said so.*

Son père est la bonté même. *His* (or *her*) *father is goodness itself*

Les enfants mêmes furent passés au fil de l'épée.
The very children were put to the edge of the sword.

§ 151. In all other cases **même** is invariable.

Les plus sages même le font.
Even the wisest do so.

Ses amis, ses parents même le blâment.
His friends, even his relatives, blame him.

Obs.—When used thus with a substantive, même may follow the substantive or precede the substantive and the article, or the adjective **même,** *self, very* (§ 150), may follow the substantive and agree with it, without affecting the meaning. Thus, when Racine writes—

Votre front prête à mon diadème
Un éclat qui le rend respectable aux dieux même.
Your brow lends a lustre to my diadem, which renders it an object of veneration even to the gods.

Apart from the needs of his verse he might equally well have written **même aux dieux**, or **aux dieux mêmes**, *to the very gods, to the gods themselves.*

Quelque, quel que.

§ 152. Special attention should be given to the following paragraphs and examples on these words, because otherwise it is very easy to confuse their various uses.

(1) **Quelque**, not followed by **que**, is an adjective meaning *some, a few.*

(2) An adverb meaning *about, some.*

(3) **Quelque**, followed by **que** (not immediately) and the subjunctive mood, is an adjective meaning *whatever.*

(4) An adverb meaning *however.* In this case it may be replaced by **si . . . que.**

(5) **Quel que** (in two words) is an adjective meaning *whoever, whatever*, and is always followed by the verb **être**, or some other copulative verb, in the subjunctive.

(1) **Vous avez quelques bonnes raisons.**
You have some good reasons.

(2) **Vous avez quelque douze bonnes raisons.**
You have some (i. e. *about a*) *dozen good reasons.*

(3) **Quelques bonnes raisons que vous ayez.**
Whatever good reasons you may have.

(4) **Quelque bonnes raisons qu'elles soient.**
However good reasons they may be.

Quelque (*or* **si**) **bonnes que soient vos raisons.**
However good your reasons may be.

(5) **Quelles que soient vos bonnes raisons.**
Whatever your good reasons may be.

On.

§ 153. The correct employment of the pronoun **on** is a test of ability to translate into French. Its most important use is for the English passive (§ 237).

"Ô Rouen! Rouen!" l'entendit-on murmurer.
"Oh! Rouen, Rouen," she was heard to murmur.

On a déjà parlé de la pureté de l'eau de la Néva.
The purity of the Neva water has already been mentioned.

Aussi vous conseille-t-on toujours, quand vous arrivez à Saint-Pétersbourg pour la première fois, de ne pas boire d'eau.
For which reason persons, when they first arrive at St. Petersburg, are always advised to drink no water.

On a comparé son entrée dans cette cité à un triomphe romain.
His entrance into this city has been compared to a Roman triumph.

On l'entendit pousser ce cri: "Jésus!"
There was one cry of "Jesus!"

On consentit à oublier le passé.
It was agreed to let the past be.

Peut-on concevoir un homme plus heureux?
Can anyone conceive a happier man?

C'est un triste spectacle que de voir un beau navire qu'on est impuissant à maîtriser.
It is a sad sight to see a fine ship beyond control.

Le soir, on improvise une demi-douzaine de lits, qui sont rangés le long du mur des deux côtés. Ces lits sont faits de bruyères fraîches qu'on arrache avec leurs racines.
At night half-a-dozen occasional beds are ranged on each side along the wall. These are made of fresh heath, pulled up by the roots.

§ 154. L'on is often used for on after et, si, ainsi, ou, où, qui, quoi.

Le moment où l'on arrive.
The moment of arrival.

NOTE.—L'on must not be used before le, la, les, lui, leur, *e.g.* si on l'entend, *if he is heard.*

ANY, ANY ONE, ANYTHING.

§ 155. THESE words, used affirmatively, in the sense of *any you please*, are rendered by **tout**, or, more emphatically, by **n'importe quel, qui, quoi; qui, quoi que ce soit.**

Tout autre homme aurait été étonné.
Any other man would have been astonished.

Demandez cela à n'importe qui et vous aurez la même réponse.
Ask any one and you will get the same answer.

Je suis prêt à tout sacrifier.
I am prepared to make any sacrifice.

§ 156. When used negatively, or with the suggestion of negation, they must be rendered by **aucun, nul, personne, rien.**

Nous reste-t-il aucun espoir?
Have we any hope left?

Je n'ai rencontré personne pendant ma promenade.
I did not meet any one on my walk.

Y a-t-il rien de plus absurde?
Can there be anything more absurd?

§ 157. After *if*, or in a question to which an affirmative answer may be expected, they are rendered by **quelque, quelqu'un, quelque chose**, *some, some one, something.*

Si quelqu'un vous interroge, soyez discret.
If any one questions you, be discreet.

NOTE 1.—Observe the distinction between **avez-vous vu quelque chose de plus joli?** which may be answered affirmatively or negatively, and **avez vous rien vu de plus joli?** which suggests the answer *No.*

NOTE 2.—**Quelque chose** thus used is masculine, and, like **rien**, is followed by an adjective preceded by **de.**

EXERCISE 17.

1. Queen Matilda also wished to leave some memorial of her husband's victory.

2. He complained to the chief of the brigands, telling him that some of his men had taken his cloak.

3. Even the soldiers were hushed as she reached the stake.

4. Mary, after some hesitation, resolved to comply with the wishes of her subjects.

5. With such a commander it might not have been easy to reduce the insurgents.

6. Once accustomed to the Neva water, most people grow so fond of it, that they prefer it to every water in the world.

7. They all made fun of him on hearing this.

8. Columbus arrived at Barcelona, where every preparation had been made to give him a solemn and magnificent reception.

9. The people remembered Mary's gentleness, grace, and beauty; they remembered her misfortunes also.

10. They called to us to re-embark, or we should all perish.

11. Whatever were the misfortunes that had overwhelmed her, Mary had not allowed herself to be cast down.

12. She had thus prepared for herself a truly Christian end.

13. The depth of the valley prevents its waters from escaping to fertilize anything beyond its own immediate bed.

14. Nothing more than a nominal dignity was left to the abject heirs of an illustrious name.

15. Just here, in the most barren and dreary tract of European history, all feudal privileges, all modern nobility take their source.

16. Whatever books he may read, he draws from them some instruction.

17. However solitary he may be, he finds in them companions.

18. However poor he may seem to the eyes of some, he is really richer than most men.

19. In whatever company he may find himself, he has always something to give.

20. He himself had a noble passion for letters.

21. A purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway.

22. Everything had been heaped in promiscuously.

23. The very butcher respected it as a gate of mystery, and left off whistling when he rang the bell.

24. Such was one of the favourite haunts of the headless horseman.

25. The contemplation of death is more affecting in summer than in any other season of the year.

26. Tom rejected the scheme with contempt, observing that gipsies were thieves and got hardly anything to eat.

27. If there were any freedom left in Europe, it was to these men that we owed it.

28. It is rather strange to find the word "hardship" applied to any obstacle to the growth of a plant.

29. Give thy thoughts no tongue
Nor any unproportioned thought his act.

30. If the golden-crested wren
Were a nightingale—why, then,
Something seen and heard of men
Might be half as sweet as when
Laughs a child of seven.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 158. The cardinal numerals are used instead of the ordinals—

1. In dates.

Le neuf mai, mil huit cent (*or* **dix-huit cent**) **quatre-vingt-douze.**
The ninth of May, eighteen hundred and ninety-two.

Le dix janvier. *The tenth of January.*

L'an mil huit cent quinze. *The year eighteen hundred and fifteen.*

Obs.—**Mil** is used in dates after 1000 A.D. instead of **mille.**

2. In speaking of pages, chapters, and books.

Au chapitre trois du livre quatre.
In the third chapter of the fourth book.

Au livre quatre. *In the fourth book.*

A la page cent vingt. *Page one hundred and twenty.*

Note.—The use of the ordinal is equally correct in this case.

3. With the names of sovereigns and rulers.

Henri huit.
Henry the Eighth.

Note 1.—In two instances **quint** is used for **cinq**, *five:* **Charles-Quint,** (*the emperor*) *Charles the Fifth,* and **Sixte-Quint,** *Pope Sixtus the Fifth.*

NOTE 2.—**Premier** is an exception to all three rules, being never replaced by **un**, except in compounds.

Le premier janvier.
The first of January.

Page première.
The first page, page one.

Charles premier.
Charles the First.

Le pape Jean vingt et un.
Pope John XXI.

DIMENSIONS.

§ **159.** Dimension is usually expressed by a genitive dependent on the adjectives **long**, *long*, **large**, *wide*, **haut**, *high*, **profond**, *deep*, **épais**, *thick*.

Une chambre longue de vingt pieds.
A room twenty feet long.

Obs.—A similar construction is used after **âgé**, *old*, **riche**, *rich*, and **fort**, *strong*.

Un homme riche d'environ deux millions.
A man worth about two millions.

Une armée forte de deux cent mille hommes.
An army two hundred thousand strong.

§ **160.** A statement of dimension may be made in four ways.

Cette tour est haute de cent pieds.
Cette tour a cent pieds de haut.*
Cette tour a cent pieds de hauteur.
Cette tour a une hauteur de cent pieds.
This tower is a hundred feet high.

§ **161.** When more than one dimension is stated, the second or third of the preceding constructions should be used, the English *and* or *by* being rendered by **et** or **sur**.

Ce verger a cent mètres de long (*or* **longueur**) **et** (*or* **sur**) **cinquante de large** (*or* **largeur**).
This orchard is a hundred yards by fifty.

* This construction is not allowed with épais and profond.

EXERCISE 18.

1. At eight o'clock in the morning of the seventeenth of April an earthquake laid almost every house in ruins.

2. Fernand Cortez was born in the year fourteen hundred and eighty-five.

3. She made, on a canvas two hundred and eleven feet long and nineteen inches wide, a tapestry.

4. On the thirteenth of January, sixteen hundred and forty-nine, King Charles the First was publicly executed at Whitehall.

5. On the 18th of October, 1830, Peter I. was sitting by the fireside of his great kitchen.

6. It was the latter who used the influence of his office to form a league with the Emperor Charles the Fifth of Germany.

7. The Venetian gondola is twenty or thirty feet long.

8. The grand gallery was one hundred feet long and forty-five feet broad.

9. The great hall, paved with flat stones, is forty-five feet by twenty-two.

REPETITION OF WORDS IN FRENCH.

§ 162. The following classes of words must be repeated in French before every word to which they refer—

(i) Articles;

(ii) Demonstrative Adjectives;

(iii) Possessive Adjectives;

(iv) Interrogative Adjectives;

(v) The Adjectives **chaque** and **tout**;

(vi) The Adverbs **très**, **aussi** and **si**;

(vii) The prepositions **à**, **de**, and **en**.

(i) **Les insurgés et les déserteurs s'étaient emparés d'un canon et d'une mitrailleuse; ils portaient tous des fusils et des baïonnettes.**

The insurgents and deserters had seized a cannon and a mitrailleuse; they all carried rifles and bayonets.

(ii) **Cette malle et cette valise sont à moi.**
This trunk and portmanteau are mine.

(iii) **Il dit adieu à ses frères et à ses sœurs**
He said farewell to his brothers and sisters.

(iv) **Quel hasard ou quel dessein vous amène ici?**
What chance or purpose brings you here?

(v) **Je connais chaque rue et chaque maison de la ville.**
I know every street and house in the town.

(vi) **Il était très grand et très fort.**
He was very tall and strong.

(vii) **J'ai été en Suisse et en Allemagne, à Berne et à Fribourg, et je connais aussi une partie de la Hollande et de la Belgique.**
I have been in Switzerland and Germany, at Berne and Freiburg, and I also know part of Holland and Belgium.

NOTE.—Other prepositions are usually repeated, but the rule is not absolute.

Obs.—For the repetition of subordinating conjunctions *see* § 54.

§ **163.** Before two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive, repetition of the article takes place if separate individuals are referred to.

Le jeune et le vieux Pitt.
The two Pitts.

Le jeune et brave Dunois.
The young and brave Dunois.

§ **164.** Personal pronouns used in the nominative need not be repeated before two or more verbs when the latter are not united by conjunctions, or are united by **et** or **ou**.

Il y accourt, voit le danger, et prend tout de suite des mesures pour y obvier.
He hastened to the spot, saw the danger, and at once took steps to obviate it.

§ 165. It is usual to repeat the objective pronoun except in compound tenses.

Il nous flatte et nous loue.
He flatters and praises us.

Il nous a flattés et loués.
He has flattered and praised us.

§ 166. Repetition of the objective pronoun must take place unless the verbs are symmetrical, *i.e.* of the same class, in the same tense, and both affirmative or both negative.

Je l'aime et je l'aimerai toujours.
I love him and shall always love him.

Il m'a attaqué et m'a dit des injures.
He has attacked and abused me.

EXERCISE 19.

1. He seized the favourable moment, surprised the Danes at Eddington, and gained a complete victory.
2. He imported into Europe furs, silk stuffs and silver.
3. Prophets, law-givers, and sages have formed the character of other nations.
4. He held up the mirror in which they were to behold the world of gods and heroes.
5. While we were eating and drinking, the island suddenly trembled.
6. They were the sweetest and best children (*f.*) in the world.
7. He had seen more combats and sieges than he could count years.
8. He especially devoted himself to literature and art, gaining by his generosity and munificence in this respect the title of Lorenzo the Magnificent.
9. At times, too, I ran and had my play by the edge of the stream, as gay and full of life and joy as the young fish that swam about in it.
10. Each rock and stone was dear to me as some old friend.
11. Polly and I were very happy and merry together.
12. The hospitals for the sick and wounded were in a wretchedly disorganized state.
13. Pity them all; thy utmost pity, with all aids and appliances and throne-and-scaffold contrasts, how far short is it of the thing pitied.
14. By mere dint of original and god-like instinct he discovered and called it into life.
15. Abroad or at home, your remembrance imparting
New courage, he'll think upon glory and you.
16. Wolsey—that once trod the ways of glory
And sounded all the depths and shoals of honour,—
Found thee a way, out of his wreck, to rise in.

WORDS USED IN FRENCH BUT NOT IN ENGLISH.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

§ 167. The definite article is used in French, though not in English—

1. Before any substantive taken in a general sense.

L'envie et l'avarice ne meurent jamais.
Envy and avarice never die.

L'or est plus précieux que l'argent.
Gold is more precious than silver.

Les bons livres sont rares.
Good books are rare.

2. Before titles.

Le président Cleveland. **La reine Isabelle.**
President Cleveland. *Queen Isabella.*

3. Before proper names of persons preceded by an adjective, or followed by a qualifying phrase.

Le pauvre Henri. **Le Satan de Milton.**
Poor Henry. *Satan as depicted by Milton.*

4. Before names of continents, countries, provinces, and mountains.

Le Sinaï est situé entre l'Egypte et l'Asie.
Sinaï is situated between Egypt and Asia.

Note 1.—It is omitted after the preposition **en**.

Demeurer en Espagne. **Aller en France.**
To live in Spain. *To go to France.*

Note 2.—It is also omitted after the preposition **de**, (i) when it indicates point of departure, (ii) when it introduces a purely adjectival phrase.

(i) **Il est revenu d'Italie.** (ii) **L'ambassadeur de Russie.**
He has returned from Italy. *The Russian ambassador.*

Obs.—Usage admits equally **les peuples de l'Asie**, or **d'Asie**; **les villes de l'Afrique**, or **d'Afrique**.

5. For the possessive adjective, in cases where the possessor is sufficiently indicated by the sense of the sentence.

Il entra, le chapeau à la main.
He came in with his hat in his hand.

Obs.—The definite article may be used in similar cases for the indefinite.

Elle a la figure pâle et les cheveux noirs. **Il a l'esprit borné.**
She has a pale face and black hair. *He has a narrow mind.*

NOTE 1.—The possessor is often indicated by a dative pronoun placed before the verb, *e. g.* **il a essayé de nous jeter de la poudre aux yeux.** Such a construction is usually preferred to the use of the possessive. It should also be noticed that the singular is preferred to the plural when speaking of parts of the body, articles of dress, etc., *e. g.* **les conscrits portaient sur le chapeau un nœud de rubans,** *the conscripts wore bunches of ribbons on their hats.*

NOTE 2.—The definite article, combined with **en,** is often used for the possessive adjective when the thing possessed is the object of a transitive verb or the subject of the verb être. This construction is almost always employed in the first case when the possessor is not a person.

Je connais cet homme, mais je n'en sais pas le nom (*or* **je ne sais pas son nom**).
I know this man, but I do not know his name.

Je connais Paris et j'en admire surtout les jardins publics (not **ses jardins publics**).
I know Paris and I admire especially its public gardens.

Cette affaire est délicate, le succès en est douteux.
This is a delicate affair, its success is doubtful.

6. For the English indefinite article in speaking of price.

Combien la bouteille ?
How much a bottle?

NOTE.—In reference to payment by time, **par,** *by,* is used.

Cent livres sterling par an.
A hundred a year.

§ 168. Before a substantive in apposition the definite article may be used or not, very much as in English, according to the degree of emphasis.

Il s'addressa à M. Fourier, colonel du régiment.
He applied to M. Fourier, (the) colonel of the regiment.

Médée, la puissante magicienne, fut la femme de Jason.
Medea, the famous sorceress, was the wife of Jason.

§ 169. The definite article is often omitted in enumerations.

Vieillards, femmes, enfants, tous furent passés au fil de l'épée.
Old men, women and children, all were put to the sword.

The Indefinite Article.

§ 170. The indefinite article is used before an abstract substantive accompanied by an adjective.

Son seul espoir consistait en une prompte soumission.
His only hope consisted in prompt submission.

Leur souvenir lui communiqua un courage nouveau.
Their remembrance imparted fresh courage to him.

The Partitive Article.

§ 171. Any substantive taken in a partitive sense must usually be preceded in French by the so-called partitive article **du, de la, de l', des.** These forms stand for English *some* or *any*, expressed or understood.

Les tigres (general) **sont des bêtes féroces** (partitive).
Tigers are ferocious beasts.

§ 172. The partitive article is replaced by **de**—

1. Before a substantive preceded by an adjective.

Donnez-moi de bon vin, du vin rouge.
Give me some good wine, red wine.

2. After any word denoting measure or quantity. Such a word may be (i) a substantive, (ii) an adverb of quantity, (iii) a negative adverb.

(i) **Une foule de gens.** *A crowd of people.*

(ii) **Beaucoup de plaisir.** *Much pleasure.*

(iii) **Pas de délai!** — **Je n'ai guère d'argent.**
No delay. — *I have hardly any money.*

NOTE.—The indefinite article is similarly replaced by **de** after a negative, *e. g.* **il n'aura pas de prix,** *he will not get a prize.*

Obs.—After the adverb **bien,** *much, many,* and the substantive **la plupart,** *the majority,* the partitive article is always used.

Bien des gens le disent. — **La plupart des hommes le disent.**
Many people say so. — *Most men say so.*

§ 173. When a substantive used partitively is already preceded by **de,** the partitive article is omitted.

La vie est pleine de travers. — **Ils étaient armés de couteaux.**
Life is full of troubles. — *They were armed with knives.*

§ 174. The partitive article is often omitted in enumerations.

Il s'y trouvait des soldats de toutes les armes, dragons et hussards, fantassins et artilleurs.
There were soldiers of every kind there, dragoons and hussars, infantry men and gunners.

EXERCISE 20.

1. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked sword in his hand.
2. The dress of the Spaniards, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising to the natives.
3. Persons, when they first arrive at St. Petersburg, are always advised to drink no water without mixing wine or spirit with it.
4. The news flew like lightning through the country and spread enthusiasm everywhere.
5. Rose loved to run about the fields and meadows, and to pick flowers and catch butterflies.
6. Many brave men they lost.
7. He wore many scars.
8. He was of such surprising and delicate beauty, that the Spaniards often thought him a girl disguised in men's clothing.
9. Lorenzo, the son of Giovanni, the founder of the famous House of Medici, became the head of the state.
10. He especially devoted himself to literature and art.

11. So died the illustrious man whom a Slavonic writer has not scrupled to call the Louis XIV. of Tsernagora, but who, in many respects, was also its Saint Louis.

12. The news told only of devastation caused by sickness, bad weather, bad management.

13. Wherever two thoughts exist, as it were, by mutual repulsion, they are apt to suggest each other.

14. Then he hid his face in his hands, and sobbed as if his heart would break.

15. The territory conquered by Turkey will, with a slight modification of frontier, be restored to Greece.

16. I have concluded a Treaty of Commerce and Friendship with Menelik, the Emperor of Abyssinia.

17. This luxuriant line of verdure only sets off more completely the contrast of life with death which is its characteristic feature.

18. There were several very large and heavy coins, so worn that we could make nothing of their inscriptions.

19. A prodigious golden punch-bowl, ornamented with richly chased vine-leaves and Bacchanalian figures.

20. The insect, not finding a support for its little feet, slipped and fell.

21. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorned the venerable place.

22. Then Alpheus bold,
On his glacier cold,
With his trident the mountains strook.

23. Then swords and knives,
Poison, guns, halters, and envenomed steel
Are laid before me to despatch myself.

Personal Pronouns.

§ 175. The personal pronouns **le, la, les, en** often occur in sentences where they would be unrepresented in English.

§ 176. The accusatives **le, la, les** are used as predicative nominatives, with the verbs **être** and **devenir**.

Êtes vous la blanchisseuse ? Oui, je la suis.
Are you the laundress? Yes, I am.

§ 177. The neuter **le** is similarly used to represent—

1. An adjective or a substantive used as an adjective.
2. A phrase or sentence.

Êtes-vous fatigués? Nous le serons bientôt.
Are you tired? We shall be soon.

Je viendrai vous voir si mon père me le permet (*i.e.* **me permet de venir vous voir**).
I will come and see you if my father allows me.

NOTE 1.—The neuter **le** may be used with the expletive **ne** in the second half of a comparison, *e.g.* **il se fait beaucoup plus malade qu'il ne l'est,** *he makes himself out to be much more ill than he is.*

NOTE 2.—The neuter **le** sometimes corresponds to the English *so*, *e.g.* **je le pensais,** *I thought so.*

§ 178. When, for the sake of emphasis, a substantive used as direct object precedes the verb, it must be represented by a personal pronoun.

Toutes ces qualités, Pitt les possédait à un haut degré.
All these qualities Pitt possessed in a high degree.

NOTE.—Such English constructions as—*The value of the jewels we found more difficult in estimating*, must be altogether altered in French, *e.g.* **L'estimation des bijoux nous donna plus de mal.**

§ 179. **En** is used as a partitive genitive not usually represented in English.

Votre plume ne vaut rien; prenez-en une autre.
Your pen is no good; take another.

Combien avez-vous de maisons? J'en ai deux.
How many houses have you? Two.

§ 180. **En** is also similarly used to express the agent or cause.

Tous les beaux esprits s'étaient coalisés pour continuer la plaisanterie et la ville s'en tordit longtemps de rire.
All the wits had combined to keep up the joke and the town was long in convulsions of laughter (*at it*).

§ 181. The reflexive pronoun is sometimes strengthened by the use of an emphatic pronoun.

Nous ne faisons que nous nuire à nous-mêmes.
We are only harming ourselves.

§ 182. A disjunctive personal pronoun preceded by à is sometimes used to strengthen a possessive adjective.

Voilà mon opinion à moi.
That is my opinion.

The Demonstrative Ce.

§ 183. The demonstrative pronoun ce is used expletively with the verb être—

1. When two infinitives are connected by **est.**

Prier c'est combattre.
To pray is to fight.

Épargner ses plaisirs, c'est les multiplier.
By restricting our pleasures we multiply them.

2. Often when the subject of the sentence is somewhat long.

Le plus beau présent qui ait été fait aux hommes, après la sagesse, c'est l'amitié.
The best present received by man, after wisdom, is friendship.

3. When the sentence begins with ce qui, ce que (*what*).

Ce qu'on vous a dit, ce sont des contes.
What you have been told is all nonsense.

Ces malheureux ne savent ce que c'est que la vertu.
These unhappy men do not know what virtue is.

EXERCISE 21.

1. The chief asked him how he was dressed when he lost his cloak. "Just as I am at present," replied he.

2. He was, indeed, naturally as inclined to vice as had been predicted of him.

3. Maggie's intentions, as usual, were on a larger scale than Tom had imagined.

4. There might be others in the company who knew more and thought more than they expressed.

5. To judge from his own looks, the gentle knight had less reason to be disgusted with the match than the romancer has given us to understand.

6. The portal opened to a hall, such as is now rarely found.

7. They were more like each other than brother is commonly to brother.

8. There was something that showed that he meant more than his words expressed.

9. Isaac Bickerstaff was an imaginary person, almost as well known in that age as Mr. Paul Pry or Mr. Samuel Pickwick in ours.

10. I therefore desire you again, deny not this to my affection.

11. So let it remain.

12. And the reasons are these three, I think.

13. We could scarcely believe the evidence of our senses.

14. He is, as completely as a man can be, in harmony with Nature.

15. A weak mind does not accumulate force enough to hurt itself.

16. He found himself as busy and eager in the conduct of George Osborne's affairs as the most selfish tactician could be in pursuit of his own.

17. But I remember that what did cause me some astonishment was to observe that all these sailors should have been moulded into so uniform a type.

18. What I propose is peace.

19. For, as yet, sleeping and waking are one.

20. Such a pair of eyes as no man of that century bore elsewhere, according to all the testimony we have.

21. Nature inanimate displays sweet sounds,
But animated nature sweeter still.

22. Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ambition

Expletive Ne.

§ 184. **Ne** is used without negative force in subordinate clauses in the following cases where no negation is implied.

1. After all comparatives, and after **autre**, *other*, **autrement**, *otherwise*, and **plutôt**, *rather*, with the following verb, when the principal sentence is affirmative, but not when it is negative.

Je me plains de mon sort moins que vous ne pensez.
I complain of my lot less than you think.

Vous pensez autrement que vous ne parlez.
You think differently from what you speak.

Il n'agit pas autrement qu'il parle.
He does not act differently from what he says.

2. After verbs and conjunctions denoting fear, when the principal sentence is affirmative, not otherwise.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
I fear he will come.

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.
I am not afraid that he will come.

Il met son pardessus de peur qu'il ne pleuve.
He is putting on his overcoat for fear it may rain.

3 After **à moins que**, *unless*.

Il ne le saura pas à moins que vous ne le lui disiez.
He will not know it unless you tell him.

4. After verbs of hindering, such as **empêcher**, **éviter**, **prendre garde** (but not **défendre**, *to forbid*), when used affirmatively.

La pluie empêche que nous n'allions nous promener.
The rain prevents our going for a walk.

5. After verbs denoting denial or doubt, such as **nier**, **contester**, **disconvenir**, **douter**, **désespérer**, when used negatively and, in the case of **nier**, interrogatively. This rule is not hard and fast when no uncertainty is implied.

Personne ne niera que vous n'ayez mérité cela.
No one will deny that you have deserved that.

Je ne doute pas que cela ne soit vrai.
I do not doubt that that is so.

6. After the idiomatic impersonal verb **il s'en faut**, *it is wanting*, when used negatively or interrogatively, or modified by **peu**.

De combien s'en est-il fallu que je ne me sois mis en colère ?
How far was I from getting into a passion ?

Il s'en faut de peu qu'il ne soit aussi grand que son frère.
He is nearly as tall as his brother.

7. After **depuis que**, *since*, before a following perfect or pluperfect.

Il avait bien changé depuis que je ne l'avais vu.
He had changed greatly since I saw him.

8. With the co-ordinating conjunction **ni . . . ni**, *neither . . . nor*.

Ni les honneurs ni les richesses ne nous rendent heureux.
Neither honours nor riches make us happy.

Expletive que.

§ **185.** The conjunction **que** is used expletively in a number of gallicisms.

C'est ridicule que d'avoir de telles idees.
It is ridiculous to have such ideas.

Si j'étais que de vous.
If I were you.

C'est un drôle garçon, que Dupin.
He is a queer fellow, is Dupin.

Heureusement que les valets s'interposèrent.
Fortunately the servants interposed.

Qu'est-ce que (c'est que) cela?
What is that?

EXERCISE 22.

1. I am the man who has given you more provinces than your ancestors left you cities.
2. He had seen more combats and sieges than he could count years.
3. We found ourselves possessed of even vaster wealth than we had at first supposed.
4. It is a hard lesson of life to find how little we are missed.
5. "Since thou art so dull as to misunderstand me still," quoth Adams, "I will inform thee."
6. It is a sad sight to see a fine ship beyond control.
7. In this estimate of Goethe as a moral being, few people will differ from us, unless it were the religious bigot.
8. He appears to have felt the loss more than was to be expected.

9. Oh! Rouen, Rouen, I have great fear lest you suffer from my death.

10. What is *there* transacting, by no modification is made to affect us in any other manner that the same events or characters would do in our relationships of life.

11. A curtain lecture is worth all the sermons in the world for teaching the virtues of patience and long-suffering.

13. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.

OMISSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IN FRENCH.

§ **186.** THE indefinite article is omitted—

1. Before the second of two substantives in apposition.

Les Romains, nation de soldats, furent les maîtres du monde.
The Romans, a nation of soldiers, were the masters of the world.

2. Before the nominative complement of the verbs **devenir, être, mourir, naître, rester** and others, and before the accusative complement of verbs of esteeming, such as **croire, penser, juger, tenir**, and of many reflexive verbs, such as **se faire, se montrer**, etc.

Il est Français (but **C'est un Français**).
He is a Frenchman.

Malgré tous ses exploits, il resta simple soldat.
In spite of all his exploits he remained a private.

Je le crois honnête homme.
I believe him (to be) an honest man.

Il se montra vrai chrétien.
He showed himself a true Christian.

3. In proverbial expressions (usually).

Chat échaudé craint l'eau froide.
A burnt child dreads the fire.

Charbonnier est maître chez soi.
An Englishman's house is his castle.

4. After the exclamatory **quel . . . !**

Quelle belle existence vous menez!
What a fine life you lead!

5. Before the subject of a sentence preceded by **jamais.**

Jamais homme ne fut plus surpris.
Never was a man more surprised.

6. After **de, en, comme, en tant que, en qualité de,** used for the Engilsh *as* or *like.*

Je vous donne ma parole d'honneur de Français.
I give you my word as a Frenchman.

Il s'est conduit en fripon.
He behaved like a rascal.

EXERCISE 23.

1. Alfred the Great disguised himself as a harper.
2. Of these nine years she spent five a prisoner in the Tower.
3. What a lesson for mankind!
4. No poet has ever, as a poet, exercised similar influence over his countrymen.
5. He prayed them to conduct him to the humble cell which, without fire, he inhabited as a hermit would.
6. I pledge you the honour of a gentleman that we intend you no injury.
7. The freedom of Florence as a republican city was finally destroyed.
8. I, too, was a man, and an Englishman.
9. In this estimate of Goethe as a moral being, few people will differ from us.
10. Steele, an excellent judge of lively conversation, said that the conversation of Addison was at once the most polite and the most mirthful that could be imagined.

THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 187. The normal order of the parts of a sentence is, except in the case of personal pronouns governed by a verb (§§ 101–102), the same as in English, viz.—

1. Subject.	**Masinissa, roi de Numidie,**
2. Verb.	**avait rendu**
3. Direct Object.	**de grands services**
4. Indirect Object.	**aux Romains**
5. Adverbs.	**dans la deuxième guerre punique.**

§ 188. The indirect object precedes the direct object—

1. When the direct object is modified by a dependent clause.

Il a donné aux pauvres toutes les richesses qu'il avait amassées.
He has given all the wealth he had accumulated to the poor.

2. To avoid ambiguity.

Il a voulu imposer aux vaincus des conditions trop dures.
He wished to impose too hard conditions on the conquered.

Position of Adverbs.

§ 189. Adverbs which usually precede the infinitive are—

1. Adverbs of quantity.

Qui ne veut rien voir, ne verra rien.
He who wishes to see nothing, will see nothing.

La poésie ne consiste pas à tout dire, mais à tout faire rêver.
Poetry does not consist in saying everything, but in suggesting everything.

2. The adverbs **bien** and **mal**.

Tâchez de vous bien conduire cette fois.
Try to behave well this time.

3. The negative **ne . . . pas.**

Il a fait semblant de ne pas nous comprendre.
He pretended not to understand us.

§ **190.** Adverbs which are placed between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound tense are—

1. Adverbs of quantity.

Il a très peu fréquenté le beau monde.
He has moved very little in good society.

2. Adverbs of manner.

Vous vous êtes bien conduits.
You have behaved well.

Il nous a brusquement tourné le dos.
He turned his back to us abruptly.

Obs.—Adverbs in **-ment** are also frequently placed after the participle.

3. Indefinite adverbs of time.

Nous l'avons toujours aimé.
We always liked him.

Il s'est rarement trompé.
He has rarely been mistaken.

§ **191.** Adverbs which are placed after the past participle are—

1. Adverbs of place.

Je ne l'ai pas trouvé ici.
I did not find him here.

Nous l'avions cherché partout.
We had sought him everywhere.

Obs.—**Partout** sometimes precedes the participle, *e.g.* **il s'est partout introduit,** *he has wormed his way in everywhere.*

2. Definite adverbs of time.

Il est parti hier.
He started yesterday.

§ 192. When two or more adverbial expressions modify the same verb, the adverb of time precedes that of place, the adverb of place that of manner.

La guerre éclata quelques mois après en Bretagne avec une fureur toute nouvelle.
War broke out with renewed fury a few months later in Brittany.

NOTE.—Of two adverbs of time the more indefinite precedes, *e.g.* **il arriva lundi à six heures,** *he arrived at six o'clock on Monday.*

§ 193. Adverbs of time and of place often stand at the beginning of a sentence.

En 1066 Guillaume de Normandie devint roi des Anglais.
In 1066 *William of Normandy became king of the English.*

Là un paysage magnifique se déroulait à nos yeux.
A magnificent landscape was unfolded there before our eyes.

§ 194. This is often done to avoid the accumulation of adverbial expressions after the verb.

En 1066 Guillaume de Normandie défit l'armée anglo-saxonne à Hastings après une lutte acharnée.
In 1066 *William of Normandy defeated the Anglo-Saxon army at Hastings after a desperate battle.*

§ 195. An adverb is never placed between the subject and verb in a simple tense.

Mon oncle fume rarement.
My uncle seldom smokes.

§ 196. The interrogatives **où, quand, comment,** must always come first in a sentence.

Comment un homme saurait-il cela sans l'avoir appris ?
How should a man know that without having learnt it ?

INVERSION.

§ 197. Inversion of the subject and predicate occurs, independently of interrogation, in the following cases—

§ 198. 1. With any subject.

(i) When the subjunctive is used optatively or concessively.

Vive le roi!	**Dussé-je y périr!**
Long live the King!	*Though I should perish there!*

(ii) In such phrases as **dit le roi, répondirent-ils**, etc.

(iii) When the sentence begins with—

à peine, *hardly.*	**en vain,** } *in vain.*
aussi, *and so.*	**vainement,** }
aussi bien, *anyhow.*	**peut-être,** *perhaps.*
au moins, } *at least.*	**probablement,** *probably.*
du moins, }	**rarement,** *rarely.*
à plus forte raison, } *all the more.*	**toujours,** *notwithstanding.*
d'autant plus, }	**toutefois,** *however.*
encore, *nevertheless.*	**tout au plus,** *at the most.*

À peine pouvions-nous nous voir.
We could hardly see each other.

En vain les montagnards résistèrent-ils aux soldats du tyran.
In vain did the mountaineers resist the tyrant's soldiers.

§ 199. 2. With substantival subject only—

(i) In a relative or indirectly interrogative clause, including the case of **où** used relatively (§ 114) or in indirect interrogation.

Voilà la récompense que nous a valu notre dévouement.
That is the reward which our devotion has earned for us.

Savez-vous ce qu'a fait votre ami?
Do you know what your friend has done?

NOTE.—This inversion is compulsory (*a*) when a part of the verb **être** would otherwise come last in the sentence, (*b*) when the subject of the relative clause has another relative clause dependent on it, *e.g.* **je ne peux pas supporter ce pédant qu'est Boileau,** *I cannot endure that pedant Boileau;* **il a fait tout ce que peut faire en pareil cas un homme qui se respecte,** *he has done all that a man who respects himself can do in such a case.*

(ii) With the locution **c'est . . . que.**

C'est à Pevensey que débarquèrent les Normands.
It was at Pevensey that the Normans landed.

COUNTY SCHOOL

(iii) After the adverbs—**ainsi, ici, là, de là, là-dessus,** etc

Ainsi périt ce grand homme.
Thus perished this great man.

De là découlent nos désastres.
That is the source of our disasters.

(iv) After the conjunctions **quand** and **lorsque.**

Quand viendra le printemps, les arbres se couvriront de fleurs
When the spring comes the trees will be covered with blossom.

(v) In the second term of a comparison.

Vous avez plus de goût que n'en a votre frère.
You have more taste than your brother.

NOTE.—In cases ii—v no inversion takes place if the verb is accompanied by a direct object, *e.g.* **c'est à Pevensey que Guillaume fit son débarquement,** *it was at Pevensey that William effected his landing.*

§ 200. In the preceding cases the inversion is usual but to some extent optional. In the following cases it is obligatory—

(i) When the sentence begins with **quelque . . . que, tout . . . que si . . . que, quel . . . que.**

Si grande que fût la puissance de Rome . . .
Great as was the power of Rome . . .

Quels que soient ses talents . . .
Whatever his talents may be . . .

(ii) When the sentence begins with a predicative adjective.

Telle fut la fin de cette homme illustre.
Such was the end of this illustrious man.

(iii) When the verb is placed first in descriptions and definitions.

Sont masculins les mots se terminant en -ment.
Words ending in -ment are masculine.

EXERCISE 24.

1. Roger of Montgomery with the French and Picards were on the right, near where the railway station is now.

2. Those who say that her power was absolute, do not sufficiently consider in what her power consisted.

3. So he willingly confessed his fault and humbly begged the judge to forgive him.

4. "I will take it, were its walls of iron," Philip exclaimed in wrath.

5. The snow was tossed into the air, like the sand of the desert when the storm blows.

6. "Yes, my voices were of God," she suddenly cried as the last moment came.

7. He well deserves his name of the "Lion Killer."

8. The Spaniards often thought him a girl.

9. The soldiers replied that nothing could be done without the Nabob's orders.

10. This speech so incensed Harry that he gave the old judge a box on the ear.

11. Isaac Bickerstaff was almost as well known in that age as Mr. Paul Pry or Mr. Samuel Pickwick in ours.

12. Providence never intended to make the management of public affairs a mystery to be comprehended only by a few persons of sublime genius.

13. They were more like each other than brother is commonly to brother.

14. What is the use of my saying what some of these opinions are?

15. What is the secret mesmerism which friendship possesses?

16. Some greater interest was at stake; some mightier cause than ever yet the sword had pleaded or trumpet had proclaimed.

17. At the age of thirty he went "where Orpheus and Homer are."

18. In the great world of woman Shakespeare stands yet the sole authentic oracle of truth.

19. The news flew like lightning through the country.

20. Though round its breast the rolling clouds are spread,
Eternal sunshine settles on its head.

THE ORDER OF CLAUSES.

§ 201. A NOUN clause may not be used as the subject of a verb: the following examples show how the construction should be altered.

On n'a jamais prouvé d'une manière satisfaisante que Clive se fût rendu coupable d'une trahison délibérée.

That Clive was guilty of wilful treachery has never been satisfactorily proved.

C'était l'idée fixe de Walpole que chaque homme a son prix.
That every man had his price was the fixed idea of Walpole.

S'il avait raison ou non, c'est là une question qui ne nous regarde pas.
Whether he was right or not is a question which does not concern us.

On ne saura jamais à quel point il y était impliqué.
How far he was implicated will never be known.

§ 202. An adjective clause must follow its antecedent, from which it can only be separated by an adjective, or adjectival phrase.

Il a acheté il y a huit jours un cheval blanc dont il se trouve bien content.
He bought a white horse last week with which he is very satisfied.

§ 203. An adverb clause may take almost any position in the sentence.

Aussitôt que l'orateur eut fini de parler, le roi se montra à la fenêtre.
Le roi se montra à la fenêtre aussitôt que l'orateur eut fini de parler.
As soon as the orator had done speaking, the King appeared at the window.

C'est ainsi que, il y a deux jours, il dépêcha plus d'une centaine de ces solliciteurs, en nous accompagnant à la maison d'un voisin.
C'est ainsi qu'il dépêcha, il y a deux jours, en nous accompagnant à la maison d'un voisin, plus d'une centaine de ces solliciteurs, etc., etc.
In this way he attended to more than an hundred of these petitioners whilst accompanying us to the house of a neighbour two days ago.

§ 204. Long sentences in which the various clauses are linked by relatives and conjunctions should be avoided in French.

Nelly trouva sans peine le pensionnat et externat de miss Monflathers. C'était une grande maison avec un mur élevé . . . . . et un judas grillé à travers laquelle la gardienne

du parloir examinait tous les visiteurs avant de leur permettre d'entrer. Pas l'ombre d'homme n'était admis . . . .

Nelly had no difficulty in finding out Miss Monflathers' Boarding and Day Establishment, which was a large house, with a high wall . . . . . and a small grating, through which Miss Monflathers' parlour-maid inspected all visitors before admitting them; for nothing in the shape of a man was suffered to pass . . .

EXERCISE 25.

1. William the Conqueror had a monastery built on the battlefield, which he named Battle Abbey.

2. He used the influence of his office to form a league with the Emperor Charles the Fifth of Germany, by which the freedom of Florence was finally destroyed.

3. He had made, at Closter Seven, an arrangement with the French generals, which left them at liberty to turn their arms against the Prussian dominions.

4. I have had means of information about this matter of which you could never have dreamed.

5. I have a great many things to talk to you which I can talk to no one else about.

6. How it came thither I knew not, nor could I in the least imagine.

7. Farthest from him is best,
Whom reason hath equalled, force hath made supreme
Above his equals.

PART II.

HINTS ON TRANSLATION.

§ 205. A READABLE translation must never be literal. We have already seen (§§ 167–185) that many words, unrepresented in English, are essential in French, and also (§ 186) that some words which occur in English must be omitted in French. The order of words (§§ 187–200) and the arrangement of sentences (§§ 201–204) also differ considerably in the two languages.

§ 206. It often happens that an English word may be best rendered by a French word belonging to another part of speech, by a phrase, or even by a whole sentence. The converse is also frequently the case. The following sections contain examples of the various methods employed in rendering English words into French. In few cases are the rules absolute: they are to be regarded as suggestive rather than exhaustive.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 207. ABSTRACT substantives denoting action may be rendered by the corresponding verbs.

Quand le roi entreprit de reconquérir (*the reconquest of*) **la Normandie.**

Ce que je propose (*the proposition*), **c'est la paix.**

Et alors, conversant et priant (*in conversation and prayer*), **il rendit son âme à Dieu.**

Il n'était pas difficile de prévoir comment finiraient (*the end of*) **des relations qui débutaient ainsi** (*had such a beginning*).

§ 208. A substantive used with a preposition to form an adjectival phrase may be rendered by an adjective.

Ils passèrent fièrement scintillant au soleil matinal dans toute la splendeur guerrière (*in all the splendour of war*).

Une musique préparatoire (*of preparation*).

§ 209. Similarly, two substantives united by the conjunction *and* may be rendered by an adjective and a substantive.

Le luxe moderne avait rendu l'Abbaye de Marney aussi remarquable par le confort et l'agrément des arrangements intérieurs que par son antique et majestueuse splendeur (*its ancient state and splendour*).

§ 210. An adverbial phrase, consisting of a preposition and substantive, may sometimes be rendered by a single adverb. The converse is more frequently the case (§ 256).

Mes yeux distraitement levés (*raised in abstraction*) **vers la fenêtre aperçurent un instant une forme qui passait.**

§ 211. Substantives used as adjectives must be rendered in French either by adjectives or by substantives preceded by a preposition.

Le vent automnal (*the autumn wind*); **un oiseau aquatique** (*a water fowl*); **un jour d'été** (*a summer day*); **une nuit d'hiver** (*a winter night*); **le pot au lait** (*the milk-jug*); **un monument en pierre** (*a stone monument*), etc.

L'avant est orné d'une crête en acier (*with a steel comb*).

§ 212. Many English derivative and compound substantives have no French equivalents; they may be rendered in various ways.

Maggie jugea que la fuite auprès des gypsies était sa seule ressource (*gipsydom was her only refuge*).

Sa proue et sa poupe effilées s'élèvent au-dessus de l'eau comme les pointes d'un croissant dont la courbe a été légèrement adoucie (*with the abruptness of the curve slightly modified*).

Cette chute incessante et universelle qui entraîne toute la machine du monde (*that ceaseless down-rushing of the universal world-fabric*).

§ 213. Abstract substantives are used in French in the plural much more frequently than in English.

Les agitations (*bustle*) de la journée.

Les fautes commises par ignorance, mais dans des intentions pures (*in a virtuous disposition*).

De longues enjambées (*a long stride*) arpentèrent la salle.

Cet homme, dont les renseignements (*whose information*) sur ma vie passée devaient me marquer à jamais comme une mauvaise enfant.

§ 214. Substantives which are the names of personal attributes, such as parts of the body, articles of dress, qualities, etc., are, in French, generally used in the singular, when the same attribute is regarded as common to a number of individuals.

Leur caractère (*their tempers*) sans doute devient pliant et flexible dans la haute température du foyer toujours en ébullition.

La promesse qu'avait faite le Nabab de leur épargner la vie (*to spare their lives*).

De grandes jeunes femmes au grand nez (*with large noses*).

C'étaient de vrais brigands, d'un aspect sauvage, à la face basanée (*with sun-blackened faces*).

§ 215. The substantive *man* or *woman* may be omitted when accompanied by an adjective.

Un innocent (*an innocent man*) est maintenant en prison, accusé du crime dont vous pouvez dévoiler l'auteur.

§ 216. In French the concrete is preferred to the abstract, and the plural to the collective.

Il demanda à Solon, s'il ne le considérait pas comme le plus heureux des hommes (*of mankind*).

§ 217. A substantive repeated for the sake of emphasis in English, should often be rendered by a pronoun.

Son père, captivé par la jeunesse et la beauté, et cette apparence de bonne humeur qu'elles donnent généralement (*which youth and beauty usually give*), avait epousé une femme . . .

Il devait en grande partie sa popularité à cette même timidité que

ses amis lui reprochaient. Elle (*that timidity*) l'empêcha souvent de mettre ses talents sous leur jour le plus avantageux mais cela conjura Némésis.

EXERCISE 26.

1. We spent the whole day in a scrutiny of its contents.
2. The easy reduction of Normandy on the fall of Château Gaillard proved Richard's foresight.
3. King Charles I., after trial by a High Court of Justice, was publicly executed at Whitehall.
4. I claim no merit for endeavours to do a service to my fellow-subjects.
5. Many men have over-reached themselves by an exaggerated estimate of their own importance.
6. In the great world of woman Shakespeare is the sole authentic oracle of truth.
7. Mr. Darwin impressed upon his audience the intimate relation between the lives of animals and those of plants.
8. He especially devoted himself to literature and art.
9. The news constantly arriving from the Crimea told only of devastation caused by foes far more formidable than the Russians.
10. This machine, with swift stroke or by cold slow torture, has wasted the lives and souls of innumerable men.
11. The soldiers replied that nothing could be done without the Nabob's orders, that the Nabob was asleep, and that he would be angry if any one woke him.
12. There remained nothing more in my Uncle Toby's hands than an old regimental coat and sword; so that my Uncle Toby found little or no opposition in taking administration.
13. One of the most illustrious men of the house of De Vere had, in the crisis of peril, been summoned back to England.
14. The intensity of the cold was so great that no one might dare to touch any metal substance.
15. They could hear the pleasant crackling of the first wood fire that was burning in the larger room.
16. Besides all this there was a vast quantity of solid gold ornaments.
17. The gipsies would pay her much respect on account of her superior knowledge.
18. Men's minds were working: the French language was forming.
19. The apartments were furnished with all the cheerful ease and brilliancy of the modern mansion of a noble.

20. You were not even guilty of robbery, when you might have robbed with impunity.

21. My house was covered with thatch, which gave it an air of great snugness.

22. Take each man's censure, but reserve thy judgment.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 218. An adjective may often be rendered by a substantive accompanied by a preposition. This is especially the case with derivative and compound adjectives, which are much less numerous in French than in English.

Notre petite habitation était située au pied d'une montagne à douce pente (*of a sloping hill*).

Un chapeau à larges bords (*broad-brimmed*).

Les hôpitaux pour les malades et les blessés se trouvaient dans un triste état de désorganisation (*a wretchedly disorganized state*).

Tel était l'un des repaires favoris du cavalier sans tête (*of the headless horseman*).

Une immense table de chêne de forme antique (*old-fashioned oaken table*).

Comme un Phalaris enfermé dans le ventre en fusion de son propre taureau d'airain (*in the belly of his own red-heated brazen bull*).

De vrais brigands d'un aspect sauvage (*rough-looking desperadoes*).

Note.—Derivative adjectives may also be rendered by participles or adjectives, followed by a preposition and substantive, *e.g.*

Digne de blâme (*blameworthy*); **secoué par la tempête** (*storm-tossed*); **fait à coups de hache** (*rough hewn*).

§ 219. Adjectives are sometimes represented by relative clauses.

Ces personnages sortaient généralement de familles que ne distinguait ni l'ancienneté ni l'opulence (*neither ancient nor opulent*).

§ 220. An adjective and substantive may sometimes be replaced by two substantives connected by de.

La sublimité des images (*the sublime images*), **la poésie, voilà tout ce qui est présent à notre esprit à la lecture.**

§ 221. The present participle is less frequently used as an adjective than in English, *e.g.*

Infatigable (*untiring*) ; **agréable** (*pleasing*) ; **en saillie** (*projecting*) ; **d'aspect sauvage** (*rough-looking*).

§ 222. The present participle used as an adjective (see also § 238) is often replaced by a relative clause, especially when accompanied by a modifying clause.

Il était naturel qu'ils eussent pris des habitudes qui étonnaient, qui dégoûtaient même (*surprising if not disgusting to*) **les gens qui n'avaient jamais quitté l'Europe.**

La proue menace de couper en deux les bateaux qui passent (*passing boats*).

§ 223. The past participle is used as an adjective less frequently than in English.

Triste (*depressed*) ; **célèbre** (*celebrated*) ; **continu** (*continued*).

Dans une de ces maisons, qui, pour dire toute la vérité, était en fort piteux état et fort endommagé par la vieillesse (*was sadly time-worn and weather-beaten*), **vivait . . .**

EXERCISE 27.

1. Before long the first flakes of snow would be driven along the dry and windy streets.
2. I have already observed that he was a simple, good-natured man.
3. He was, moreover, a kind neighbour, and an obedient hen-pecked husband.
4. To look at its grass-grown yard, one would think that there at least the dead might rest in peace.
5. Behind Mr. Oldbuck's seat was a huge oaken cabinet, decorated at each corner with Dutch cherubs, having their little duck-wings displayed, and great jolter-headed visages placed between them.
6. It was a youthful mistake.

7. The sound seemed to proceed from beneath a tall and lonely fir-tree, in the centre of a cleared, but unenclosed and uncultivated, field.

8. In Marlowe the passion of ideal love for the ultimate idea of beauty found its perfect and supreme expression, faultless and unforced.

9. As yet Time is no fast-hurrying stream, but a sportful, sunlit ocean.

10. In a motionless universe, we taste, what afterwards in this quick-whirling universe is for ever denied us, the balm of Rest.

11. Rest of the apparel dim, unobtrusive in colour or cut, ending in high over-knee military boots.

12. "Oh! Rouen, Rouen," she was heard to murmur, as her eyes ranged over the city from the lofty scaffold.

13. Duke William himself and the native Normans were in the midst.

14. I remembered the promise pledged by Mr. Brocklehurst to apprise Miss Temple and the teachers of my vicious nature.

15. The news told only of devastation caused by sickness, bad weather, bad management.

16. Placed on a noble elevation in the centre of an extensive and well-wooded park, the building presented a front with two projecting wings.

17. It did not surprise me, therefore, that we should find the large room in which we supped crowded with naval men.

18. Mr. Campbell has an invincible antipathy to the Highland bag-pipe.

19. A party of Indians, armed with the bow and arrow and stone-headed spear, stood apart.

20. Alpheus rushed behind,
As an eagle pursuing
A dove to its ruin
Down the streams of the cloudy wind.

21. But mercy is above this sceptred sway.

PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns.

§ 224. A SUBSTANTIVE is sometimes repeated or inserted for the sake of emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, where in English a pronoun is used.

Après avoir écouté le récit de tout ce que ce terrible fauve avait fait, le brave petit Français frappa les assistants d'étonnement (*amazed them*), en leur disant fort tranquillement qu'il irait tuer ce lion (*that he would go and kill him*).

§ 225. The expletive use of the pronoun **en** has already been dealt with (§§ 179–180). The following examples illustrate further its employment.

Qu'il continue donc d'en être ainsi (*so let it remain*).

Il en est inversement de même pour celle (*vice-versa with her*) dont les formes séraphiques cachent une âme vicieuse.

Quelques rares personnes d'un génie sublime, comme un siècle en voit naître à peine deux ou trois (*of which there are seldom three born in an age*).

Il pouvait s'en trouver d'autres (*there might be others*) parmi la compagnie qui en savaient et en pensaient plus (*who knew more and thought more*) qu'ils ne disaient.

M. Campbell, obligé de se soumettre, en est réduit (*is fain*) à se bourrer les oreilles de coton.

Toute la brigade formait à peine l'effectif d'un régiment, selon les chiffres d'une armée continentale; cependant c'était plus que nous n'en avions à perdre (*yet it was more than we could spare*).

Un roi, mourant par un tel acte de violence, en appelle (*appeals*) vivement à l'imagination.

Le récit en (*the tale*) est dans la bouche de tout Anglais.

2. Relative Pronouns.

§ 226. The piling up of relative clauses should be avoided (§ 204).

§ 227. A relative clause may be replaced by (i) a present participle, (ii) a past participle, (iii) a principal sentence.

(i) **Elles étaient assises dans un petit boudoir faisant suite au salon** (*that adjoined the drawing-room*).

(ii) **Colomb fut le premier Européen qui mit le pied dans le nouveau monde découvert par lui** (*which he had discovered*).

(iii) **Munie de ces instructions, Nelly trouva sans peine le pensionnat et externat de Miss Monflathers. C'était** (*which was*) **une grande maison . . .**

§ 228. The use of the relative with the verb *to be* is often avoided by putting the complement in apposition with the subject.

Derrière le siège de M. Oldbuck, vieux fauteuil recouvert en cuir (*which was an ancient, leather-covered easy-chair*), **se dressait un vaste bahut de chêne.**

§ 229. The relative must never be omitted in French.

L'un d'eux lui donna même une croix grossière qu'il avait faite d'un bâton qu'il tenait (*he had made from a stick he held*).

Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns.

§ 230. Possessive adjectives and pronouns, which are more expressive in English than in French, must frequently be expanded in translating.

Toutes les pompes, toutes les grandeurs que la religion, le tombeau et la superstition populaire ont accumulées au sujet des apparitions, convergent ici vers le but qu'il se propose (*to his purpose*).

§ 231. The same may be the case with a possessive genitive.

Ses allusions terrifiantes aux secrets qu'enferme sa prison (*the secrets of its prison house*).

Je suis heureuse de constater l'énergie et l'esprit de sacrifice dont ont fait preuve (*of*) **un grand nombre de fonctionnaires de tout rang.**

§ 232. For the possessive adjective replaced by the definite article see § 167, 5.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

§ 233. A demonstrative pronoun may be replaced by a substantive for the sake of clearness.

En été, ces fiords scintillent sous un soleil d'or, reflétant les ombres vertes ou pourpres des montagnes et des forêts; et ces ombres (*and these*) **peuvent être plus belles que la pâle clarté des vêprées d'hiver.**

EXERCISE 28.

1. The despatch left it free to Peterborough to join or not to join the expedition as he pleased, and he expressed his wish to act upon it.
2. The conversation one night turned on this dog, and the Duke said he had not behaved well lately.
3. That was thy destiny, and not for a moment was it hidden from thyself.
4. One end of the room was entirely occupied by bookshelves, greatly too limited in space for the number of volumes placed upon them, which were, therefore, drawn up in ranks of two or three files deep.
5. Her power consisted in the willing obedience of her subjects, in their respect for the old line from which she sprang.
6. James the Second's precautions for escape were perfectly successful.
7. Being in high spirits at the Nabob's promise to spare their lives, they laughed and jested at the absurdity of the notion.
8. On one side of the church extends a wide woody dell, along which raves a large brook among broken rocks and trunks of fallen trees.
9. In the midst of this wreck of ancient books and utensils sat a large black cat, which, to a superstitious eye, might have presented the *genius loci*, tutelar demon of the apartment.
10. The natives surrounded their new guests, and took them for children of the sun, who had descended to visit the earth.
11. This distinction could more justly be claimed by some mariners—a part of the crew of the vessel from the Spanish Main—who had come ashore to see the humours of Election Day.
12. Many a long winter's night I had thought of the profound remarks I should make to Goethe if I should ever see him.
13. After such an example, none who were conscious of guilt could hope for impunity.
14. Mistakes committed by ignorance would never be of such fatal consequence to the public weal, as the practices of a man whose inclinations led him to be corrupt.

15. Even the tax-gatherer, who was stout, and wore spectacles and a broad-brimmed hat, had the taxes handed through the grating.

16. I caught most of what he said ; its import relieved me from immediate apprehension.

17. Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
And fools, who came to scoff, remained to pray.

18. Friends, who set forth at our side,
Falter, are lost in the storm.

19. The apparel oft proclaims the man,
And they in France of the best rank and station
Are most select and generous in that.

20. Let all the aims thou aim'st at be thy country's,
Thy God's, and truth's.

VERBS.

§ 234. A VERB may sometimes be rendered by the corresponding abstract substantive (for the converse see § 207).

Après son départ (*after he left*) **la conversation commença à languir.**
Cet auteur ne plaît guère à la lecture (*when read*).

English Verbal Phrases.

§ 235. Many English verbs are used with closely connected adverbial extensions. Such combinations do not exist in French and must accordingly be rendered by simple verbs.

Il présentait (*held up*) **à ces concitoyens le miroir dans lequel ils devaient contempler . . .**

Le jeune Irlandais avait un gage d'immortalité dans ses tiroirs où le *Vicaire de Wakefield* **reposait** (*was laid by*).

Le critique jeta un coup d'œil sur l'ouvrage et s'en alla en courant (*ran out*) **l'offrir à un libraire.**

Le lendemain, la princesse sortit goûter (*came out to luncheon*) **avec les tireurs.**

§ 236. The use of French verbs compounded with the prefix **re-** is especially common.

Il rapporta (*brought back*) **en échange soixante livres sterling.**

Il est probable que je ne vous reverrai plus (*shall never see you again*).

Il soupira et se remit à travailler (*turned once more to his work*).

The English Passive.

§ 237. The passive is much less used in French than in English. It may be translated into French—

1. By the use of the active voice.

Mon père me l'a dit (*I was told so by my father*).

Il est difficile de croire aux bonnes intentions de ceux qui nous oppriment (*by whom we are oppressed*).

2. When no agent is expressed, by the indefinite pronoun **on** and the active voice.

On sonna les cloches, on barricada les rues et on fit tous les préparatifs d'une résistance opiniâtre (*The bells were rung . .)*.

3. By the reflexive.

Le lion se trouve (*is found*) **dans presque tous les pays tropicaux.**

4. By an intransitive verb.

Il passa pour (*was considered*) **un capitaine également redoutable dans les sièges et dans les batailles.**

5. Very often the use of a verb may be altogether avoided.

Quelques jours après la déclaration de la guerre (*after war had been declared*).

The English Form in -ing.

§ 238. The English present participle used as an adjective may be rendered by the corresponding French form (§ 73), but is not infrequently replaced by a relative clause.

L'armée qui battait en retraite (*the retreating army*).

Les nuages qui passent (*the passing clouds*).

§ 239. The English present participle, used as such, is very often rendered by a French relative clause, especially when it is accompanied by an object or by an adverbial phrase.

Il reçut une lettre qui lui enjoignait (*enjoining him*) d'attendre encore quelques jours.

Ce beau roman, qui a pour origine (*originating in*) une conversation fortuite.

§ 240. The English gerund is rendered by the French infinitive after all prepositions except **en**. It may sometimes be replaced by the corresponding substantive.

Dans le choix de leur personnel (*in choosing persons*) pour tous les emplois, ils font plus de cas de bonnes mœurs que de grands talents.

§ 241. The English verbal substantive, preceded by a possessive, must be rendered by a subordinate clause.

J'exige qu'il le fasse (*insist on his doing it*).

Je n'ai pas le moindre doute que cela ne soit vrai (*of its being true*).

§ 242. The English verbal substantive, used as subject or object of a verb, is replaced by the French infinitive.

Végéter n'est pas vivre.

Je compte passer (*intend passing*) quelques jours ici.

§ 243. The English verbal substantive in *-ing* usually answers to a French form in **-ment**.

Le cris des naufragés étaient perdus dans le sifflement (*whistling*) du vent et le grondement (*roaring*) des brisants.

§ 244. The English present participle at the beginning of a sentence is often replaced by a subordinate clause.

Comme je savais le danger (*knowing the danger*) je leur avais recommandé la prudence.

§ 245. The frequent recurrence of present participles should be avoided; it is better to break up the sentence.

Je retournai vers ma fortification sans seulement, comme on dit, me sentir marcher. J'étais absolument terrifié; je me retournais

presque à chaque pas; à chaque buisson, à chaque arbre je me méprenais; chaque tronc revêtait à distance une forme humaine.

I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man.

The Past Participle.

§ 246. The past participle, qualifying a substantive, and accompanied itself by a modifying word or phrase, may frequently be rendered by a relative clause. In this case inversion (§ 199) often takes place.

La promesse, qu'avait faite (*made by*) **l'empereur.**

Une arcade de grève durcie que les hautes marées ont ouverte (*hollowed out by the high tides*).

Le point de mire de tous les yeux était un homme de haute taille, qu'on prenait de suite et avec raison pour (*at once and correctly judged to be*) **le second.**

§ 247. This construction is especially frequent when the substantive is accompanied by another adjective. In this case the relative clause is often introduced by the conjunction **et**.

Derrière le siège de M. Oldbuck, vieux fauteuil recouvert de cuir et qu'un long usage avait lustré (*an ancient leather-covered easy-chair, worn smooth by constant use*), **se dressait un vaste bahut de chêne.**

§ 248. The past participle preceded by *when* or *if*, often forms a contracted adverbial clause in English. In French, either the conjunction must be omitted or the whole clause fully expressed.

Cette eau, bue (*when drunk*) **par des étrangers, produit d'abord un effet désagréable.**

Il est certain que, s'il avait été découvert (*if discovered*), **il eût péri.**

The Verbs *TO BE, TO STAND, TO HAVE, TO GET.*

§ 249. The above verbs are often not to be rendered literally: in fact, the verb *to stand* has no exact equivalent in French.

§ 250. The verbs *to be* and *to stand*, when used to indicate position or state, are rendered by various reflexive verbs, such as **se dresser, se trouver, s'élever, se tenir.**

Derrière le fauteuil de M. Oldbuck se dressait (*was*) un vaste bahut de chêne.

À côté de Mlle. Temple se dressa (*stood*) cette même perche noire qui, du tapis de foyer de Gateshead, m'avait regardé d'un œil si sévere et si méprisant.

Comme la plante se trouvait (*was*) en fleurs, elle répandait un parfum agréable.

Les Anglais se tenaient (*stood*) sur la colline, prêts à recevoir l'armée française.

§ 251. The verb *to be*, used to indicate origin, is usually expressed by **venir, provenir** or **sortir.**

"Oui! mes voix venaient du Ciel (*were of God*)", s'écria-t-elle soudain.

§ 252. The verb *to be* may also be rendered in other cases by more expressive verbs.

Ces barbares tatoués ne formaient pas (*were not*) le trait le plus sauvage du spectacle.

L'art consiste (*is*) à être cet auditeur.

Partout où ils s'installaient, il surgissait (*there was*) une sorte d'hostilité entre eux et la vieille noblesse.

§ 253. The verb *to be*, followed by a predicative adjective, is often expressed by a simple verb, *e.g.* **surpasser**, *to be superior to;* **vouloir**, *to be willing;* **équivaloir**, *to be equivalent to*, etc. In a number of familiar expressions the verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, is rendered by the verb **avoir**, followed by a substantive, *e.g.* **avoir faim, soif, sommeil, honte, peur, froid, chaud.**

§ 254. The verb *to have*, indicating possession, is frequently rendered by a more expressive verb.

Ils avaient de l'argent, mais manquaient de (*but had not*) naissance et de hautes relations.

J'en conclus que ces vingt ou trente messieurs ne possédaient pas (*had not*) entre eux tous une demi-douzaine d'idées.

§ 255. The frequent English use of the verb *to get* is a stumbling-block for foreigners. The following examples illustrate some of the most usual ways of rendering it in French.

Tom rejeta l'idée avec mépris, disant que les Bohémiens n'étaient qu'un tas de voleurs, qui n'avaient presque rien (*hardly got anything*) à manger.

Il avait (*had got*) une fosse à creuser pour le lendemain matin.

***To get up*, se lever; *to get rich*, s'enrichir; *to get angry*, se fâcher; *to get the sack*, être chassé; *to get into bed*, monter au lit; *to get beaten*, être battu, etc.**

EXERCISE 29.

1. The Spaniards often thought him a girl disguised in man's clothing.
2. One of them looked, and saw an old man coming up through the storm.
3. It was a lofty room of middling size, obscurely lighted by high, narrow, latticed windows.
4. Gabriel chuckled very heartily to himself, and entered the churchyard, locking the gate behind him.
5. My farm consisted of about twenty acres of excellent land, having given an hundred pounds for my predecessor's goodwill.
6. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my little enclosures, the elms and hedgerows appearing with inexpressible beauty.
7. The purity of the Neva water has already been mentioned.
8. One was called Blanche and the other Rose.
9. They were driven into the cell at the point of the sword.
10. It was agreed to let the past be.
11. The hospitals for the sick and wounded were in a wretchedly disorganized state.
12. The destruction of transport ships was of incalculable injury to the army.
13. It seemed that the king's distress could hardly be increased.
14. The wide dominion of the Franks was severed into a thousand pieces.
15. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition.
16. The Black Sea was swept by terrible storms.
17. He was interested by what he heard of the nascent society.
18. A purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway.

19. Young said, that when Addison was at his ease, he went on in a noble strain of thought and language, so as to chain the attention of every hearer.

20. At a later period, when he possessed an ample fortune, he was one of the most liberal of men.

21. Was there ever such avarice?

22. Soon the first flakes of snow would be driven along the streets.

23. She had often been told that she was like a gipsy.

24. The Highland bagpipe is quite intolerable to ears of common sensibility, when aggravated by the echo of a vaulted hall.

25. There could be little doubt that this very ship's crew had been guilty of depredations on the Spanish commerce.

26. He is, as completely as a man can be, in harmony with Nature.

27. Quiet stoicism, capable enough of what joys there were, but not expecting any worth mention.

28. The voice, if he speak to you, is of similar physiognomy, clear, melodious and sonorous; all tones are in it.

29. The fair Life-garden rustles infinite around, and everywhere is dewy fragrance and the budding of Hope.

30. They refused to sign a document expressing their approval of the proceedings by which Monarchy had been overthrown.

31. Peter I., who was then in his eighty-first year, was sitting by the fire-side of his great kitchen.

32. In conversation and prayer he rendered up his soul to God.

33. He had been summoned back to England by Elizabeth.

34. Can any one conceive a happier man than he who thus has all his riches within himself?

35. The news constantly arriving from the Crimea told only of devastation caused by sickness and bad weather.

36. Their meetings got talked of.

37. The Princess approached the Duke, who was then standing alone.

38. The fame and fortunes of the tribune were diffused in every country.

39. They could hear the pleasant crackling of the wood fire.

40. Enmity to the aristocracy long continued to distinguish the servants of the Company.

41. I went up to a rising ground to look farther; I went up the shore and down the shore.

42. My eyes, raised in abstraction to the window, caught sight of a figure just passing.

43. Wherever two thoughts stand related to each other by a law of antagonism, they are apt to suggest each other.

44. It would have been as impossible to find any individual article wanted as to put it to any use when discovered.

45. Cruel Tom, and the rest of her relations, who found fault with her, should never see her again.

46. Swift, when burning with animosity against the Whigs, could not but confess that, after all, he had never known any associate so agreeable as Addison.

47. These beds are made of fresh heath, pulled up by the roots.

48. It was like the wailing of some one in distress.

49. All these opinions, if received, ought to produce insanity in every well-regulated mind.

50. No more firing was heard at Brussels.

51. They wait patiently till the laird comes forth.

52. When decayed, may he mingle his dust with your own.

ADVERBS.

§ 256. A GREAT number of English adverbs ending in *-ly* have no equivalents in French, and must be rendered by adverbial phrases consisting of a substantive governed by a preposition.

Ils faisaient valoir d'une façon quelque peu encombrante (*a little obtrusively*) **le seul avantage qu'ils possédaient.**

La mort d'un être quelconque hante mon esprit plus obstinément et d'une façon plus obsédante (*more besiegingly*) **en cette saison.**

Il était, en effet, par nature (*naturally*) **porté au vice.**

§ 257. The adverb is sometimes contained in the verbs, *e.g.* venir de . . ., *to have just* . . .; ne faire que . . ., *to only* . . .

L'été de la Saint-Martin était passé, les premières gelées ne devaient pas tarder à arriver (*would come before long*).

EXERCISE 30.

1. In Summer, the exuberant and riotous prodigality of life naturally forces the mind more powerfully upon the antagonist thought of death.

2. Deprived of the spiritual aid which she had so earnestly desired, she had administered it to herself.

3. On the thirtieth of January, 1649, King Charles the First was publicly executed at Whitehall.

4. If the travellers had not happily found themselves a little outside of the central current, they would have been thrown down.

5. He had just been arrested for debt at his landlady's request.

6. You are alarming yourselves unnecessarily.

7. Do we mean then that a childish error could permanently master his understanding?

8. The road that led to it, and the bridge itself, were thickly shaded with overhanging trees.

9. It was a lofty room, obscurely lighted by narrow windows.

10. The walls were partly clothed with grim old tapestry.

11. Good-natured friends soon carried the lines to Voltaire.

12. A well-dressed man, evidently the captain, was with them.

13. Gabriel smiled grimly.

14. Gabriel chuckled very heartily to himself.

15. The Puritan elders smiled not unbenignantly at the clamour and rude deportment of these jolly sea-faring men.

16. For kings and for beggars, for the justly doomed and the unjustly, it is a hard thing to die.

17. Not infrequently we find our own disguise the strangest in the masquerade.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 258. THE preposition is the most difficult part of speech to render into French, not only because of the lack of correspondence in the employment of individual prepositions, but also because of the more expressive character of the English preposition, which often requires to be expanded into a phrase or sentence in French.

§ 259. The following examples illustrate the correspondence that exists in the case of the commoner prepositions.

§ 260. About, Around.

About six o'clock.	Vers (*or* sur les) six heures.
Around London.	Autour de Londres.
A voyage *round* the world.	Le tour du monde.

Tell us *about* the war.	Parlez-nous de la guerre.
Much ado *about* nothing.	Beaucoup de bruit pour rien.
I have no money *about* me.	Je n'ai pas d'argent sur moi.
He is *about* thirty.	Il a environ trente ans.
What are you thinking *about*?	À quoi pensez-vous ?
He is anxious *about* you.	Il est inquiet sur votre compte.

§ 261. Above, Over.

Above the clouds.	Au-dessus des nuages.
Above suspicion.	Au-dessus (*or* hors) de tout soupçon.
Above all, no scandal.	Avant tout (*or* surtout), point de scène.
To throw *overboard*.	Jeter par-dessus bord.
Man *overboard*!	Un homme à la mer !
Above the bridge.	En amont du pont.
Over the way.	De l'autre côté de la rue.
He triumphed *over* me.	Il triompha de moi.

§ 262. After, According to.

After Michaelmas.	Après la Saint-Michel.
A landscape *after* Poussin.	Un paysage à la Poussin.
To take *after*.	Tenir de.
According to you.	Selon (*or* suivant) vous.
To act *according* to orders.	Agir d'après les ordres.

§ 263. Among, Amid, Between.

Among the prisoners.	Parmi les prisonniers.
Among the Romans.	Chez les Romains.
One *among* them.	L'un d'eux (*or* d'entre eux).
Amid the cheers of the crowd.	Aux acclamations de la foule.
Between you and me.	Entre nous ; de vous à moi.
Between now and Thursday.	D'ici à jeudi.
There's many a slip *'twixt* the cup and the lip.	Il y a loin de la coupe aux lèvres.

§ 264. At.

At Calais.	À Calais.
To play *at* cards.	Jouer aux cartes.
At sea.	Sur mer.

He is annoyed *at* the accident.	Il est fâché **du** contretemps.
At the head.	**En** tête.
At his house.	**Chez** lui.
Ambassador *at* the Spanish Court.	Ambassadeur **auprès du** roi d'Espagne.
At the same time.	**À** la fois ; **en** même temps.
At that time	**Dans** ce temps-là.

§ 265. Before.

Before two o'clock.	**Avant** deux heures.
Before the judge.	**Devant** le juge.

§ 266. Below, Beneath, Under.

Below the surface.	**Au-dessous** de la surface.
Below the bridge.	**En aval du** pont.
Under a tree.	**Sous** un arbre.
Under shelter from.	**A** l'abri de.
Under cover of.	**À** la faveur de.
Under the circumstances.	**Dans** les circonstances.
Under full sail	Toutes voiles **dehors**.

§ 267. Beside, Near.

I sat down *beside* him.	Je m'assis **à** ses **côtés**.
Near the village.	**Auprès du** village.
Near death.	**Près de** mourir.
Passy *near* Paris.	Passy **près** Paris.
He was *beside* himself.	Il fut **hors de** lui-même

§ 268. Beyond.

Beyond the hills.	**Au delà des** (*or* **par delà** les) collines.
Beyond measure.	**Outre** mesure.

§ 269. By.

To lead *by* the hand.	Mener **par** la main.
Taller *by* a head.	**Plus grand de** la tête.
Eight feet *by* six.	Huit pieds **sur** six.
To take example *by*.	Prendre exemple **sur**.
I knew him *by* his coat.	Je le reconnus **à** son habit.
Made *by* hand.	**Fait à** la main.

To hire *by* the year.	Louer **à** l'année.
Day *by* day.	Jour **par** jour.
Drop *by* drop.	Goutte **à** goutte.
By night.	**De** (*or* **la**) nuit.
By a large majority.	**À** une grande majorité.
By turns.	Tour **à** tour.
I know him *by* name.	Je le connais **de** nom.
By sound of trumpet.	**À** son de trompe.
Killed *by* conspirators.	Tué **par** des conjurés.
Loved *by* all.	Aimé **de** tous.

§ 270. For.

Tit *for* tat.	Un prêté **pour** un rendu.
He started *for* London.	Il partit **pour** Londres.
For three years.	**Pendant** trois ans.
To sell *for* cash.	Vendre argent comptant.
To sell *for* its weight in gold.	Vendre **au** poids de l'or.
To buy *for* five francs.	Acheter cinq francs.
A truce *for* three years.	Une trêve **de** trois ans.
To jump *for* joy.	Sauter **de** joie.
Thanks *for* the compliment.	Merci **du** compliment.
To exchange an old friend *for* a new one.	Échanger un vieil ami contre un nouveau.
It is *for* him to speak.	C'est **à** lui de parler.
For lack of money.	Faute d'argent.
Word *for* word.	Mot **à** mot.
He works *for* a hundred francs a month.	Il travaille **à** raison de cent francs par mois.
Answerable *for*.	Responsable **de**.
To put up *for* auction.	Mettre **à** l'encan.
Go *for* the doctor.	Allez chercher le médecin.
To call *for* vengeance.	Crier vengeance.
To call *for* drink.	Demander **à** boire.
For a joke.	**Par** plaisanterie.

§ 271. From, Out of, Of, Off.

He has returned *from* Paris.	Il est revenu **de** Paris.
Of what is that composed?	**De** quoi cela se compose-t-il?
Think *of* me.	Pensez **à** moi.
From this moment.	**Dès** ce moment.
To drink *from* a glass.	Boire **dans** un verre.

To take *from* the table.	Prendre **sur** la table.
To draw *from* the cast.	Dessiner **d'après** la bosse.
From pride.	**Par** orgueil.
From several motives.	**Pour** plusieurs motifs.
To throw *out of* the window.	Jeter **par** la fenêtre.
Out of respect for you.	**Par** respect pour vous.
Out of danger.	**Hors de** danger.
From Blois to Tours.	**Depuis** (*or* **de**) Blois jusqu'**à** (*or* **à**) Tours.
From this point of view.	**A** ce point de vue ; **sous** ce rapport.
From Sunday onwards.	**À partir de** dimanche.
To distinguish the good *from* the bad.	Distinguer **le** bon **d'avec le** mauvais.
He tore himself *from* their hands.	Il s'arracha **à** leurs mains.
To write *from* dictation.	Écrire **sous** la dictée.
From day to day.	**De** jour en jour.
From hand to mouth.	**Au** jour le jour.
Ornaments *of* tin.	Des ornements **d'**étain (*or* **en** étain).
That is very kind *of* you.	C'est bien aimable **de** votre part.
Off Dover.	**Devant** Douvres.

§ 272. In, Into, Within.

In the street.	**Dans** la rue.
In exile.	**En** exil.
In your place.	**À** (*or* **en**) votre place.
In the hand.	**À** la main.
In the morning.	Le matin.
In broad daylight.	**En** plein jour.
In such weather.	**Par** le temps qu'il fait.
In April.	**En** avril (**au** mois d'avril).
In France.	**En** France.
In fair France.	**Dans** la belle France.
In Paris.	**À** Paris.
In Japan.	**Au** Japon.
In the United States.	**Aux** États-unis.
In winter, summer, autumn.	**En** hiver, été, automne.
In spring.	**Au** printemps.
In the South.	**Au** midi.
To believe *in* ghosts.	Croire **aux** revenants.
To believe *in* God.	Croire **en** Dieu.
In a loud voice.	**À** haute voix.

In this manner.	**De** cette manière.
In the French fashion.	**À** la française.
The prettiest girl *in* the village.	La plus belle fille **du** village.
Strong *in* his conscience.	Fort **de** sa conscience.
Painted *in* oils.	Peint **à** l'huile.
One *in* ten.	Un **sur** dix.
In a few days.	**Dans** quelque jours ; **d'ici (à)** quelques jours.
In a short time.	**Sous** peu.
In Church.	**À** l'église.
In the country.	**À** la campagne.
In the reign of John.	**Sous** le règne de Jean.
In alphabetical order.	**Par** ordre alphabétique.
We were six *in* number.	Nous étions **au nombre de** six.
He arrived *in* time.	Il arriva **à** temps.
Superior *in* intellect.	Supérieur **quant à** l'intelligence.
Into the bargain.	**Par-dessus** le marché.
To change *into* gold.	Changer **en** or.
He fell *into* their hands.	Il tomba **entre** leurs mains.
Within the limits.	**Au-dedans des** limites.
Within four days.	**D'ici (à)** quatre jours.

§ 273. On, Upon.

On the bank of the river.	**Sur** le bord du fleuve.
Châlons *on* (the) Marne.	Châlons-**sur**-Marne.
On a summer day.	**Par** un jour d'été.
On the day of his arrival.	Le jour de son arrivée.
On the stairs.	**Dans** l'escalier.
On the way.	**En** chemin.
On hearing this.	**En** apprenant cela.
On a visit.	**Dans** une visite.
On leave.	**En** congé.
On duty.	**De** service.
On one side.	**D'un** côté.
On the right.	**À** droite.
On his arrival.	**À** son arrivée.
On this occasion.	**Dans** cette occasion.
On purpose.	**À** dessein.
On pain of death.	**Sous** peine de mort.
On bread and water.	**Au** pain et **à** l'eau.
On foot or *on* horseback.	**À** pied ou **à** cheval.

That depends *on* circumstances.	Cela dépend des circonstances.
I congratulate you *on* your success.	Je vous félicite de votre succes.
He dined *on* a leg of mutton.	Il dîna d'un gigot.

§ 274. Through, Across, Throughout.

Through the fields.	À travers les champs.
Through all obstacles.	Au travers de tous les obstacles
To pass *through* Amiens.	Passer par Amiens.
The whole night *through*.	De toute la nuit.
To speak *through* the nose.	Parler du nez.
Through carelessness.	Par négligence.
Through illness.	Par suite d'une maladie.
Across the road.	De l'autre côté de la rue.
Throughout the town.	Par toute la ville.

§ 275. To, Till, Towards.

He has gone *to* Nantes.	Il est allé à Nantes.
He has gone *to* Turkey.	Il est allé en Turquie.
He pressed me *to* his heart.	Il me serra sur son cœur.
The bird fell *to* the ground.	L'oiseau tomba à terre.
The tree fell *to* the ground.	L'arbre tomba par terre.
To my cost.	Pour mon malheur
To this end.	Dans ce but.
The train *to* Laon.	Le train de Laon.
The road *to* Paris.	La route de Paris.
To the interest of the public.	De l'intérêt du public.
He was summoned *to* the king.	Il fut mandé auprès du roi.
Till to-day.	Jusqu'aujourd'hui.
Till then, *till* now.	Jusque-là, jusqu'ici.
Till to-morrow.	Jusqu'à demain.
Friendship *towards*.	L'amitié envers.
Towards London.	Vers Londres.

§ 276. With.

With pleasure.	Avec plaisir.
With all my heart.	De tout mon cœur.
With the author's compliments.	Hommage de l'auteur.
He is angry *with* you.	Il est fâché contre vous.
He is not pleased *with* you.	Il n'est pas content de vous.
Loaded *with* ball.	Chargé à balle.
The man *with* the iron mask.	L'homme au masque de fer.
With the naked eye.	À l'œil nu.

With open arms.	A bras ouverts.
With tearful eyes.	Les larmes aux yeux.
To fight *with* pistols.	Se battre au pistolet.
To fight *with* robbers.	Se battre contre des brigands.
He lives *with* his family.	Il vit dans sa famille.
With whom is your business?	À qui avez-vous affaire?

§ 277. The following examples show how a preposition must often be expanded in order that its full force may be expressed.

M. Bennet n'était pas d'un caractère à chercher l'oubli du désappointement dans la recherche d'aucun de ces plaisirs (*in any of those pleasures*) qui trop souvent consolent les malheureux.

Deux idées se trouvent associées l'une à l'autre par une loi d'antagonisme, et existent en vertu d'une répulsion mutuelle (*by mutual repulsion*).

La relation intime qui existe entre (*the intimate relation between*) la vie des animaux et celle des plantes.

Ils étaient exposés aux feux obliques et croisés des batteries placées sur (*of the batteries on*) les collines.

L'équipage d'un navire venant des (*a ship from the*) colonies espagnoles.

Une grande licence était accordée aux marins, non seulement pour les fredaines qu'ils se permettaient à terre, mais pour des faits bien plus audacieux commis sur (*far more desperate deeds on*) leur propre élément.

Il ne pouvait y avoir aucun doute que l'équipage de ce navire se fût rendu coupable de déprédations au préjudice du (*on the*) commerce espagnol.

Une éducation libérale est une éducation qui n'a pas seulement préparé l'homme à échapper aux grands malheurs qu'entraîne la désobéissance (*of disobedience*) aux lois naturelles.

Dans les caractères correspondants créés par (*in*) Shakespeare.

L'angoisse poignante qui vous saisit au sujet du crime (*painful anxiety about the act*) sur le point de se commettre.

Les vivats et les exhortations et les reproches adressés aux (*objurgations of*) numéros tant et tant.

Des trépidations causées par d'innombrables fugitifs, je ne savais pas s'ils étaient les soldats de la bonne cause ou de la mauvaise (*I knew not whether from the good cause or the bad*).

Car c'était le siècle des soupers. Heureux siècle! Repas où régnaient l'aise et la gaieté (*meal of ease and mirth*).

§ 278. In English a preposition often terminates a sentence. This is not permissible in French.

Je n'eus que le temps de me saisir d'une pièce de bois qu'on avait apporté pour faire du feu (*to make a fire with*).

EXERCISE 31.

1. The apartments were furnished with all the cheerful ease and brilliancy of the modern mansion of a noble.

2. They who were in the ship perceived the earthquake in the island.

3. Nevertheless, it is rather strange to find the word "hardship" applied to any obstacle to the growth of a plant.

4. He saw the soldiers standing steady in two scarlet lines across the deck.

5. Had an angel from heaven bid him abandon his work, he would have answered with a curse.

6. To Berlin he was invited by a series of letters.

7. The authority of Elizabeth rested solely on the support of her subjects and in their respect for the old line from which she sprang.

8. When my uncle Toby had settled all accounts betwixt the agent of the regiment and Le Fevre, there remained nothing more in my Uncle Toby's hands than an old regimental coat and sword.

9. In the great world of woman Shakespeare is the sole authentic oracle of truth.

10. A purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway.

11. The English stood on the hill ready for the French host.

12. The building was still called Marney Abbey, though remote from the site of the ancient monastery.

13. There were three other apartments, one for my wife and me, another for our two daughters, within our own, and the third for the rest of the children.

14. A little later the Duke was informed that the Prince had been inquired after, not the dog.

15. I have a great many things to talk to you, which I can talk to no one else about.

16. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorned the venerable place.

17. We, we have chosen our path,
Path to a clear-purposed goal.

18. He would not in mine age
Have left me naked to mine enemies.

PART III.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION.

1.

ALFRED the Great, having heard that the Earl of Devonshire had obtained a great victory over the Danes, and had taken their magical standard, disguised himself as a harper, entered the enemy's camp, and was admitted to the principal generals, who praised his talent for music. He acquired an exact knowledge of the situation of his enemies, seized the favourable moment, surprised the Danes at Eddington, and gained a complete victory.

2.

AFTER the battle of Tewkesbury, the young Prince Edward was brought into the presence of the King, who asked him how he dared to come to England in arms. Edward boldly replied: "I came to recover my father's kingdom." Then the King struck him in the face with his gauntlet, and the attendants immediately fell upon him with their swords and killed him. Margaret survived her son only nine years, of which she spent five a prisoner in the Tower.

3.

WHEN the battle of the Boyne was lost, the French alone retreated in good order. James the Second's precautions for escape were perfectly successful; he went off under the protection of a regiment of cavalry and fled, as fast as fear could carry him, to Dublin. He endeavoured to throw the blame of the defeat on the brave Irish. As he reached the

Castle of Dublin, and as Lady Tyrconnel advanced to meet him, he said to her, "Your countrymen, Madam, can run very fast." She replied, "Your Majesty excels them in this, as in everything else; you were here first."

4.

THE insect, not finding a firm hold for its little feet, slipped and fell several times to the ground, yet immediately renewed its efforts. The perseverance of the insect attracted the King's attention, and he beheld with regret every unsuccessful attempt. The spider, however, recommenced after every fall, and at length, after twelve failures, Bruce saw with pleasure the thirteenth trial crowned with success. He immediately exclaimed: "What a lesson for mankind! I will profit by it, for it is the best I ever received. I have been already twelve times defeated by the superior forces of my enemies; I will follow the example of the spider; another effort may be successful."

5.

ANOTHER terrible disaster has occurred in Zante. At eight o'clock in the morning of the seventeenth of April an earthquake, exceeding in violence that of last January, laid almost every house in the island in ruins. The destruction is far greater than on the previous occasion. The town has been almost destroyed. The church, which escaped the last earthquake, has collapsed, and the theatre is in ruins. It is known that eleven persons have been killed in the town and about eighty injured.

6.

FERNAND CORTEZ, the famous conqueror of Mexico, was born in the year fourteen hundred and eighty-five. He belonged to a noble but poor family. After many brilliant victories he returned to Spain, where he was coolly received

by the King. One day he presented himself to the Monarch, who said to him: "Who are you?" "I am," replied Cortez proudly, "the man who has given you more provinces than your ancestors left you cities."

7.

COLUMBUS was the first European who set foot on the new world which he had discovered. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked sword in his hand. His men followed, and kneeling down they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see. The dress of the Spaniards, the whiteness of their skin, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising to the natives, who surrounded their new guests, and took them for children of the sun who had descended to visit the earth.

8.

WILLIAM the Conqueror had a monastery built on the battle-field, which he named Battle Abbey. Queen Matilda also wished to leave some memorial of her husband's victory; so she made, with the assistance of her ladies-in-waiting, on a canvas two hundred and eleven feet long, and nineteen inches wide, a worsted tapestry, representing all the events of the Conquest, from Harold's departure for Normandy until his death. This curious piece of work, known by the name of the Bayeux tapestry, is still preserved in the library of that town.

9.

CRŒSUS was showing Solon his ornaments, and displaying his riches, hoping to excite the philosopher's envy. Whilst exhibiting them, he asked Solon whether he did not consider him as the happiest of mankind. "No," replied Solon, "I know one man more happy—a poor peasant of Greece, who has but a few wants, and can supply them with his labour." Crœsus was vexed at the reply, and inquired again, whether

Solon did not at least think him happy—even if he was not the most happy of all. "Alas!" exclaimed Solon, "what man can be pronounced happy before he dies?"

10.

Jacques Cœur, Intendant-General of Finances under Charles VII., King of France, was at the same time one of the richest merchants who ever existed. When the King undertook the reconquest of Normandy, Jacques Cœur raised an army at his own expense and lent several millions to his sovereign for the purpose of this expedition. While he occupied the place of Minister of Finances, he traded with Egypt and the different Eastern countries. He imported into Europe furs, silk stuffs, and silver. In all the towns of France, in every capital of Europe, he had agents for the sale of these foreign goods; and his annual profits exceeded those of all the French merchants taken together.

11.

During the wars in Italy, a gentleman who was returning home was robbed of his cloak by some soldiers. He complained to the chief of the brigands, telling him that some of his men had taken his cloak, and that he hoped the general would not let them go unpunished. The chief, looking at the gentleman, asked him how he was dressed when he lost his cloak. "Just as I am at present," replied he. "Then," said the chief, "you have not been robbed by my men, for I am sure there is not one among them who would have left you so good a coat upon your back as that you wear now."

12.

A great pile was raised in the market-place of Rouen, where the statue of Jeanne d'Arc stands now. Even the soldiers were hushed as she reached the stake. One indeed

passed to her a rough cross he had made from a stick he held, and she clasped it to her bosom. "Oh! Rouen, Rouen," she was heard to murmur, as her eyes ranged over the city from the lofty scaffold, "I have great fear lest you suffer from my death." "Yes, my voices were of God!" she suddenly cried as the last moment came; "they have never deceived me!" Soon the flames reached her, the girl's head sank on her breast, there was one cry of "Jesus!" "We are lost," an English soldier muttered as the crowd broke up: "we have burned a saint."

13.

It was Homer who formed the character of the Greek nation. No poet has ever, as a poet, exercised similar influence over his countrymen. Prophets, lawgivers, and sages have formed the character of other nations; it was reserved to a poet to form that of the Greeks. This is a feature in their character which was not wholly erased, even in the period of their degeneracy. When lawgivers and sages appeared in Greece, the work of the poet had already been accomplished; and they paid homage to his superior genius. He held up before his nation the mirror in which they were to behold the world of gods and heroes, no less than of feeble mortals.

14.

The English stood on the hill ready for the French host, horse and foot, who were coming across from Telham to attack them. About nine o'clock on Saturday morning they came near to the foot of the hill, and now began the great battle of Senlac or Hastings. The Duke's army was in three parts. Alan and the Bretons had to attack on the left, to the west of the Abbey buildings. Roger of Montgomery with the French and Picards were on the right, near where the railway station is now. Duke William himself and the native Normans were in the midst, and they

came right against the point of the hill which was crowned by the standard, where King Harold himself stood ready for them.

15.

Francis the Second, king of France, being dead, the Parliament of Edinburgh sent a message to his widow, Mary Stuart, requesting her to come over and assume the government of the Scotch kingdom. Mary, after some hesitation, resolved to comply with the wishes of her subjects. She embarked at Calais. Sitting pensively on the deck of the ship, she kept her eyes fixed on the French shore, and with tears she bade a touching farewell to that "pleasant land of France" where she had reigned for a short time, greatly cherished and admired.

16.

Meanwhile the insurgents had seized the Capitol. All the chiefs of the senate appeared in arms to support Marius, who became the unwilling leader of his political adversaries. With such a commander it might not have been easy to reduce the insurgents; but some persons cut the pipes which supplied the quarter with water, and as it thus became impossible for the insurgents to hold out, they surrendered. The citizens would have slain them on the spot; but Marius insisted on a regular trial and shut them up in the senate house. Numbers of the people, however, climbed upon the roof, tore off the tiles, and killed all the prisoners.

17.

The purity of the Neva water has already been mentioned, yet it is a well-known fact, that when drunk by strangers it produces at first unpleasant effects, for which reason persons, when they first arrive at St. Petersburg, are always

advised to drink no water without mixing wine or spirit with it. This lasts, however, for a very short time; and, once accustomed to the Neva water, most people grow so fond of it, that they prefer it to every water in the world. A St. Petersburger, on returning from a journey, always congratulates himself on being able to slake his thirst in the water of his beloved river.

18.

THE French soldier whom we have referred to has killed so many lions that he well deserves his name of the "Lion Killer." On the first evening of his arrival at the camp in the French colony in Algeria, he heard sad complaints of a lion that had been devouring the flocks and herds. After listening to the account of all that this dreadful beast had done and was doing, the brave little Frenchman amazed them by saying very quietly that he would go and kill him, if they would find him a guide. They all made fun of him on hearing this, telling him, if the lion did not eat him, it would only be because he was so small. But this did not turn the brave hunter from his purpose.

19.

DAUGHTER of Domremy, when the gratitude of thy king shall awaken, thou wilt be sleeping the sleep of the dead. . . . . When the thunders of universal France, as even yet may happen, shall proclaim the grandeur of the poor shepherd girl that gave up all for her country, thy ear, young shepherd girl, will have been deaf for five centuries. To suffer and to do, that was thy portion in life; to *do*—never for thyself, always for others; to *suffer*—never in the persons of generous champions, always in thy own: that was thy destiny, and not for a moment was it hidden from thyself.

20.

It was about the middle of April that Columbus arrived at Barcelona, where every preparation had been made to give him a solemn and magnificent reception. The beauty and serenity of the weather, in that genial season and favoured climate, contributed to give splendour to this memorable ceremony. As he drew near the place, many of the more youthful courtiers and hidalgos of gallant bearing came forth to meet and welcome him. His entrance into this noble city has been compared to one of those triumphs which the Romans were accustomed to decree to conquerors. First were paraded the Indians, painted according to their savage fashion, and decorated with their national ornaments of gold.

21.

The news flew like lightning throughout the country, and spread enthusiasm everywhere. The people remembered Mary's gentleness, grace, and beauty; they remembered her misfortunes also; and, if they reflected on her errors, they thought they had been punished with sufficient severity. On Sunday, Mary was a sad and helpless captive in a lonely tower. On the Saturday following, she was at the head of a powerful confederacy, by which nine earls, nine bishops, eighteen lords, and many gentlemen of high rank, engaged to defend her person, and restore her power.

22.

When I visited Goethe at Weimar, I took him for a god, and was about to address him in Greek, but, as I noticed that he understood German, I told him in this latter language that the plums along the road from Jena to Weimar were excellent. Many a long winter's night I had thought of the profound remarks I should make to Goethe if I should ever see him. And now that I saw him at last face to face, I told him that the plums of Saxony were delicious! and Goethe smiled.

23.

PROFESSIONS of patriotism are become stale and ridiculous. For my own part I claim no merit for endeavours to do a service to my fellow subjects. I have done it to the best of my understanding; and, without looking for the approbation of other men, my conscience is satisfied. What remains to be done concerns the collective body of the people. They are now to determine for themselves whether they will firmly and constitutionally assert their rights or make an humble slavish surrender of them at the feet of the Ministry. To a generous mind there cannot be a doubt.

24.

WHILE we were eating and drinking, the island suddenly trembled and we felt a severe shock. They who were in the ship perceived the earthquake in the island, and immediately called to us to re-embark as soon as possible, or we should all perish, for what we supposed to be an island was no more than the back of a large fish. The most active jumped into the boat, whilst others threw themselves into the water to swim to the ship; as for me, I was still on the island when it plunged into the sea, and I had only time to seize hold of a piece of wood, which had been brought to make a fire with.

25.

THE authority of Elizabeth rested solely on the support of her people. Those who say that her power was absolute, do not sufficiently consider in what her power consisted. Her power consisted in the willing obedience of her subjects, in their attachment to her person and to her office, in their respect for the old line from which she sprang, in their sense of the general security which they enjoyed under her government. These were the means, and the only means, which she had at her command for carrying her decrees into execution, for resisting foreign enemies, and for crushing domestic treason.

26.

A POOR widow once lived in a little cottage with a garden in front of it, in which grew two rose-trees, one bearing white roses and the other red. She had two daughters, who were just like the two rose-trees; one was called Blanche and the other Rose, and they were the sweetest and best children in the world, always industrious and cheerful; but Blanche was quieter and more gentle than her sister. Rose loved to run about the fields and meadows, and to pick flowers and catch butterflies; but Blanche remained at home with her mother, and helped her in the household, or read aloud to her when there was no work to be done.

27.

MANY brave men they lost, and of two who fell in this battle I will speak. The first, low in rank, for he was but a lieutenant, rich in honour, for he wore many scars, was young of days. He was only nineteen. But he had seen more combats and sieges than he could count years. So slight of person, and of such surprising and delicate beauty, that the Spaniards often thought him a girl disguised in men's clothing, he was yet so vigorous, so active, so brave, that the most daring and experienced veterans watched his looks on the field of battle, and, implicitly following where he led, would like children obey his slightest sign in the most difficult situations.

28.

WHEN they were ordered to enter the cell, they imagined that the soldiers were joking: and, being in high spirits on account of the Nabob's promise to spare their lives, they laughed and jested at the absurdity of the notion. They soon found out their mistake. They expostulated, they entreated, but in vain. The captives were driven into the cell at the point of the sword, and the door was instantly shut and locked upon them. To their cries for mercy the

soldiers replied that nothing could be done without the Nabob's orders, that the Nabob was asleep, and that he would be angry if any one woke him.

29.

THIS speech so incensed Harry, that he raised his hand in a violent fury, and gave the old judge a box on the ear. Thereupon the judge ordered him to be taken to prison, for having struck one of the officers of the law.

When the old man informed the King how he had acted, the King praised him, and made the Prince ask for pardon. Harry, who by this time was rather cooler, saw how much he was to blame; so he willingly confessed his fault, and humbly begged the judge to forgive him.

This noble action so delighted the King, that he said— "I am a happy King to have so honest a judge, who was not afraid to send my son to jail; but I am a happier father to have so good a son, who is not ashamed to acknowledge his fault, and submit himself to the laws."

30.

ON the thirtieth of January, sixteen hundred and forty-nine, in weather so cold that the Thames was frozen over, King Charles the First, after trial by a High Court of Justice constituted by authority of the House of Commons, was publicly executed at Whitehall. On the seventh of February, the House of Commons abolished the office of King in this nation, and soon afterwards a Council of State was appointed, consisting of forty-one persons, of whom twenty-two, including Sir Henry Vane, refused to sign a document expressing their approval of the proceedings by which Monarchy had been overthrown. It was agreed to let the past be, and take only a pledge of fidelity for the future. To this Council John Milton was appointed Secretary for Foreign Tongues.

31.

Lorenzo, the grandson of Giovanni, the founder of the famous House of Medici, became the head of the State. He used his vast power on the whole wisely and well, and especially devoted himself to literature and art, gaining by his generosity and munificence in this respect the title of Lorenzo the Magnificent. He collected many hundreds of rare manuscripts from Italy and the East, established an academy for students in his own gardens and filled it with glorious statues, and gathered round him a numerous and famous body of artists and authors. One of his sons became Pope under the title of Leo the Tenth, and another member of the House of Medici became Pope Clement the Seventh. It was the latter who used the influence of his office to form a league with the Emperor Charles the Fifth of Germany, by which the freedom of Florence as a republican city was finally destroyed.

32.

On the 18th of October, 1830, Peter I., who was then in his eighty-first year, was sitting, after the manner of his country, by the fireside of his great kitchen, and was giving to his chiefs, assembled round him, his instructions. The aged prince, feeling himself weak, announced that his last hour had come, and prayed them to conduct him to the humble cell which, without fire, he inhabited as a hermit would. He stretched himself on his bed, urged upon his chiefs to execute with fidelity the provisions set forth in the will he had that day dictated to his secretary; and then, in conversation and in prayer, rendered up his soul to God. So died the illustrious man whom a Slavonic writer has not scrupled to call the Louis XIV. of Tsernagora, but who, in many respects, was also its Saint Louis.

33.

WHATEVER were the misfortunes that had overwhelmed her, whatever sorrows she had had to endure, Mary Queen of Scots had not allowed herself to be cast down, and the trust she had reposed in the Almighty had never forsaken her. In fact, during the long years of her imprisonment, she had shown herself more courageous than would have been supposed, considering her previous conduct, which even her partisans had censured. Threatened with immediate death, and deprived of the spiritual aid which she had so earnestly desired, she had administered it to herself, and thus prepared for herself a truly Christian end.

34.

ONE of the most illustrious men of the noble house of De Vere, a captain who had acquired much experience and much fame in the Netherlands, had, in the crisis of peril, been summoned back to England by Elizabeth, and rode with her through the endless ranks of shouting pikemen. She asked him what he thought of the army. "It is," he said, "a brave army." There was something in his tone or manner which showed that he meant more than his words expressed. The Queen insisted on his speaking out. "Madam," he said, "your Grace's army is brave indeed. I have not in the world the name of a coward; and yet I am the greatest coward here. All these fine fellows are praying that the enemy may land, and that there may be a battle; and I, who know that enemy well, cannot think of such a battle without dismay."

35.

THE house in which I was born stood near this hill, and a broad stream which ran round it was one by whose banks I had often sat, whilst I read some nice new tale, that made the time seem to fly as fast as the brook by my side.

At times, too, I ran and had my play with some young friend by the edge of the stream, as gay and full of life and joy as the young fish that swam about in it. Now that I had grown old, each rock and stone was dear to me as some old friend.

36.

It seemed that the King's distress could hardly be increased. Yet at this moment another blow not less terrible than that of Kolin fell upon him. The French under Marshal D'Estrées had invaded Germany. The Duke of Cumberland had given them battle at Hastembeck, and had been defeated. In order to save the Electorate of Hanover from entire subjugation, he had made, at Closter Seven, an arrangement with the French generals, which left them at liberty to turn their arms against the Prussian dominions.

That nothing might be wanting to Frederic's distress, he lost his mother just at this time; and he appears to have felt the loss more than was to be expected from the hardness and severity of his character.

37.

The easy reduction of Normandy on the fall of Château Gaillard at a later time proved Richard's foresight; but foresight and sagacity were mingled in him with a brutal violence and a callous indifference to honour. The treaty which interrupted his war with Philip provided that Andelys should not be fortified, and three months after its ratification he was building his "Saucy Castle." "I will take it, were its walls of iron," Philip exclaimed in wrath as he saw it rise. "I would hold it were the walls of butter," was the defiant answer of his foe. He was just as defiant of a "rain of blood," whose fall had scared his courtiers. "Had an angel from heaven bid him abandon his work," says a cool observer, "he would have answered with a curse."

38.

Isaac Bickerstaff, Esquire, Astrologer, was an imaginary person, almost as well known in that age as Mr. Paul Pry or Mr. Samuel Pickwick in ours. Swift had assumed the name of Bickerstaff in a satirical pamphlet against Partridge, the maker of almanacs. Partridge had been fool enough to publish a furious reply. Bickerstaff had rejoined in a second pamphlet still more diverting than the first. All the wits had combined to keep up the joke, and the town was long in convulsions of laughter. Steele determined to employ the name which this controversy had made popular; and, in 1709, it was announced that Isaac Bickerstaff, Esquire, Astrologer, was about to publish a paper called the *Tatler*.

39.

At this moment the wind rushed out of the defile with fearful violence; and, if the travellers had not happily found themselves a little outside of the principal current, they would have been thrown down, and their horses too. At the same time, the snow which covered the valley and the slopes of the mountains was tossed into the air, like the sand of the desert when the storm blows; both sky and land disappeared in the immense whirlwind of snow which eddied round the travellers; suddenly they heard shouts which came from below; one of them looked and saw an old man coming up through the storm.

40.

The Jordan is the river of a desert. Within the narrow range of its bed it produces a rank mass of vegetation, but this luxuriant line of verdure only sets off more completely the contrast of life with death which is its characteristic feature. This singular fate of the Jordan is the direct result of the depression of its channel. The depth of the

valley in the bosom of which it flows prevents its waters from escaping, like those of the Nile, to fertilize anything beyond its own immediate bed; but the tropical temperature to which its whole plain is thus exposed, whilst calling out into almost unnatural vigour whatever vegetation receives the life-giving touch of its waters, withers up every particle of verdure that is found beyond their reach.

41.

Polly and I were very happy and merry together; but her visit came to an end at last. Aunt Maria came to fetch her. She had brought her down when she came, but had only stayed one night. On this occasion she stayed from Saturday to Monday. Aunt Maria never allowed any of the girls to travel alone, and they were never allowed to visit without her at any but relations' houses. One consequence of this was, that when they grew up and were large young women with large noses, they were the most helpless creatures at a railway-station that I ever beheld.

42.

Charlemagne was scarcely interred when the imbecility and the disputes of his descendants began to bring contempt on themselves and destruction on their subjects. The wide dominion of the Franks was severed into a thousand pieces. Nothing more than a nominal dignity was left to the abject heirs of an illustrious name. Fierce invaders, differing from each other in race, language, and religion, flocked, as if by concert, from the farthest corners of the earth, to plunder provinces which the government could no longer defend. In the midst of these sufferings a great internal change passed over the empire. The corruption of death began to ferment into new forms of life. Just here, in the most barren and dreary tract of European history, all feudal privileges, all modern nobility take their source.

43.

ANOTHER kind of sympathy attracted Johnson towards Goldsmith. The young Irishman, known only to the publishers who employed him, had a pledge of immortality in the drawers of his writing-table, where *The Vicar of Wakefield* was laid by, but he had just been arrested for debt at his landlady's request. He called Johnson to his assistance, and the latter, sending forthwith a guinea as a sort of fore-runner, soon arrived himself. He found the guinea changed into a bottle of Madeira wine, which he uncorked while Goldsmith unfolded his manuscript. The critic glanced over the work, ran out and offered it to a publisher, and brought back in exchange sixty pounds, wherewith the writer was able to pay his rent, and, moreover, which was still a greater satisfaction, to read a sharp lecture to his impatient landlady.

44.

THE despatch left it free to Peterborough to join or not to join the expedition as he pleased, and he expressed his wish to act upon it. Many men of no less genius have on decisive occasions over-reached themselves by an exaggerated estimate of their own importance; and it is a hard lesson of life to find how little we are missed. Considering his talent and his services, the English commander may have thought that he should be pressed to stay. But the very contrary happened. Unlike Marlborough, he had never understood that conciliation is among the main duties of a chief. His bitter sarcasms, both in word and writing, had keenly offended those with whom he had acted. Soldiers and civilians all rejoiced to be rid of him. The king above all was well pleased.

45.

HE who reads much, learns much; whatever books he may read, he draws from them some instruction; however

solitary he may be, he finds in them companions who are always interesting. Whoever thinks that that man must be sad in solitude, is greatly mistaken, for he is never less alone than when he is alone. However poor he may seem to the eyes of some, he is really richer than most men. Wherever he may go, and in whatever company he may find himself, he has always something to give out of his treasures of knowledge. Can any one conceive a happier man than he who thus has all his riches within himself?

46

THE winter was gloomy at home as well as abroad. The news constantly arriving from the Crimea told only of devastation caused by foes far more formidable than the Russians—sickness, bad weather, bad management. The Black Sea was swept by terrible storms. The destruction of transport ships laden with winter stores for our men was of incalculable injury to the army. The loss of life among the crews of the vessels was immense. On shore the sufferings of the army were unspeakable. The intensity of the cold was so great, that no one might dare to touch any metal substance in the open air with his bare hand, under penalty of leaving the skin behind him. The hospitals for the sick and wounded at Scutari were in a wretchedly disorganized state.

47.

ABOUT the year 1629, seven or eight persons in Paris, fond of literature, formed themselves into a sort of little club, to meet at one another's houses and discuss literary matters. Their meetings got talked of, and Cardinal Richelieu, then minister and all-powerful, heard of them. He himself had a noble passion for letters and for all fine culture; he was interested by what he heard of the nascent society. It was the beginning of a great century for France —the seventeenth. Men's minds were working; the French language was forming. Richelieu sent to ask the members

of the new society whether they would be willing to become a body with a public character, holding regular meetings. Not without a little hesitation, they consented.

48.

"My friend," said Dupin, in a kind tone, "you are alarming yourself unnecessarily—you are indeed. We mean you no harm whatever. I pledge you the honour of a gentleman, and of a Frenchman, that we intend you no injury. I perfectly well know that you are innocent of the atrocities in the Rue Morgue. It will not do, however, to deny that you are in some measure implicated in them. From what I have already said, you must know that I have had means of information about this matter—means of which you could never have dreamed. Now the thing stands thus. You have done nothing which you could have avoided—nothing, certainly, which renders you culpable. You were not even guilty of robbery, when you might have robbed with impunity. You have nothing to conceal. You have no reason for concealment. On the other hand, you are bound by every principle of honour to confess all you know. An innocent man is now imprisoned, charged with that crime of which you can point out the perpetrator."

49.

The late Duke of Rutland had a favourite retriever, called *Prince*. While the Prince of Wales was on a visit to the Duke and one of his shooting party, the conversation one night turned on this dog, and the Duke said he had not behaved well lately. Next day the Princess came out to luncheon with the shooters, and, approaching the Duke, who was then standing alone, "Well! Duke," she said, "how did the Prince get on to-day?" "Very badly, madam," the Duke replied; "he won't pick up his birds. If he does not behave better after luncheon, I will send him home." The Princess was naturally astonished: but she

made no remark, and went on to luncheon. A little later the Duke was informed that the Prince had been inquired after—not the dog—and so he hastened to make his apologies.

50.

After such an example, none who were conscious of guilt could hope for impunity, and the flight of the wicked, the licentious, and the idle, soon purified the city and territory of Rome. In this time (says the historian) the woods began to rejoice that they were no longer infested with robbers; the oxen began to plough; the pilgrims visited the sanctuaries; the roads and inns were replenished with travellers; trade, plenty, and good faith, were restored in the markets; and a purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway. As soon as the life and property of the subject are secure, the labours and rewards of industry spontaneously revive. Rome was still the metropolis of the Christian world; and the fame and fortunes of the tribune were diffused in every country.

51.

Pray be sure to order your matters so as to spend all the next week with me; as far as I can impartially guess, it will be the last week I am ever likely to have with you; for, if I mistake not very much, I have very little time left in the world. Refuse not, therefore, to help me to pass some of the last hours of my life as cosily as may be in the conversation of one who is not only the nearest, but the dearest, to me of any man in the world. I have a great many things to talk to you which I can talk to no one else about. I therefore desire you again, deny not this to my affection.

52.

They were seated in a small boudoir that adjoined the drawing-room. The wide door was open, and they could hear the pleasant crackling of the first wood fire that was burning in the larger room, though they could not see it. The air without was gloomy and grey, for the late Indian summer was over, and before long the first frosts would come and the first flakes of snow would be driven along the dry and windy streets. It was early in the afternoon, however, and though the light was cold and colourless and hard, there was plenty of it. Without knowing why, the sisters felt very depressed; and neither seemed inclined to break the silence which had settled upon this lonely dwelling.

53.

Confucius, the first remarkable man in China of whom we have authentic accounts, was born about five centuries before the Christian era. At the time of his birth China was divided into several independent states, which harassed each other by petty wars. He endeavoured, but without success, to unite these states in one great empire. He collected the old traditions of the country, and formed of them a theory of religion and government.

Ching-Whang, the founder of the Tsïn dynasty (B.C. 250), was the first who united all the Chinese under one sovereign; and it is probable that the name of China was adopted from that of his family. He is said to have erected the Great Wall, to restrain the incursions of the Tartars, but he was cruel and tyrannical to learned men.

Some centuries after the time of Confucius the Huns began to invade the country (B.C. 200); but at length they were induced to march westwards, where they burst into the Roman Empire, while China remained tranquil. Literature was encouraged and the art of printing was invented.

54.

LORD CHESTERFIELD TO HIS SON.

DEAR BOY,

I am very well pleased with your last letter. The writing was very good, and the promise you make exceedingly fine. You must keep it, for an honest man never breaks his word.

With respect to the contents of your letter, I believe you have had proper assistance; indeed, I do not as yet expect that you can write a letter without help. You ought, however, to try, for nothing is more requisite than to write a good letter. Nothing, in fact, is more easy. Most persons who write ill, do so because they aim at writing better than they can, by which means they acquire a formal and unnatural style. Whereas, to write well, we must write easily and naturally. For instance, if you want to write a letter to me, you should only consider what you would say if you were with me, and then write it in plain terms, just as if you were conversing.—LORD CHESTERFIELD.

55.

MARLBOROUGH'S army was not as numerous as that of the French generals, the Duke of Burgundy and Marshal Vendôme; but, before the battle, he was encouraged by the arrival of Prince Eugène. The Prince had left his army behind, and had arrived in Marlborough's camp attended only by his personal suite. "My men will be encouraged," said Marlborough, "by the presence of so distinguished a general." The French occupied a strong position, defended by sloping ground (use *terrains en pente*). The allies began the attack at three o'clock in the afternoon of the eleventh of July 1708, to the great surprise of the French generals, for the allied army had just marched fifteen miles. Even before his troops were in position (use

ranger en bataille) Marlborough ordered the cavalry to charge in order to prevent the enemy from retiring. In this charge, Prince George of Hanover, afterwards George the Second, distinguished himself.

56.

On March 23 we arrived at Bombay. From here to our immediate destination, Rawal Pindi, is little more than a three days' journey by express train; but we traversed India in leisurely fashion (say: *without hurrying ourselves*), remaining a day or two at Bombay to see the Caves of Elephanta and the Towers of Silence as the guests of the hospitable members of the Yacht Club. We halted another day at Agra to visit the fairest building, perhaps, ever raised by man, the magical Taj; and two or three days more at Lahore, so that it was not until the morning of April 5 that we alighted from our train at Rawal Pindi station, and saw before us to the north the snow-covered ranges of the Himalayas.

Rawal Pindi is one of the most important stations of troops we have in the world, and military works on a vast scale are now in progress there; but I can say nothing about these from personal observation, for my friend, into whose hands I had implicitly confided myself, would allow of no halt (say: *would not let us stop*), so we started on the road to Kashmir at once.

57.

On the fifth of December, 1757, exactly one month after the battle of Rossbach, Frederick the Great with forty thousand men, and Prince Charles at the head of not less than sixty thousand men, met at Leuthen, hard by Breslau. The King, who was in general more inclined to consider the common soldier as a mere machine, resorted on this day to means resembling those which Bonaparte afterwards employed with such signal success for the purpose of stimulating military enthusiasm. The principal officers

were convoked. Frederick addressed them with great force and pathos; and directed them to speak to their men as he had spoken to them.

"That battle," said Napoleon, "was a masterpiece. Of itself it is sufficient to entitle Frederick to a place in the first rank among generals." The victory was complete. Twenty-seven thousand Austrians were killed, wounded, or taken; a hundred guns, four thousand waggons, fell into the hands of the Prussians. Breslau opened its gates; Silesia was reconquered; and Frederick allowed his troops to take some repose in winter quarters, after a campaign which has no parallel in ancient or modern history.—MACAULAY.

58.

HERE the history relates that the knight Martin, thinking that none had seen his base behaviour, washed his hands together with the others, and would have sat him down at the knights' table. But the Cid came up to him and took him by the hand, and said to him, "Thou art not such as to deserve to sit down with these, for they are more honourable than thou or I. I would have thee eat with me; so do thou sit by me." So he seated him at his side at the table. And Martin, with his scanty wit, thought that the Cid did this to honour him more than the others; so that day they dined thus. And the next day the Cid and his company went up against Valencia, and the Moors came forth to fight with them. And Martin came thither right well armed, and was one of the first to strike the Moors; yet at the second charge he turned his horse's head and went off homewards. But the Cid noted well all that he did, and saw that, although he behaved badly, he did better than the first day. Now when the Cid had shut up the Moors within the city, he returned to his lodging. And as he was about to sit down to eat, he bade Martin eat with him from the same dish, for he was better worthy that day than the former one. And the knight gave heed to those words and was ashamed.

59.

As the Count was standing one day in the large and beautiful square of Forli, there came a certain peasant who gave him a basket of fruit. And when the Count said "Stay and sup with me," the peasant answered "My Lord, I wish to go home before it rains, for assuredly there will be much rain to-day." The Count sent for his friend, the learned Guido, and said to him "Dost thou hear what this man says?" Guido answered "He does not know what he is saying; but wait a little." Guido carefully observed the appearance of the sky, and then said it was impossible that it should rain that day. The peasant, however, obstinately maintained what he had said, and when Guido asked him "How dost thou know?" he replied "Because to-day my ass, on coming out of the stable, shook his head; and, whenever he does this, it is a certain sign that the weather will soon change." Then the peasant took leave of the Count, and departed in haste, much fearing the rain, though the sun was shining and the sky without a cloud. And an hour afterwards it began to thunder, and the rain fell in torrents until long after the setting of the sun. But Guido was greatly angered that the donkey of an ignorant peasant should seem wiser than he.

60.

One of these Chinese, a lad of twenty, was an especial favourite. The lady told us that morning that this particular youth had announced that he must leave. She inquired the reason. Were his wages too small? Was he dissatisfied with his work? etc. He was dissatisfied with nothing. The reason was merely that his uncle had arrived in the colony. He must be with his uncle. If his uncle could be taken into the Governor's service he would stay; if not he must go. We all laughed. It seemed so odd to us that a Chinaman should have an uncle, or if he

had, should know it and be proud of him. But why was it odd? or what was there to laugh at? On thinking it over, I concluded that it was an admission that a Chinaman was a human being. Dogs and horses have sires and dams, but they have no uncles. An uncle is a peculiarly human relationship. And the "heathen Chinee" had thus unconsciously proved that he had a soul, and was a man and a brother—a man and a brother—in spite of the Yankees who admit the nigger to be their fellow-citizen, but will not admit the Chinaman.—J. A. FROUDE.

61.

IT was almost night when he started, and it was dark before he got many miles across the moor, for there was no moon, and it was so cloudy that he could not see the stars. He thought he knew the way quite well, but as the track, even in daylight, was in certain places very indistinct, it was no wonder that he strayed from it, and found that he had lost himself. The same moment that he became aware of this, he saw a light away to the left. He turned towards it and found it proceeded from a little hive-like hut, the door of which stood open. When he was within a yard or two of it, he heard a voice say:

"Come in, Colin; I am waiting for you."

Colin obeyed at once, and found the old woman seated with her spindle and distaff, just as he had seen her, when he was a boy, on the moor above his father's cottage.

"How do you do, mother?" he said.

"I am always quite well. Never ask me that question."

"Well, then, I won't any more," returned Colin. "But I thought you lived in Scotland?"

"I don't live anywhere; but those that will do as I tell them will always find me when they want me."

62.

ROBERT MOFFAT, who left England in October 1816, was destined to work in the northern deserts, beyond

the colonial frontier, at Kuruman. He was detained at Capetown, and while there occupied himself with learning Dutch. This knowledge was afterwards useful when he went through the Colony to the interior.

One scene—which is described in his life, written by his son, Mr. John Moffat—is instructive, as giving us additional evidence of the attitude of the Dutch farmers towards the coloured people. He was hospitably entertained in a Boer farmhouse. Supper ended, the table was cleared, the big Bible and psalm-books were brought out, and the family seated.

"But where are the servants?" asked Moffat.

"Servants! What do you mean?"

"I mean the Hottentots, of whom I see so many on your farm."

"Hottentots! Do you mean that? Then let us go to the mountains and call the baboons, if you want a congregation of that sort. Or, stop! I have it—My sons, call the dogs that lie in front of the door—they will do."

Thereupon Moffat selected as his text: "Even the dogs eat of the crumbs . . ." The old Boer was so much moved that he rose, and summoned the despised Hottentots. Afterwards he said to Moffat:

"My friend, you took a hard hammer, and you have broken a hard head."

63.

FRIENDSHIP is the union of two persons in mutual affection and remembrance of one another. The friend can do for his friend what he cannot do for himself. He can give him counsel in time of difficulties; he can teach him "to see himself as others see him"; he can stand by him, when all the world are against him; he can gladden and enlighten him by his presence; he can "divide his sorrows," he can "double his joys"; he can anticipate his wants. . . . According to the common saying, true friends find one another always the same. The greatest good of friendship is not daily intercourse, for circumstances rarely admit of this; but on the great occasions of life, when the advice of a

friend is needed, then the word spoken in season about conduct, about health, about marriage, about business,—the letter written from a distance by a disinterested person who sees with clearer eyes may be of inestimable value. When the heart is failing and despair is setting in, then to hear the voice or grasp the hand of a friend, in a shipwreck, in a defeat, in some other failure or misfortune, may restore the necessary courage and composure to the paralysed and disordered mind, and convert the feeble person into a hero.—B. JOWETT.

64.

THE minute picture of the domestic manners of this age exhibits the result of those extremes of prodigality and avarice which struck observers in that contracted circle which then constituted society. The prodigal dispensations of honours and titles by the King seem at first to have been political; for James was a foreigner, and intended to create a nobility, and also an inferior order, who might feel a personal attachment for the new monarch; but the facility with which titles were acquired was one cause which attracted so many to the metropolis to enjoy their airy honour at the cost of substantial ruin; knighthood had become so common, that we find among its members some of the most infamous and criminal characters of this age.

The sudden wealth which the nation seems to have obtained during this reign of peace showed itself in a display of plate and jewels, in extravagance of dress and all forms of excess; corruption bred corruption. The wealth of the nation was not due to the industry of the many, but to the arts of the money-trader; and the unemployed and idle, whose number increased daily in the capital, were a serious source of danger to the community.

65.

WERE we to estimate the learning of the English by the number of books that are every day published among

them, perhaps no country, not even China itself, could equal them in this particular. I have reckoned not less than twenty-three new books published in one day; which, upon computation, makes eight thousand three hundred and ninety-five in one year. Most of these are not confined to one single science, but embrace the whole circle. History, politics, poetry, mathematics, metaphysics, and the philosophy of nature are all comprised in a manual not larger than that in which our children are taught the letters. If then we suppose the learned of England to read but an eighth part of the works which daily come from the press (and surely none can pretend to learning upon less easy terms) at this rate every scholar will read a thousand books in one year. From such a calculation you may conjecture what an amazing fund of literature a man must be possessed of, who thus reads three new books every day.—GOLDSMITH.

66.

WARREN was early sent to the village school, where he learned his letters on the same bench with the sons of the peasantry: nor did anything in his garb or fare indicate that his life was to take a widely different course from theirs. But the daily sight of the lands which his ancestors had possessed, and which had passed into the hands of strangers, filled his young brain with chimerical projects. He loved to hear stories of the wealth and greatness of his progenitors, of their loyalty, and their valour. On one bright summer day, the boy lay on the bank of the rivulet which flows through the old domain of his house to join the Isis. There rose in his mind a scheme which was never abandoned. He would recover the estate which had belonged to his fathers. He would be Hastings of Daylesford. This purpose, formed in infancy and poverty, grew stronger as his intellect expanded and as his fortune rose. He pursued his plan with that calm but indomitable force

of will which was the most striking trait of his character. And when his long public life had at length closed for ever, it was to Daylesford that he retired to die.

67.

We must be careful to separate the literary from the political character of James I., and the qualities of his mind and temper from the ungracious and neglected manners of his personal character. And if we do not take a more familiar view of the events, the parties, and the genius of the times, the views and conduct of this monarch will still remain imperfectly understood. In the reign of a prince who was no military character, we must busy ourselves at home: the events he regulated may be numerous and even interesting, although not those which make so much noise and take such a large place in the popular pages of history: and these events may escape us in a general historical view. The want of this sort of knowledge has proved to be one great source of the false judgments passed on this monarch. Surely it is not philosophical to judge another age by the circumstances and feelings of our own. There is a chronology of human opinions, and the indiscreet philosopher who fails to pay due attention to it will almost certainly arrive at wrong conclusions because of the anachronism on which his reasoning is based.

68.

Once upon a time there came to the French court an ambassador so brave and so handsome that he won the hearts of all the great ladies of the capital. The queen herself was indiscreet enough to give him certain precious stones of such rarity that, if lost, they could never be replaced. Soon afterwards the ambassador was obliged to return to his own country, far away beyond the sea. The Prime Minister, learning from his spies what the queen had done with the jewels, and knowing that they had been given to her by the king himself, persuaded his royal master to give a ball to his courtiers, and to insist that she

should appear thereat wearing all her richest ornaments. He doubted not that the queen's ruin was now assured, and she herself could think of no means by which she might avoid the shame which threatened her. Four men, however, made up their minds to save her. The minister heard of their departure, and made every effort to prevent them from reaching the ambassador whom they sought. Three of them were disabled by the enemies sent to oppose them. But the fourth, killing or wounding all who attempted to stop him, succeeded in reaching a seaport. He crossed the sea, found the ambassador, and restored the jewels to his queen on the very day of the ball at which she had been commanded to wear them.

69.

JOAN of Arc, third daughter of a poor peasant, was born on the sixth of January 1412. While the other children were working with their father in the fields, or watching his little flock of sheep, she remained at home, sewing or spinning by her mother's side. She learnt neither to read nor to write, but she loved to listen to the stories of holy men and women, which her mother was never tired of telling. She was ten years of age when the infant son of Henry the Fifth of England was crowned at Saint-Denis. More than once during the next few years her native village of Domremy was visited by the troops of one or other of the hostile armies. One summer day, at noon, as she was in her father's garden, she saw a dazzling light, and heard a voice saying:—"Joan, go to the help of the King of France and thou shalt restore to him his kingdom." "Sire," she tremblingly replied, "I am but a poor girl; I cannot ride, nor can I command soldiers." Whereupon the voice, that of St. Michael, bade her seek out a certain captain, who would have her brought to the King. "My name," said she, when she was brought before him, "is Joan the Maid. The King of Heaven sends me to tell you that you shall be crowned in the city of Rheims."

70.

When you think of a great city of the thirteenth or fourteenth century you must remember two things. First, that the streets were mostly very narrow—if you walk down Thames Street and note the streets running north and south, you will be able to understand how narrow the City streets were. Second, that the great houses of the nobles and the rich merchants stood in these narrow streets, shut in on all sides, though they often contained spacious courts and gardens. No attempt was made to group the houses or to arrange them with any view to picturesque effect. It has been the fashion to speak of mediæval London as if it were a city of hovels, grouped together along dark and foul lanes. This was by no means the case. On the contrary, it was a city of splendid palaces and houses, nearly all of which were destroyed by the Great Fire. You have seen how the City was covered with magnificent buildings of monasteries and churches. Do not believe that the nobles and rich merchants who endowed and built these places would be content to live in hovels.

71.

The day before yesterday before dawn I left my quarters here, to which I shall return to-day, and have in the interval witnessed the great battle of Sedan on the first of September. Yesterday morning at five o'clock, after negotiating until one o'clock in the morning with Moltke and the French concerning the impending capitulation, General Reille, whom I know, woke me to tell me that Napoleon wished to speak to me. I rode without washing and without breakfast towards Sedan, found the Emperor waiting in an open carriage with three adjutants and three officers on horseback near by. I dismounted, greeted him just as politely as at the Tuileries, and asked for his instructions. He wished to see the King. I said to him, as was the fact (say: according to the truth) that his Majesty had his quarters three miles away at the place where I am now writing. On Napoleon's asking where he should betake himself, I offered him, as I was

unacquainted with the country, my quarters in Donchery, a little place in the vicinity close by Sedan ; he accepted and drove, escorted by his six Frenchmen, myself, and Carl, who had meanwhile ridden after me, through the bright morning air in our direction.

72.

It had been a very hot day, and I had got a headache and gone to bed. The pain kept me awake a good bit, and when I did get to sleep, I think I slept rather lightly. I was partly awakened by noises which seemed to have been going in my head all night till I could bear them no longer, so I woke up and found that people were shouting outside, and that there was a dreadful smell of burning. I had just got on my dressing-gown when Rupert called to me and said, "Kitty dear, the house is on fire! Just put something round you and come quickly!"

Just outside the door we met cook, looking quite wild, and she said to us, "Where's Master Charles?" I didn't stop to ask her how it was that she didn't know. We both at once looked up at the bedroom window, and there was Baby Charles standing and screaming for help. Before we got to the door he had been seen by others, and two or three men pushed into the house.

73.

Frederick the Great rang the bell one day, and, as nobody appeared, he opened the door of the ante-chamber and found his page sleeping upon a chair. When he was about to wake him he saw a piece of paper covered with writing hanging out of his pocket. This roused the king's curiosity and attention. He pulled it out and found that it was a letter from the page's mother, in which she thanked him for his kind support. Heaven, she said, would certainly reward him if he remained faithful to his Majesty. The king at once fetched a roll of ducats and put them secretly with the letter into the page's pocket. Soon after he rang again and waked the page, who appeared before him. "Thou

hast certainly been asleep," said the king. The boy stammered an excuse, and putting his hand into his pocket, to his great astonishment found the money. He pulled it out, pale and trembling, and unable to speak a word. "What is it?" said the king. "Oh, your Majesty," answered the page, falling upon his knees, "someone desires my ruin, I know nothing about the money!" "Know," said the king, "that when fortune comes, it comes when we sleep. Thou canst send the money to thy mother, and give her the assurance that I will look after both of you."

74.

At a little distance from the town Geraint saw an old palace in ruins, wherein was a hall that was falling to decay. And as he knew not any one in the town, he went towards the old palace; and when he came near he saw but one chamber and a marble bridge leading to it. And upon the bridge he saw sitting a hoary-headed man in tattered garments who asked him wherefore he looked thus thoughtful. "I am thoughtful," answered Geraint, "because I know not where to go to-night." "Wilt thou come this way, sir knight," said the old man, "and thou shalt have of the best that can be procured for thee." So the knight dismounted and they went together to the hall where he beheld an ancient dame, sitting on a cushion, with tattered garments of satin on her; and it seemed to him that he had never seen a woman finer than she must have been when in the fulness of youth. And beside her was a fair maiden like in features to the ancient dame, and like her, meanly clad. "Daughter," said the old man, "attend to this noble knight; first see that his horse be fed, then go to the tower and bring hither the best thou canst find both of food and of liquor."

75.

At the time of Henry the Fourth, King of France, a peasant once rode from his native village to Paris. He had almost reached the gates of the city when he met a gentleman

on horseback. It was the King. His suite had remained behind at some distance. "Where do you come from, my friend? Have you some business in the city?" asked the King. "Yes," answered the peasant, "and I have also come to see our dear King; I have never seen him yet." The King smiled and said: "You should have no difficulty in seeing him to-day." "Yes, but if I only knew how to distinguish him among so many courtiers." "If you see a gentleman riding through the streets of the city and everybody standing uncovered, you may be sure that gentleman is the King." The peasant was now riding through the streets beside the monarch, and when he noticed the people looking at them from every window and the passers-by reverently lifting their hats, he looked at the King in amazement and at last he said: "Sir, either you are the King or I am."

76.

SWIFT, the famous English writer, was not one of the most generous of men, and he once received a good lesson from one of his patron's servants. This servant, a lad of fifteen, brought one day as a present a basket full of fish and fruit to Swift's house. He knocked at the door and Swift himself came to open. The boy, who had often brought him presents from his master but had never received a gratuity said curtly: "Here's a present from my master." Swift not liking the boy's blunt manner answered, "Come here, young man, I'll teach you what you ought to have said. Suppose you are Dean Swift, and I will represent you." Swift took his hat off, made a low bow and said, "My good master has sent you a small present and asks you to be graciously pleased to accept it." "Good," answered the lad, "tell your master I thank him heartily for it, and here is a crown for yourself."

77.

THE noble Pole Kosciusko once wished to send a few bottles of good wine to an aged priest who lived in a distant village. For this good purpose he chose a young man named Zeltner, and gave him his own riding horse for the journey.

On his return the young man told the general that he would never ride his horse again, unless he at the same time gave him his purse. "I do not understand what you mean," said Kosciusko. Zeltner replied, "Whenever a poor man on the high road took off his hat and begged an alms, the horse immediately came to a standstill, and would not stir from the spot until the beggar had received something; and when my money was all gone, the only means by which I could satisfy the horse and get him on was to pretend to give the petitioner a trifle."

78.

The true "brain" of the German army is the General Staff. It is composed of the cleverest officers in the entire army, who undergo training of a special character in the German War Academy. The members of the Staff are not, however, permanent, but are constantly being drawn from, and returned to, the troops. The duties of this council are multifarious. It is primarily responsible for the well-being of the service, both in peace and war. It controls military movements, mobilizes, organizes, and governs; makes plans of war, and fights battles on paper. It not only administers the affairs of the home army, but follows military activities abroad, and knows as much about the defensive position and resources of some nations as they know themselves, and often a good deal more.—W. H. Dawson.

79.

So delightful are books that we must be careful not to forget other duties for them; in cultivating the mind we must not neglect the body. To the lover of literature, exercise often presents itself as an irksome duty. Still, those who do not find time for exercise will have to find time for illness.

Snatches of literature have, indeed, a special and peculiar charm. This is, I believe, partly due to the fact of their being brief. Many readers lose much of the pleasure of reading by forcing themselves to dwell too long continuously on the same subject. In a long railway journey, for instance,

many persons take only a single book. The consequence is that, unless it is a story, after half an hour or an hour they are quite tired of it. Whereas, if they had two, or still better three books, on different subjects and one of them of an amusing character, they would probably find that, by changing as soon as they felt at all weary, they would come back again and again to each with renewed zest, and hour after hour would pass pleasantly away.—LORD AVEBURY.

80.

BUT to little Ida all these stories which the student told her about the flowers seemed very droll, and she thought over them a great deal. The flowers did hang their heads, because they had been dancing all night, and were very tired, and most likely they were ill. Then she took them into the room where a number of toys lay on a pretty little table, and the whole of the table drawer besides was full of beautiful things. Her doll Sophy lay in the doll's bed asleep, and little Ida said to her, "You must really get up, Sophy, and be content to lie in the drawer to-night; the poor flowers are ill, and they must lie in your bed, then perhaps they will get well again." So she took the doll out, who looked quite cross, and said not a single word, for she was angry at being turned out of her bed. Ida placed the flowers in the doll's bed, and drew the blanket over them. Then she told them to lie quite still and be good, while she made some tea for them, so that they might be quite well and able to get up the next morning.

81.

"IN the inn parlour of a little town," said the Moon, "sat a man who was travelling about with a bear. He was eating his supper. The bear was tied up outside against the wall. Poor Bruin! he would do no one any harm, though he looked grim enough. Up in the garret three little children were playing together by the light of my rays; the eldest might be six years old, the youngest not more than two. Listen, somebody was coming upstairs; who

could it be? The door flew open; it was Bruin—great shaggy Bruin. He had got tired of waiting outside in the court, and had found his way to the stairs. I saw it all," said the Moon.

"The children were very much frightened at the great shaggy beast; each of them crept into a corner, but he found them all out and smelt them; but he did not hurt them. 'This must be a great dog,' they said, and began to stroke him. When he laid himself down on the ground, the youngest boy climbed on his back, and hid his head, with its golden curls, in the beast's shaggy fur."

82.

In the reign of Frederick the Great, king of Prussia, there was a mill near Potsdam which obstructed the view from the windows of the palace of Sans Souci. The King sent for the owner of the mill, and asked at what price he would sell it. "At no price," was the reply of the sturdy Prussian; and in a moment of anger the monarch gave orders that the mill should be pulled down. "The King may do this," said the miller, quietly folding his arms; "but there are laws in Prussia, as he will find out." Forthwith he commenced a law-suit against the monarch, the issue of which was that the court gave a decision against His Majesty, compelling him to rebuild the mill, and in addition to pay a large sum of money as compensation for the injury he had done. The King felt mortified at having been beaten by one of his subjects, but had the magnanimity to say to his courtiers: "I am glad to find that there are just laws and upright judges in my kingdom who are bold enough to decide against me when they think I am in the wrong."

83.

The marquis continued throughout the day to expose himself to the repeated assaults of the enemy. He was ever found in the place of greatest danger, and through his bravery a great part of the army and the camp was preserved from destruction. It was a perilous day for the commanders; for, in a retreat of this kind, it is the noblest cavaliers who

most expose themselves, to save their people. The Duke of Medina Celi was struck to the ground, but rescued by his troops. The Count of Tendilla, whose tents were nearest to the city, received several wounds; and various other cavaliers of the most distinguished note were exposed to fearful hazard. The whole day was passed in bloody skirmishings in which the hidalgos and cavaliers of the royal household distinguished themselves by their bravery. At length the encampments being all broken up, and most of the artillery and baggage removed, the bloody height of Albohacen was abandoned, and the neighbourhood of Loxa evacuated. Several tents, a quantity of provisions, and a few pieces of artillery, were left upon the spot, from the want of horses or mules to carry them off.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

84.

EDWARD was laying siege to Calais. The town could expect no assistance from the king of France, and the slow progress of famine at last compelled the defenders to surrender. Edward informed them at first that he would give no quarter, but some time after told them that if six of the chief citizens came to him barefooted, bareheaded and with ropes round their necks, he would hang them, but spare the rest of the inhabitants. One of the most important citizens, Eustace de St. Pierre, with five companions presented themselves before the king offering to die in order to save the lives of their fellow-citizens. Queen Philippa, however, so earnestly prayed the king to spare them that he at length gave way to her entreaties and sent the brave men back to the city.

85.

THE great events which had taken place in India called into existence a new class of Englishmen, to whom

their countrymen gave the name of Nabobs. These persons had generally sprung from families neither ancient nor opulent; they had generally been sent at an early age to the East; and they had there acquired large fortunes, which they had brought back to their native land. It was natural that, not having had much opportunity of mixing with the best society, they should exhibit some of the awkwardness and some of the pomposity of upstarts. It was natural that, during their sojourn in Asia, they should have acquired some tastes and habits surprising, if not disgusting, to persons who never had quitted Europe. It was natural that, having enjoyed great consideration in the East, they should not be disposed to sink into obscurity at home; and, as they had money, and had not birth or high connection, it was natural that they should display a little obtrusively the single advantage which they possessed. Wherever they settled, there was a kind of feud between them and the old nobility and gentry, similar to that which raged in France between the farmer-general and the marquess. This enmity to the aristocracy long continued to distinguish the servants of the Company.—MACAULAY.

86.

"SINCE thou art so dull as to misunderstand me still," quoth Adams, "I will inform thee, the travelling I mean is in books, the only way of travelling by which any knowledge is to be acquired. From them I learn what I asserted just now, that nature generally imprints such a portraiture of the mind in the countenance, that a skilful physiognomist will rarely be deceived. I presume you have never read the story of Socrates to this purpose, and therefore I will tell you: A certain physiognomist asserted of Socrates, that he plainly discovered by his features that he was a rogue in his nature. A character so contrary to the tenour of all this great man's actions, and the generally received opinion concerning him, incensed the boys of Athens, so that they threw stones at the physiognomist, and would have demolished him for his ignorance, had not Socrates himself

prevented them by confessing the truth of his observations, and acknowledging that, though he corrected his disposition by philosophy, he was, indeed, naturally as inclined to vice as had been predicted of him. Now, pray, resolve me,—How should a man know this story if he had not read it?" —FIELDING.

87.

OUR little habitation was situated at the foot of a sloping hill, sheltered with a beautiful underwood behind, and a prattling river before: on one side a meadow, on the other a green. My farm consisted of about twenty acres of excellent land, having given an hundred pounds for my predecessor's good-will. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my little enclosures, the elms and hedge-rows appearing with inexpressible beauty. My house consisted of but one storey, and was covered with thatch, which gave it an air of great snugness; the walls on the inside were nicely whitewashed, and my daughters undertook to adorn them with pictures of their own designing. Though the same room served us for parlour and kitchen, that only made it the warmer. Besides, as it was kept with the utmost neatness, the dishes, plates, and coppers being well scoured, and all disposed in bright rows on the shelves, the eye was agreeably relieved, and did not want richer furniture. There were three other apartments, one for my wife and me, another for our two daughters, within our own, and the third, with two beds, for the rest of the children.— GOLDSMITH.

88.

THE Venetian gondola is as free and graceful in its gliding movement as a serpent. It is twenty or thirty feet long, and is narrow and deep like a canoe; its sharp bow and stern sweep upward from the water like the horns of a crescent, with the abruptness of the curve slightly modified. The bow is ornamented with a steel comb with a battle-axe attachment, which threatens to cut passing boats in two

occasionally, but never does. The gondola is painted black, because, in the zenith of Venetian magnificence, the gondolas became too gorgeous altogether, and the Senate decreed that all such display must cease, and a solemn, unembellished black be substituted. If the truth were known, it would doubtless appear that rich plebeians grew too prominent in their affectation of patrician show on the Grand Canal, and required a wholesome snubbing. Reverence for the hallowed Past and its traditions keeps the dismal fashion in force now that the compulsion exists no longer. So let it remain. It is the colour of mourning. Venice mourns.—MARK TWAIN.

89.

WE are naturally disposed to love what gives us pleasure, and what more pleasing than a beautiful face—when we know no harm of the possessor at least? A little girl loves her bird—Why? Because it lives and feels; because it is helpless and harmless. A toad, likewise, lives and feels, and is equally helpless and harmless, but, though she would not hurt a toad, she cannot love it like the bird, with its graceful form, soft feathers, and bright speaking eyes. If a woman is fair and amiable, she is praised for both qualities, but especially the former, by the bulk of mankind: if, on the other hand, she is disagreeable in person and character, her plainness is commonly inveighed against as her greatest crime, because to common observers it gives the greatest offence; while if she is plain and good, provided she is a person of retiring manners and secluded life, no one ever knows of her goodness, except her immediate connections. Others, on the contrary, are disposed to form unfavourable opinions of her mind and disposition, if it be but to excuse themselves for their instinctive dislike of one so unfavoured by nature; and *vice versâ* with her whose angel form conceals a vicious heart, or sheds a false, deceitful charm over defects and foibles that would not be tolerated in another.—ANNE BRONTË.

90.

Had Elizabeth's opinions been all drawn from her own family, she could not have formed a very pleasing picture of conjugal felicity or domestic comfort. Her father, captivated by youth and beauty, and that appearance of good humour which youth and beauty generally give, had married a woman whose weak understanding and illiberal mind had very early in their marriage put an end to all real affection for her. Respect, esteem, and confidence had vanished for ever; and all his views of domestic happiness were overthrown. But Mr. Bennet was not of a disposition to seek comfort for the disappointment which his own imprudence had brought on in any of those pleasures which too often console the unfortunate for their folly or their vice. He was fond of the country and of books; and from these tastes had arisen his principal enjoyments. To his wife he was very little otherwise indebted than as her ignorance and folly had contributed to his amusement. This is not the sort of happiness which a man would in general wish to owe to his wife; but, where other powers of entertainment are wanting, the true philosopher will derive benefit from such as are given.—Jane Austen.

91.

It happened one day, about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen on the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition. I listened, I looked round me, but I could hear nothing, nor see anything; I went up to a rising ground, to look farther; I went up the shore, and down the shore; but it was all one: I could see no other impression but that one. I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the print of a foot—toes, heel, and every part of a foot. How it came thither I knew not, nor could I in the least imagine; but

after innumerable fluttering thoughts, like a man perfectly confused and out of myself, I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man. Nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes my affrighted imagination represented things to me in, how many wild ideas were found every moment in my fancy, and what strange, unaccountable whimseys came into my thoughts by the way.—DEFOE.

92.

THE chest had been full to the brim, and we spent the whole day and the greater part of the next night in a scrutiny of its contents. There had been nothing like order or arrangement. Everything had been heaped in promiscuously. Having assorted all with care, we found ourselves possessed of even vaster wealth than we had at first supposed. In coin there was rather more than four hundred and fifty thousand dollars, estimating the value of the pieces, as accurately as we could, by the tables of the period. There was not a particle of silver. All was gold of antique date and of great variety —French, Spanish, and German money, with a few English guineas, and some counters, of which we had never seen specimens before. There were several very large and heavy coins, so worn that we could make nothing of their inscriptions. There was no American money. The value of the jewels we found more difficulty in estimating. There were diamonds—some of them exceedingly large and fine—a hundred and ten in all, and not one of them small; eighteen rubies of remarkable brilliancy; three hundred and ten emeralds, all very beautiful; and twenty-one sapphires, with an opal. These stones had all been broken from their settings and thrown loose in the chest. The settings themselves, which we picked out from among the other gold, appeared to have been beaten up with hammers, as if to prevent identification. Besides all this there was a vast quantity of solid gold ornaments; nearly two hundred massive

finger and ear-rings; rich chains—thirty of these, if I remember; eighty-three very large and heavy crucifixes; five gold censers of great value; a prodigious golden punch-bowl, ornamented with richly chased vine-leaves and Bacchanalian figures; with two sword-handles, exquisitely embossed, and many other smaller articles which I cannot recollect.—Poe.

93.

In this estimate of Goethe as a moral being, few people will differ with us, unless it were the religious bigot. And to him we must concede thus much, that Goethe was not that religious creature which by nature he was intended to become. This is to be regretted: Goethe was naturally pious and reverential towards higher natures; and it was in the mere levity or wantonness of youthful power, partly also through that early false bias growing out of the Lisbon earthquake, that he falsified his original destination. Do we mean, then, that a childish error could permanently master his understanding? Not so; *that* would have been corrected with his growing strength. But, having once arisen, it must for a long time have moulded his feelings; *until* corrected, it must have impressed a corresponding false bias upon his practical way of viewing things; and that sort of false bias once established, might long survive a mere error of the understanding. One thing is undeniable; Goethe had so far corrupted and clouded his natural mind, that he did not look up to God, or the system of things beyond the grave, with the interest of reverence and awe, but with the interest of curiosity.—De Quincey.

94.

In that same village and in one of these very houses (which, to tell the precise truth, was sadly time-worn and weather-beaten), there lived many years since, while the country was yet a province of Great Britain, a simple good-natured fellow, of the name of Rip Van Winkle. He was a descendant of the Van Winkles who figured so gallantly in the chivalrous days of Peter Stuyvesant, and accompanied

him to the siege of Fort Christina. He inherited, however, but little of the martial character of his ancestors. I have observed that he was a simple good-natured man: he was, moreover, a kind neighbour, and an obedient hen-pecked husband. Indeed, to the latter circumstance might be owing that meekness of spirit which gained him such universal popularity; for those men are most apt to be obsequious and conciliating abroad, who are under the discipline of shrews at home. Their tempers, doubtless, are rendered pliant and malleable in the fiery furnace of domestic tribulation, and a curtain lecture is worth all the sermons in the world for teaching the virtues of patience and long-suffering. A termagant wife may, therefore, in some respects, be considered a tolerable blessing; and if so, Rip Van Winkle was thrice blessed.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

95.

IN choosing persons for all employments, they have more regard to good morals than to great abilities; for, since government is necessary to mankind, they believe that the common size of human understanding is fitted to some station or other; and that Providence never intended to make the management of public affairs a mystery to be comprehended only by a few persons of sublime genius, of which there seldom are three born in an age: but they suppose truth, justice, temperance, and the like, to be in every man's power; the practice of which virtues, assisted by experience and a good intention, would qualify any man for the service of his country, except where a course of study is required. But they thought the want of moral virtues was so far from being supplied by superior endowments of the mind, that employments could never be put into such dangerous hands as those of persons so qualified; and, at least, that the mistakes committed by ignorance, in a virtuous disposition, would never be of such fatal consequence to the public weal, as the practices of a man whose inclinations led him to be corrupt, and who had great abilities to manage, to multiply, and defend his corruptions.—SWIFT.

96.

THE proposed expedition being one of paramount importance, Mrs. Jarley adjusted Nell's bonnet with her own hands, and, declaring that she certainly did look very pretty, and reflected credit on the establishment, dismissed her with many commendations, and certain needful directions as to the turnings on the right which she was to take, and the turnings on the left which she was to avoid. Thus instructed, Nell had no difficulty in finding out Miss Monflathers's Boarding and Day Establishment, which was a large house, with a high wall, and a large garden-gate with a large brass plate, and a small grating, through which Miss Monflathers's parlour-maid inspected all visitors before admitting them; for nothing in the shape of a man—no, not even a milkman—was suffered without special licence to pass that gate. Even the tax-gatherer, who was stout, and wore spectacles and a broad-brimmed hat, had the taxes handed through the grating. More obdurate than gate of adamant or brass, this gate of Miss Monflathers's frowned on all mankind. The very butcher respected it as a gate of mystery, and left off whistling when he rang the bell.—
DICKENS.

97.

ONE afternoon (I had then been three weeks at Lowood), as I was sitting with a slate in my hand, puzzling over a sum in long division, my eyes, raised in abstraction to the window, caught sight of a figure just passing; I recognized almost instinctively that gaunt outline; and when, two minutes after, all the school, teachers included, rose *en masse*, it was not necessary for me to look up in order to ascertain whose entrance they thus greeted. A long stride measured the school-room, and presently, beside Miss Temple, who herself had risen, stood the same black column which had frowned on me so ominously from the hearth-rug of Gateshead. I now glanced sideways at this piece of architecture. Yes, I was right; it was Mr. Brocklehurst, buttoned

up in a surtout, and looking longer, narrower, and more rigid than ever.

I had my own reasons for being dismayed at this apparition: too well I remembered the perfidious hints given by Mrs. Reed about my disposition, etc., the promise pledged by Mr. Brocklehurst to apprise Miss Temple and the teachers of my vicious nature. All along I had been dreading the fulfilment of this promise, I had been looking out daily for the 'Coming Man,' whose information respecting my past life and conversation was to brand me as a bad child for ever: now there he was! He stood at Miss Temple's side; he was speaking low in her ear: I did not doubt he was making disclosures of my villainy; and I watched her eye with painful anxiety, expecting every moment to see its dark orb turn on me a glance of repugnance and contempt. I listened too; and as I happened to be seated quite at the top of the room, I caught most of what he said: its import relieved me from immediate apprehension.—CHARLOTTE BRONTË.

98.

THE sequestered situation of this church seems always to have made it a favourite haunt of troubled spirits. It stands on a knoll surrounded by locust-trees and lofty elms, from among which its decent whitewashed walls shine modestly forth, like Christian purity beaming through the shades of retirement. A gentle slope descends from it to a silver sheet of water, bordered by high trees, between which peeps may be caught at the blue hills of the Hudson. To look upon its grass-grown yard, where the sunbeams seem to sleep so quietly, one would think that there at least the dead might rest in peace. On one side of the church extends a wide woody dell, along which raves a large brook among broken rocks and trunks of fallen trees. Over a deep black part of the stream, not far from the church, was formerly thrown a wooden bridge; the road that led to it, and the bridge itself, were thickly shaded by overhanging trees, which cast a gloom about it, even in the daytime, but

occasioned a fearful darkness at night. Such was one of the favourite haunts of the headless horseman, and the place where he was most frequently encountered. The tale was told of old Brouwer, a most heretical disbeliever in ghosts, how he met the horseman returning from his foray into Sleepy Hollow, and was obliged to get up behind him; how they galloped over bush and brake, over hill and swamp, until they reached the bridge; when the horseman suddenly turned into a skeleton, threw old Brouwer into the brook, and sprang away over the tree-tops with a clap of thunder.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

99.

I HAVE had occasion to remark, at various periods of my life, that the deaths of those whom we love, and indeed the contemplation of death generally, is (*cæteris paribus*) more affecting in summer than in any other season of the year. And the reasons are these three, I think: first, that the visible heavens in summer appear far higher, more distant, and (if such a solecism may be excused) more infinite; the clouds, by which chiefly the eye expounds the distance of the blue pavilion stretched over our heads, are in summer more voluminous, masser and accumulated in far grander and more towering piles. Secondly, the light and the appearance of the declining and the setting sun are much more fitted to be types and characters of the Infinite. And thirdly (which is the main reason), the exuberant and riotous prodigality of life naturally forces the mind more powerfully upon the antagonist thought of death, and the wintry sterility of the grave. For it may be observed generally, that wherever two thoughts stand related to each other by a law of antagonism, and exist, as it were, by mutual repulsion, they are apt to suggest each other. On these accounts it is that I find it impossible to banish the thought of death when I am walking alone in the endless days of summer; and any particular death, if not more affecting, at least haunts my mind more obstinately and besiegingly in that season.—DE QUINCEY.

100.

It was indeed some time before Lovel could, through the thick atmosphere, perceive in what sort of den his friend had constructed his retreat. It was a lofty room of middling size, obscurely lighted by high narrow latticed windows. One end was entirely occupied by book-shelves, greatly too limited in space for the number of volumes placed upon them, which were, therefore, drawn up in ranks of two or three files deep, while numberless others littered the floor and the tables, amid a chaos of maps, engravings, scraps of parchment, bundles of papers, pieces of old armour, swords, dirks, helmets, and Highland targets. Behind Mr. Oldbuck's seat (which was an ancient leather-covered easy-chair, worn smooth by constant use) was a huge oaken cabinet, decorated at each corner with Dutch cherubs, having their little duck-wings displayed, and great jolter-headed visages placed between them. The top of this cabinet was covered with busts, and Roman lamps and pateræ, intermingled with one or two bronze figures. The walls of the apartment were partly clothed with grim old tapestry, representing the memorable story of Sir Gawaine's wedding, in which full justice was done to the ugliness of the Lothely Lady; although, to judge from his own looks, the gentle knight had less reason to be disgusted with the match on account of disparity of outward favour, than the romancer has given us to understand. The rest of the room was panelled, or wainscoted, with black oak, against which hung two or three portraits in armour, being characters in Scottish history, favourites of Mr. Oldbuck, and as many in tie-wigs and laced coats, staring representatives of his own ancestors. A large old-fashioned oaken table was covered with a profusion of papers, parchments, books, and nondescript trinkets and gewgaws, which seemed to have little to recommend them besides rust and the antiquity which it indicates. In the midst of this wreck of ancient books and utensils, with a gravity equal to Marius among the ruins of Carthage, sat a large black cat, which, to a superstitious eye, might have presented the *genius loci*, tutelar demon of the apartment. The floor, as well as the table and chairs, was overflowed by

the same *mare magnum* of miscellaneous trumpery, where it would have been as impossible to find any individual article wanted, as to put it to any use when discovered.—SCOTT.

101.

MAGGIE'S intentions, as usual, were on a larger scale than Tom had imagined. The resolution that gathered in her mind, after Tom and Lucy had walked away, was not so simple as that of going home. No! she would run away and go to the gipsies, and Tom should never see her any more. That was by no means a new idea to Maggie; she had been so often told she was like a gipsy, and "half-wild," that, when she was miserable, it seemed to her the only way of escaping opprobrium, and being entirely in harmony with circumstances would be to live in a little brown tent on the commons; the gipsies, she considered, would gladly receive her, and pay her much respect on account of her superior knowledge. She had once mentioned her views on this point to Tom, and suggested that he should stain his face brown, and they should run away together; but Tom rejected the scheme with contempt, observing that gipsies were thieves, and hardly got anything to eat, and had nothing to drive but a donkey. To-day, however, Maggie thought her misery had reached a pitch at which gipsydom was her only refuge, and she rose from her seat on the roots of the tree with the sense that this was a great crisis in her life; she would run straight away till she came to Dunlow Common, where there would certainly be gipsies; and cruel Tom, and the rest of her relations who found fault with her, should never see her any more. She thought of her father as she ran along, but she reconciled herself to the idea of parting with him, by determining that she would secretly send him a letter by a small gipsy, who would run away without telling where she was, and just let him know that she was well and happy, and always loved him very much.—GEORGE ELIOT.

102.

Mr. Francis Darwin, in a lecture on "Some hardships in the life of plants," impressed upon his audience the intimate relation between the lives of animals and those of plants. The struggle for existence is equally keen in both sections of the organic world, and Mr. Darwin, by pointing out the apparent intelligence with which the roots of a tree will travel sometimes for long distances in search of water, and the way in which they adapt themselves to their surroundings, did but call attention to one of the multitudinous interesting facts with which the student of vegetable physiology is familiar. The higher plants indeed possess organs as perfectly adapted to their special ends as those of animals, and there are even actions parallel to some in the life of man. There are not wanting those who would sweep away the distinction which has been drawn between the living things of the organic world and the dead matter of the mineral kingdom; nor even those who say that the growth of the child and the development of its mind are but movements of the molecules and atoms caused by the forces which make a candle burn or a crystal of alum grow. We are therefore glad to find a son of our great philosopher, trained from his youth in the habit of exact and minute observation, laying stress on the life which is contained in a plant.

It is a strange and pregnant fact, that the simplest plants differ from the simplest animals, and that there are many organisms which cannot be placed in either group. Nevertheless, it is rather strange to find the word "hardship" applied to any obstacle to the growth of a plant. The word almost implies a belief, not only in the existence of life, but even of a power to feel, and to compare the circumstances of to-day with those of yesterday, or of an ideal day to come. Mr. Darwin did not venture into such dangerous metaphysical depths. He did not need speculate upon the mental feelings of the orange blossom in a bridal wreath, or the sprig of holly in a Christmas pudding. Science, hard matter-of-fact deductions drawn from the results of actual observations, supply poetry enough, and open up a wide and well-paved road into the wonderland of Nature. When we understand

what molecular and atomic forces really are, when we have solved all the hard riddles in the broad realms of chemistry and physics, then, and not till then, shall we be fit even to start on our quest after the deepest mystery of life.—DAILY NEWS.

103.

MANY years ago I was thrown by accident amongst a certain society of Englishmen, who, when they were all together, never talked about anything worth talking about. Their general conversations were absolutely empty and null, and I concluded, as young men so easily conclude, that those twenty or thirty gentlemen had not half-a-dozen ideas amongst them. A little reflection might have reminded me that my own talk was no better than theirs, and consequently that there might be others in the company who also knew more and thought more than they expressed. I found out by accident, after a while, that some of these men had more than common culture in various directions; one or two had travelled far, and brought home the results of much observation; one or two had read largely, and with profit; more than one had studied a science; five or six had seen a great deal of the world. It was a youthful mistake to conclude that, because their general conversation was very dull, the men were dull individually. The general conversations of English society *are* dull; it is a national characteristic. But the men themselves are individually often very well informed, and quite capable of imparting their information to a single interested listener. The art is to be that listener. Englishmen have the greatest dread of producing themselves in the semi-publicity of a general conversation, because they fear that their special topics may not be cared for by some of the persons present; but if you can get one of them into a quiet corner by himself, and humour his shyness with sufficient delicacy and tact, he will disburden his mind at last, and experience a relief in so doing.—HAMERTON.

104.

THE building which was still called Marney Abbey, though remote from the site of the ancient monastery, was an extensive structure raised at the latter end of the reign of James the First, and in the stately and picturesque style of that age. Placed on a noble elevation in the centre of an extensive and well-wooded park, it presented a front with two projecting wings of equal dimensions with the centre, so that the form of the building was that of a quadrangle, less one of its sides. Its ancient lattices had been removed, and the present windows, though convenient, accorded little with the structure; the old entrance door in the centre of the building, however, still remained, a wondrous specimen of fantastic carving: Ionic columns of black oak, with a profusion of fruits and flowers, and heads of stags and sylvans. The whole of the building was crowned with a considerable pediment of what seemed at the first glance fanciful open work, but which, examined more nearly, offered in gigantic letters the motto of the house of Marney. The portal opened to a hall, such as is now rarely found, with the daïs, the screen, the gallery, and the buttery-hatch all perfect, and all of carved black oak. Modern luxury, and the refined taste of the lady of the late lord, had made Marney Abbey as remarkable for its comfort and pleasantness of accommodation as for its ancient state and splendour. The apartments were in general furnished with all the cheerful ease and brilliancy of the modern mansion of a noble, but the grand gallery of the seventeenth century was still preserved, and was used on great occasions as the chief reception-room. You ascended the principal staircase to reach it through a long corridor. It occupied the whole length of one of the wings, was one hundred feet long, and forty-five feet broad, its walls hung with a collection of choice pictures rich in history; while the Axminster carpets, the cabinets, carved tables, and variety of easy-chairs, ingeniously grouped, imparted even to this palatial chamber a lively and habitable air.—BEACONSFIELD.

105.

Addison was undoubtedly one of the most popular men of his time; and much of his popularity he owed, we believe, to that very timidity which his friends lamented. That timidity often prevented him from exhibiting his talents to the best advantage. But it propitiated Nemesis. It averted that envy which would otherwise have been excited by fame so splendid, and by so rapid an elevation. No man is so great a favourite with the public as he who is at once an object of admiration, of respect, and of pity, and such were the feelings which Addison inspired. Those who enjoyed the privilege of hearing his familiar conversation, declared with one voice that it was superior even to his writings. The brilliant Mary Montague said, that she had known all the wits, and that Addison was the best company in the world. The malignant Pope was forced to own, that there was a charm in Addison's talk which could be found nowhere else. Swift, when burning with animosity against the Whigs, could not but confess to Stella that, after all, he had never known any associate so agreeable as Addison. Steele, an excellent judge of lively conversation, said, that the conversation of Addison was at once the most polite, and the most mirthful, that could be imagined; that it was Terence and Catullus in one, heightened by an exquisite something which was neither Terence nor Catullus, but Addison alone. Young, an excellent judge of serious conversation, said, that when Addison was at his ease, he went on in a noble strain of thought and language, so as to chain the attention of every hearer.—Macaulay.

106.

It did not surprise me, therefore, that we should find the large room in which we supped crowded with naval men; but I remember, that what did cause me some astonishment, was to observe that all these sailors, who had served under the most varying conditions in all quarters of the globe, from

the Baltic to the East Indies, should have been moulded into so uniform a type, that they were more like each other than brother is commonly to brother. The rules of the service insured that every face should be clean-shaven, every head powdered, and every neck covered by a little queue of natural hair tied with a black silk ribbon. Biting winds and tropical suns had combined to darken them, whilst the habit of command and the menace of ever-recurring dangers had stamped them all with the same expression of authority and of alertness. There were some jovial faces amongst them, but the older officers, with their deep-lined cheeks and their masterful noses, were, for the most part, as austere as so many weather-beaten ascetics from the desert. Lonely watches, and a discipline which cut them off from all companionship, had left their mark upon those Red Indian faces. For my part, I could hardly eat my supper for watching them. Young as I was, I knew that, if there were any freedom left in Europe, it was to these men that we owed it; and I seemed to read upon their grim, harsh features the record of that long ten years of struggle which had swept the tricolour from the seas.—CONAN DOYLE.

107.

To Berlin he was invited by a series of letters, couched in terms of the most enthusiastic friendship and admiration. For once the rigid parsimony of Frederic seemed to have relaxed. Orders, honourable offices, a liberal pension, a well-served table, stately apartments under a royal roof, were offered in return for the pleasure and honour which were expected from the society of the first wit of the age. A thousand louis were remitted for the charges of the journey. No ambassador setting out from Berlin for a court of the first rank had ever been more amply supplied. But Voltaire was not satisfied. At a later period, when he possessed an ample fortune, he was one of the most liberal of men; but, till his means had become equal to his wishes, his greediness for lucre was unrestrained either by justice or

by shame. He had the effrontery to ask for a thousand louis more, in order to enable him to bring his niece, Madame Denis, the ugliest of coquettes, in his company. The indelicate rapacity of the poet produced its natural effect on the severe and frugal king. The answer was a dry refusal. "I did not," said his Majesty, "solicit the honour of the lady's society." On this, Voltaire went off into a paroxysm of childish rage. "Was there ever such avarice? He has hundreds of tubs full of dollars in his vaults, and haggles with me about a poor thousand louis." It seemed that the negotiations would be broken off; but Frederic, with great dexterity, affected indifference, and seemed inclined to transfer his idolatry to Baculard d'Arnaud. His Majesty even wrote some bad verses, of which the sense was, that Voltaire was a setting sun, and that Arnaud was rising. Good-natured friends soon carried the lines to Voltaire. He was in his bed. He jumped out in his shirt, danced about the room with rage, and sent for his passport and his post-horses. It was not difficult to foresee the end of a connection which had such a beginning.—MACAULAY.

108.

IT is a sad sight to see a fine ship beyond control. It is like seeing one one loves gone mad. Sad under any circumstances, how terrible it is when she is bearing on with her, in her mad Bacchante's dance, a freight of living human creatures to untimely destruction. As each terrible feature and circumstance of the catastrophe became more apparent to the lookers on, the excitement became more intense. Forward, and in the waist, there was a considerable body of seamen clustered about under the bulwarks, some half-stripped; in front of the cuddy door, between the poop and the mainmast, about forty soldiers were drawn up, with whom were three officers, to be distinguished by their blue coats and swords. On the quarter-deck were seven or eight women, two apparently ladies, one of whom carried a baby. A well-dressed man, evidently the captain, was with them; but the cynosure of all eyes was a tall man in white trousers,

at once and correctly judged to be the mate, who carried in his arms a little girl. The ship was going straight upon the rock, now only marked as a whiter spot upon the whitened sea, and she was fearfully near it, rolling and pitching, turning her head hither and thither, fighting for her life. She had taken comparatively little water on board as yet; but now a great sea struck her forward, and she swung with her bow towards the rock, from which she was distant not a hundred yards. The end was coming. Charles saw the mate slip off his coat, and take the little girl again. He saw the lady with the baby rise very quietly and look forward; he saw the sailors climbing on the bulwarks; he saw the soldiers standing steady in two scarlet lines across the deck; he saw the officers wave their hands to one another; and then he hid his face in his hands, and sobbed as if his heart would break.—HENRY KINGSLEY.

109.

"MY LORDS AND GENTLEMEN:

"At the close of a session during which there has been disturbance and conflict in Europe, I am glad to be able to inform you that the cordiality of my relations with foreign Powers remains unchanged.

"The united influence of the six Powers, signatories to the Treaty of Paris, was earnestly exerted early in the year to dissuade the King of Greece from the war upon which he unhappily desired to enter. Though they failed in this endeavour, they were able to bring about an early suspension of hostilities between the two belligerents, and to open negotiations for peace. These proceedings have been protracted, and a formal treaty has not yet been signed. But there is good ground for believing that all the more important matters in controversy have been adjusted, and that, in return for an adequate indemnity, the territory conquered by Turkey will, with a slight modification of frontier, be restored to Greece.

"I have given notice to the King of the Belgians and the German Emperor to terminate the Treaties of Commerce of

1862 and 1865, by which I am prevented from making with my colonies such fiscal arrangements within my Empire as seem to me expedient.

"In consequence of the infraction by the Chinese Government of certain stipulations of the Convention of 1894, a fresh Convention has been concluded, establishing a frontier between Burmah and China more advantageous to my Empire, and opening the West River in China to European commerce.

"I have concluded a Treaty of Commerce and Friendship with Menelik, the Emperor of Abyssinia.

"The presence of the Representatives of the Colonies and of the Indian Empire at the ceremonies held in celebration of the sixtieth year of my reign has contributed to strengthen the bond of union between all parts of my Empire, and an additional proof of the attachment of the Colonies to the mother country has been furnished by the fiscal legislation of Canada, and by the contribution which the Cape Colony, following the example of Australasia, has offered to our naval defence.

"The famine which, to my profound grief, has prevailed throughout large portions of my Indian dominions since the autumn of last year, has taxed severely the resources of that country. I gladly acknowledge the energy and self-sacrifice of my officers of all ranks, both Europeans and natives, and of many private persons, who, with untiring zeal, and with an anxious desire to avoid offence to native feeling, have laboured to save life and to relieve suffering. An appeal to the sympathy of my subjects in all parts of my Empire has been responded to in a most generous manner; and I rejoice to learn that, owing to a satisfactory rainfall, there is now every prospect that the area of distress will be very greatly diminished.

"The plague, which caused a large number of deaths during the earlier part of the year, has now almost disappeared. This improvement is mainly due to the energetic and judicious steps which were taken by the Local Governments to prevent it from spreading. Every precaution will be adopted in view of the possibility of its recurrence, but at present there is a steady decrease both in its pre-

valence and in its fatal effects."—THE QUEEN'S SPEECH, Aug. 6, 1897.

110.

MR. CAMPBELL himself, who performs very well on the violin, has an invincible antipathy to the sound of the Highland bagpipe, which sings in the nose with a most alarming twang, and, indeed, is quite intolerable to ears of common sensibility, when aggravated by the echo of a vaulted hall; he therefore begged the piper would have some mercy on him, and dispense with this part of the morning service. A consultation of the clan being held on this occasion, it was unanimously agreed that the laird's request could not be granted, without a dangerous encroachment on the customs of the family. The piper declared he could not give up for a moment the privilege he derived from his ancestors; nor would the laird's relations forego an entertainment which they valued above all others. There was no remedy; Mr. Campbell, being obliged to acquiesce, is fain to stop his ears with cotton, to fortify his head with three or four night-caps, and every morning retire into the penetralia of his habitation, in order to avoid this diurnal annoyance. When the music ceases, he produces himself at an open window, that looks into the court-yard, which is by this time filled with a crowd of his vassals and dependents, who worship his first appearance, by uncovering their heads, and bowing to the earth with the most humble prostration. As all these people have something to communicate in the way of proposal, complaint, or petition, they wait patiently till the laird comes forth, and, following him in his walks, are favoured each with a short audience in his turn. Two days ago he despatched above a hundred different solicitors, in walking with us to the house of a neighbouring gentleman, where we dined by invitation. Our landlord's housekeeping is equally rough and hospitable, and savours much of the simplicity of ancient times. The great hall, paved with flat stones, is about forty-five feet by twenty-two, and serves not only for a dining-room, but also for a bed-chamber to gentlemen dependents and hangers-on of the family. At night

half-a-dozen occasional beds are ranged on each side along the wall. These are made of fresh heath, pulled up by the roots, and disposed in such a manner as to make a very agreeable couch, where they lie without any other covering than the plaid. My uncle and I were indulged with separate chambers and down beds, which we begged to exchange for a layer of heath; and, indeed, I never slept so much to my satisfaction. It was not only soft and elastic, but the plant, being in flower, diffused an agreeable fragrance, which is wonderfully refreshing and restorative.—SMOLLETT.

111.

WHEN my uncle Toby had turned everything into money, and settled all accounts betwixt the agent of the regiment and Le Fevre, and betwixt Le Fevre and all mankind, there remained nothing more in my uncle Toby's hands than an old regimental coat and sword; so that my uncle Toby found little or no opposition from the world in taking administration. The coat my uncle Toby gave the Corporal. "Wear it, Trim," said my uncle Toby, "as long as it will hold together, for the sake of the poor Lieutenant. And this," said my uncle Toby, taking up the sword in his hand, and drawing it out of the scabbard as he spoke, "and this, Le Fevre, I'll save for thee; 'tis all the fortune," continued my uncle Toby, hanging it up upon a crook, and pointing to it, "'tis all the fortune, my dear Le Fevre, which God has left thee; but if He has given thee a heart to fight thy way with it in the world, and thou dost it like a man of honour,—'tis enough for us."

As soon as my uncle Toby had laid a foundation, and taught him to inscribe a regular polygon in a circle, he sent him to a public school, where, excepting Whitsuntide and Christmas, at which times the Corporal was punctually despatched for him, he remained to the spring of the year seventeen; when the stories of the Emperor's sending his army into Hungary against the Turks, kindling a spark of fire in his bosom, he left his Greek and Latin without leave, and, throwing himself upon his knees before my uncle Toby,

begged his father's sword, and my uncle Toby's leave along with it, to go and try his fortune under Eugene. Twice did my uncle Toby forget his wound and cry out, "Le Fevre, I will go with thee, and thou shalt fight beside me!" and twice he laid his hand upon his groin, and hung down his head in sorrow and desolation.

My uncle Toby took down the sword from the crook, where it had hung untouched ever since the Lieutenant's death, and delivered it to the Corporal to brighten up; and, having detained Le Fevre a single fortnight to equip him and contract for his passage to Leghorn, he put the sword into his hand. "If thou art brave, Le Fevre," said my uncle Toby, "this will not fail thee; but Fortune," said he (musing a little), "Fortune may; and if she does," added my uncle Toby, embracing him, "come back again to me, Le Fevre, and we will shape thee another course."—STERNE.

112.

THE whole brigade scarcely made one effective regiment according to the numbers of continental armies; yet it was more than we could spare. As they rushed towards the front, the Russians opened on them, from the guns in the redoubt on the right, with volleys of musketry and rifles. They swept proudly past, glittering in the morning sun in all the splendour of war. We could scarcely believe the evidence of our senses! Surely that handful of men are not going to charge an army in position? Alas, it was but too true. Their desperate valour knew no bounds, and far indeed was it removed from its so-called better part—discretion. They advanced in two lines, quickening their pace as they closed towards the enemy. A more fearful spectacle was never witnessed than by those who, without power to aid, beheld their heroic countrymen rushing into the arms of death. At the distance of one thousand two hundred yards, the whole line of the enemy belched forth, from thirty iron mouths, a flood of smoke and flame, through which hissed the deadly balls. Their flight was marked by instant

gaps in our ranks, by steeds flying wounded or riderless across the plain.

The first line is broken; it is joined by the second; they never halt or check their speed an instant. With diminished ranks, thinned by those thirty guns, which the Russians had laid with the most deadly accuracy, with a halo of flashing steel above their heads, and with a cheer that was many a noble fellow's death-cry, they flew into the smoke of the batteries; but, ere they were lost from view, the plain was strewed with their bodies and with the carcases of horses. They were exposed to an oblique fire from the batteries on the hills on both sides, as well as to a direct fire of musketry. Through the clouds of smoke we could see their sabres flashing as they rode up to the guns and dashed between them, cutting down the gunners as they stood . . . . . To our delight we saw them returning after breaking through a column of Russian infantry, and scattering them like chaff, when the flank fire of the battery on the hill swept them down, scattered and broken as they were. Wounded men and dismounted troopers, flying towards us, told us the sad tale. Demi-gods could not have done what they had failed to do.—W. H. RUSSELL.

113.

A LITTLE before twilight, one Christmas Eve, Gabriel shouldered his spade, lighted his lantern, and betook himself towards the old churchyard; for he had got a grave to finish by next morning, and, feeling very low, he thought it might raise his spirits, perhaps, if he went on with his work at once. As he went his way, up the ancient street, he saw the cheerful light of the blazing fires gleam through the old casements, and heard the loud laugh and the cheerful shouts of those who were assembled around them; he marked the bustling preparations for next day's cheer, and smelt the numerous savoury odours consequent thereupon, as they steamed up from the kitchen windows in clouds. All this was gall and wormwood to the heart of Gabriel Grub; and when groups of children bounded out of the houses, tripped

across the road, and were met, before they could knock at the opposite door, by half-a-dozen curly-headed little rascals who crowded round them as they flocked up-stairs to spend the evening in their Christmas games, Gabriel smiled grimly, and clutched the handle of his spade with a firmer grasp, as he thought of measles, scarlet-fever, thrush, whooping-cough, and a good many other sources of consolation besides.

In this happy frame of mind, Gabriel strode along, returning a short, sullen growl to the good-humoured greetings of such of his neighbours as now and then passed him, until he turned into the dark lane which led to the churchyard. Now, Gabriel had been looking forward to reaching the dark lane, because it was, generally speaking, a nice, gloomy, mournful place into which the townspeople did not much care to go, except in broad daylight, and when the sun was shining; consequently, he was not a little indignant to hear a young urchin roaring out some jolly song about a merry Christmas, in this very sanctuary, which had been called Coffin Lane ever since the days of the old abbey, and the time of the shaven-headed monks. As Gabriel walked on, and the voice drew nearer, he found it proceeded from a small boy, who was hurrying along to join one of the little parties in the old street, and who, partly to keep himself company, and partly to prepare himself for the occasion, was shouting out the song at the highest pitch of his lungs. So Gabriel waited until the boy came up, and then dodged him into a corner, and rapped him over the head with his lantern five or six times, to teach him to modulate his voice. And as the boy hurried away with his hand to his head, singing quite a different sort of tune, Gabriel Grub chuckled very heartily to himself, and entered the churchyard, locking the gate behind him.—DICKENS.

114.

THE picture of human life in the market-place, though its general tint was the sad grey, brown, or black of the English emigrants, was yet enlivened by some diversity of hue. A

party of Indians, in their savage finery of curiously-embroidered deer-skin robes, wampum-belts, red and yellow ochre and feathers, and armed with the bow and arrow and stone-headed spear, stood apart, with countenances of inflexible gravity, beyond what even the Puritan aspect could attain. Nor, wild as were these painted barbarians, were they the wildest feature of the scene. This distinction could more justly be claimed by some mariners—a part of the crew of the vessel from the Spanish Main—who had come ashore to see the humours of Election Day. They were rough-looking desperadoes with sun-blackened faces, and an immensity of beard; their wide, short trousers were confined about the waist by belts, often clasped with a rough plate of gold, and sustaining always a long knife, and in some instances a sword. From beneath their broad-brimmed hats of palm-leaf gleamed eyes which, even in good-nature and merriment, had a kind of animal ferocity. They transgressed without fear or scruple the rules of behaviour that were binding on all others, smoking tobacco under the beadle's very nose, although each whiff would have cost a townsman a shilling, and quaffing at their pleasure draughts of wine or aqua-vitæ from pocket-flasks, which they freely tendered to the gaping crowd around them. It remarkably characterized the incomplete morality of the age, rigid as we call it, that a licence was allowed the seafaring class, not merely for their freaks on shore, but for far more desperate deeds on their proper element. The sailor of that day would go near to be arraigned as a pirate in our own. There could be little doubt, for instance, that this very ship's crew, though no unfavourable specimens of the nautical brotherhood, had been guilty, as we should phrase it, of depredations on the Spanish commerce, such as would have perilled all their necks in a modern court of justice.

But the sea, in those old times, heaved, swelled, and foamed, very much at its own will, or subject only to the tempestuous wind, with hardly any attempts at regulation by human law. The buccaneer on the wave might relinquish his calling, and become at once, if he chose, a man of probity and piety on land; nor, even in the full career of his reckless life, was he regarded as a personage with whom it

was disreputable to traffic, or casually associate. Thus, the Puritan elders, in their black cloaks, starched bands, and steeple-crowned hats, smiled not unbenignantly at the clamour and rude deportment of these jolly seafaring men; and it excited neither surprise nor animadversion, when so reputable a citizen as old Roger Chillingworth, the physician, was seen to enter the market-place, in close and familiar talk with the commander of the questionable vessel.—HAWTHORNE.

115.

ON the evening of the autumn day that had witnessed the martyrdom of the two men of the Quaker persuasion, a Puritan settler was returning from the metropolis to the neighbouring country town in which he resided. The air was cool, the sky clear, and the lingering twilight was made brighter by the rays of the young moon, which had now nearly reached the verge of the horizon. The traveller, a man of middle age, wrapped in a grey frieze cloak, quickened his pace when he had reached the outskirts of the town, for a gloomy extent of nearly four miles lay between him and his home. The low, straw-thatched houses were scattered at considerable intervals along the road, and, the country having been settled but about thirty years, the tracts of original forest still bore no small proportion to the cultivated ground. The autumn wind wandered among the branches, whirling away the leaves from all except the pine trees, and moaning as if it lamented the desolation of which it was the instrument. The road had penetrated the mass of woods that lay nearest to the town, and was just emerging into an open space, when the traveller's ears were saluted by a sound more mournful than even that of the wind. It was like the wailing of some one in distress, and it seemed to proceed from beneath a tall and lonely fir-tree, in the centre of a cleared, but unenclosed and uncultivated, field. The Puritan could not but remember that this was the very spot which had been made accursed a few hours before by the execution of the Quakers, whose bodies had been thrown together into one hasty grave beneath the tree on which they suffered. He

struggled, however, against the superstitious fears which belonged to the age, and compelled himself to pause and listen.—HAWTHORNE.

116.

THE object of what we commonly call education—that education in which man intervenes, and which I shall distinguish as artificial education—is to . . . prepare the child to receive Nature's education . . . and to understand the preliminary symptoms of her displeasure, without waiting for the box on the ear. . . . And a liberal education is an artificial education which has not only prepared a man to escape the great evils of disobedience to natural laws, but trained him to appreciate and to seize upon the rewards, which Nature scatters with as free a hand as her penalties.

That man, I think, has had a liberal education, who has been so trained in his youth, that his body is the ready servant of his will, and does with ease and pleasure all the work that, as a mechanism, it is capable of; whose intellect is a clear, cold, logic engine, with all its parts of equal strength, and in smooth working order; ready, like a steam-engine, to be turned to any kind of work, and spin the gossamers as well as forge the anchors of the mind; whose mind is stored with a knowledge of the great and fundamental truths of Nature and of the laws of her operations; one who, no stunted ascetic, is full of life and fire, but whose passions are trained to come to heel by a vigorous will, the servant of a tender conscience; who has learned to love all beauty, whether of Nature or of art, to hate all vileness, and to respect others as himself.

Such a one, and no other, I conceive, has had a liberal education; for he is, as completely as a man can be, in harmony with Nature. He will make the best of her, and she of him. They will get on together rarely; she as his ever beneficent mother; he as her mouthpiece, her conscious self, her minister and interpreter.—HUXLEY.

117.

THE most picturesque of the modern biographies of Columbus, that by Lamartine, pictures him drawing his charts and struck by an immense void in the centre of the Atlantic. The earth seemed to lack the counterpoise of a continent. Following the Arabian geographers, he was convinced that the earth was a globe, round which it was possible to sail, and he believed that he could find a more direct way to the Indies by going straight before him to the west. He supposed this globe less vast than it is, and imagined the extent of sea to be traversed in order to reach the unknown lands beyond India less great than navigators thought it. The existence of these lands seemed to him confirmed by the evidence of those pilots who had sailed furthest beyond the Azores. Some had seen floating on the waves branches of trees unknown in the west; others, pieces of shaped wood, which had not been cut by tools of iron.

118.

ON quitting the Beauchamp Tower, Feckenham proceeded to Jane's prison. He found her on her knees, but she immediately arose.

"Is it time?" she asked.

"It is, madam, to repent," replied Feckenham sternly. "A few minutes are all that now remain to you of life. At this moment, perhaps, your husband is called before his Eternal Judge. There is yet time. Do not perish like him in your sins."

"Heaven have mercy upon him!" cried Jane, falling on her knees. And notwithstanding the importunities of the confessor, she continued in fervent prayer, till the appearance of Sir Thomas Brydges. She instantly understood why he came, and, rising, prepared for departure. Almost blinded by tears, Angela rendered her the last services she required. This done, the lieutenant, who was

likewise greatly affected, begged some slight remembrance of her.

"I have nothing to give you but this book of prayers, sir," she answered, "but you shall have that when I have done with it, and may it profit you."

"You will receive it only to cast it into the flames, my son," remarked Feckenham.

"On the contrary, I shall treasure it like a priceless gem," replied Brydges.

119.

I THINK no epoch of history has seen, in any spot on the globe, so large a number of men so passionately devoted to the public good, so honestly forgetful of themselves, so absorbed in the contemplation of the common interest, so resolved to risk all they cherished in life to secure it. This it is which gave to the opening of the year 1789 an incomparable grandeur. This was the general source of passion, courage, patriotism, from which all the great deeds of the Revolution took their rise. The scene was a short one, but it will never depart from the memory of mankind. The distance from which we look back to it is not the only cause of its apparent greatness; it seemed as great to all those who lived in it. All foreign nations saw it, hailed it, were moved by it. There is no corner in Europe so secluded that the glow of admiration and of hope did not reach it. In the vast series of memoirs left to us by the contemporaries of the Revolution, I have met with none in which the recollection of the first days of 1789 has not left imperishable traces.

120.

HE little suspected, innocent youth that he was, that here in this very Athens, where his father reigned, a greater danger awaited him than any which he had encountered on the road. Yet this was the truth. You

must understand that the father of Theseus, though not very old in years, was almost worn out with the cares of government, and had thus grown aged before his time. His nephews, not expecting him to live a very great while, intended to get all the power of the kingdom into their own hands. But when they heard that Theseus had arrived in Athens, and learned what a gallant young man he was, they saw that he would not be at all the kind of person to let them steal away his father's crown and sceptre, which ought to be his own by right of inheritance. Thus these bad-hearted nephews of King Ægeus, who were the own cousins of Theseus, at once became his enemies. It so happened that they met him and found out who he was, just as he reached the entrance to the royal palace. With all their evil designs against him, they pretended to be their cousin's best friends, and expressed great joy at making his acquaintance. They persuaded him to come into the king's presence as a stranger, in order to try whether Ægeus would recognise him as his son.

121.

ALTHOUGH Richard had not been fully acknowledged by Henry II. as his successor until a few days before his death, and had never been formally received as such by the English baronage, he succeeded without any difficulty in obtaining recognition and, having bound himself by the usual oaths, was anointed and crowned; after the coronation (September 3) he stayed a few months in England, and only once again visited the country, in 1194, after his release from captivity, when he stayed from March 13 to May 12. On both these occasions his chief employment was the raising of money by the sale of public offices, the arranging of quarrels among the barons and clergy, and the securing of his own position against the machinations of John and Philip of France. The kingdom was administered during his absence by four consecutive justiciars, whose action, except so far as it was affected by the King's constant demands for money, was that of independent

sovereigns. Under these the constitutional arrangements organized by Henry II. worked with few impediments, and the reign is accordingly a period, internally, of quiet growth. The first of these ministers, William Longchamp, was a faithful servant of Richard, but anti-English and unpopular with the baronage.—W. STUBBS.

122.

IN the latter part of the journey the whole country becomes wilder and more desert in character. Herds of cattle and droves of sheep and goats graze in all directions. These are cared for by the Arab shepherds, who present a most picturesque appearance as they stand immovable as statues with their flowing robes and large turbans of the same colour as the surrounding soil. About two hours' run from Biskra the railway reaches El Kantara.

It is in a gorge somewhat similar to Palestro; and on debouching from it one is perfectly astounded at the sudden change. From a desert one is suddenly transferred to a paradise. Palms are huddled together in thousands, with every other conceivable tree growing in profusion. From the height on which the railway runs the view extends for miles, and everywhere in the valley are palms and the most luxurious vegetation. The dates from these groves are exported all over the world, and are of the finest quality. The train then runs into Biskra, which, although very finely situated in a somewhat similar oasis, pales before the verdure and beauty of that lovely valley of El Kantara.—From *The Globe*.

123.

WE now pursued our journey to the north-westward, at a rate much slower than that at which we had achieved our nocturnal retreat from England. One chain of barren and uninteresting hills succeeded another, until the more fertile vale of Clyde opened upon us; and, with such des-

patch as we might, we gained the town, or, as my guide pertinaciously termed it, the city, of Glasgow. Of late years, I understand, it has fully deserved the name, which, by a sort of political second sight, my guide assigned to it. An extensive and increasing trade with the West Indies and American Colonies has, if I am rightly informed, laid the foundation of wealth and prosperity, which, if carefully strengthened and built upon, may one day support an immense fabric of commercial prosperity; but in the earlier time of which I speak, the dawn of this splendour had not arisen. The Union had, indeed, opened to Scotland the trade of the English Colonies; but, betwixt want of capital and the national jealousy of the English, the merchants of Scotland were as yet excluded, in a great measure, from the exercise of the privileges which that memorable treaty conferred on them. Glasgow lay on the wrong side of the island for participating in the east country or continental trade, by which the trifling commerce as yet possessed by Scotland chiefly supported itself. Yet, though she then gave small promise of the commercial eminence to which, I am informed, she seems now likely one day to attain, Glasgow, as the principal central town of the western district of Scotland, was a place of considerable rank and importance. The broad and brimming Clyde, which flows so near its walls, gave the means of an inland navigation of some importance. Not only the fertile plains in its immediate neighbourhood, but the districts of Ayr and Dumfries regarded Glasgow as their capital, to which they transmitted their produce, and received in return such necessaries and luxuries as their consumption required.—SCOTT.

124.

WITH conversation on this and other matters they beguiled the way, Claverhouse all the while speaking with great frankness to Morton, and treating him rather as a friend and companion than as a prisoner; so that, however uncertain of his fate, the hours he passed in the company of this remarkable man were so much lightened by the

varied play of his imagination, and the depth of his knowledge of human nature, that since the period of his becoming a prisoner of war, which relieved him at once from the cares of his doubtful and dangerous station among the insurgents, and from the consequences of their suspicious resentment, his hours flowed on less anxiously than at any time since his having commenced actor in public life. He was now, with respect to his fortune, like a rider who has flung his reins on the horse's neck, and, while he abandoned himself to circumstances, was at least relieved from the task of attempting to direct them. In this mood he journeyed on, the number of his companions being continually augmented by detached parties of horse who came in from every quarter of the country, bringing with them, for the most part, the unfortunate persons who had fallen into their power.

125.

We have just been making an Emperor, and I myself had a finger in the pie. It happened in this way. This morning d'Anthouard called us together, and told us what the question was quite simply, without any rhetorical flourishes: "An Emperor or the Republic, which is most to your taste?" Just as one says, "Roast or boiled, thick or clear, which will you take?" His speech over, there we all sat in a ring and stared at each other. "Gentlemen, what is your opinion?" This went on for a quarter of an hour or more, and was growing awkward for d'Anthouard, and for everyone else too, when Maire, a young lieutenant whom you may perhaps have seen, got up and said,—"If he wishes to be Emperor, let him be Emperor; but, to give my own opinion on the subject, I do not approve of it at all." "Give your reasons," said the Colonel, "will you, or not?" "I would rather not," answered Maire. "Good." Again there was silence, again we began to look curiously at each other, like people who meet for the first time. We should have been at it now if I had not spoken. "Gentlemen," said I, "I think,

with all deference, that this is no concern of ours. If the nation wishes for an Emperor, is it for us to discuss the question?" This argument was felt to be so strong, so clear, so much to the point, that, in short, I carried the meeting with me. Never had orator so complete a success. We got up, signed, and went to play at billiards.

126.

PITT spoke without premeditation, but his speech followed the course of his own thoughts, and not the course of previous discussion. He could, indeed, treasure in his memory some detached expression of a hostile orator, and make it the text of lively ridicule or solemn reprehension. Some of the most celebrated bursts of his eloquence were called forth by an unguarded word, a laugh, or a cheer. But this was the only sort of reply in which he appears to have excelled. He was, perhaps, the only great English orator who did not think it any advantage to have the last word, and who generally spoke by choice before his most formidable opponents. His merit was almost entirely rhetorical. He did not succeed either in exposition or in refutation; but his speeches abounded with lively illustrations, striking apophthegms, well-told anecdotes, happy allusions, passionate appeals. His invectives and sarcasm were terrific. Perhaps no English orator was ever so much feared. But that which gave most effect to his declamation was the air of sincerity, of vehement feeling, of moral elevation, which belonged to all that he said. His style was not always in the purest taste. Several contemporary judges pronounced it too florid. Walpole, in the midst of the rapturous eulogy which he pronounces on one of Pitt's greatest orations, owns that some of the metaphors were too forced. Some of Pitt's quotations and classical stories are too trite for a clever schoolboy. But these were niceties for which the audience cared little. The enthusiasm of the orator infected all who heard him. His ardour and his noble bearing put fire into the most frigid conceit, and gave dignity to the most puerile allusion.—MACAULAY.

127.

"ARE they foreigners?" I enquired, amazed at hearing the French language.

"The nurse is a foreigner, and Adela was born on the continent; and, I believe, never left it till within six months ago. When she first came here she could speak no English; now she can make shift to talk it a little. I don't understand her, she mixes it so with French; but you will make out her meaning very well, I dare say."

Fortunately I had had the advantage of being taught French by a French lady; and as I had always made a point of conversing with Madame Pierrot as often as I could, and had besides, during the last seven years, learnt a portion of French by heart daily, applying myself to take pains with my accent, and imitating as closely as possible the pronunciation of my teacher, I had acquired a certain degree of readiness and correctness in the language, and was not likely to be much at a loss with Mademoiselle Adela. She came and shook hands with me when she heard that I was her governess; and as I led her in to breakfast, I addressed some phrases to her in her own tongue; she replied briefly at first, but after we were seated at the table, and she had examined me some ten minutes with her large hazel eyes, she suddenly commenced chattering fluently.

"Ah!" cried she in French, "you speak my language as well as Mr. Rochester does: I can talk to you as I can to him, and so can Sophie. She will be glad: nobody here understands her: Madame Fairfax is all English. Sophie is my nurse; she came with me over the sea in a great ship with a chimney that smoked—how it did smoke!—and I was sick, and so was Sophie, and so was Mr. Rochester. Mr. Rochester lay down on a sofa in a pretty room called the salon, and Sophie and I had little beds in another place. I nearly fell out of mine; it was like a shelf."—CHARLOTTE BRONTË, *Jane Eyre.*

128.

"FRANCE, the friend of England." These are the simple but pregnant words in which the President of the Republic, just before leaving Dover, summed up in his telegram to the King, the parting message which he wished to deliver to the British people. No words could have been more happily chosen, none could have responded more closely to the spirit in which the British people have delighted to honour their distinguished guest. With that simplicity and straightforwardness and directness of purpose which have impressed all those who have had the privilege of approaching M. Loubet personally, he gives us the assurance that France clasps the hand of friendship which we have held out to her loyally and without *arrière pensée*. We are neighbours, not only geographically, but in the common possession of those great social principles which stand for order, progress, and liberty. As between neighbours, friendship is and must be the best policy, and if on both sides of the Channel an honest determination prevails to look rather at the essentials which really unite us than at the non-essentials which may appear to divide us, there is no reason why our friendship should not be solid and enduring, and every reason that it should. Assuredly neither King Edward when he went to Paris, nor the President of the Republic when he came to London, dreamed of weaving new alliances or disturbing existing ones. But both may well have entertained the hope that to place the relations of the two countries on a footing of mutual confidence and good will was a task worthy of their exalted station, and one which it certainly need not pass the wit of man to accomplish. We believe it has been accomplished, and, if so, we have little doubt that concrete results will in due course follow. England, the friend of France, is ready to pledge France, the friend of England.—*The Times.*

129.

"LONDRES? C'est magnifique! Point de brouillard, et partout l'accueil le plus cordial!" So exclaimed an enthusiastic member of "L'Art pour Tous" Society, who concluded a brief visit to the British metropolis yesterday. It is a terse description of the main impressions, or more properly, perhaps, revelations, which 300 Parisians and Parisiennes have carried back with them across the Channel. The pre-conceived notion of London, Londoners, and the English climate proved, happily, at variance with the realities. Instead of a grey city under a canopy of smoke and fog, and a people steadfastly wrapped in cold, unbending insularity, they found London rejoicing under a dome of blue, with the river laughing back at the sun, and a warm-hearted multitude, with a good deal of the joy of life in them, eager to welcome the strangers and to do them honour. Such were the anticipation and the realisation, and it is difficult to say whether the weather or the cordiality of their reception surprised the visitors most. The fame of our climate has travelled far, and the continental conception of the English character and temperament is deep-seated, not altogether, perhaps, without reason. No doubt, like most things in nature, we are at our best in our native air; at all events, we were an agreeable revelation to our guests. "Why," remarked an astonished Frenchman after his first day in London, "the English laugh quite naturally!" Do Englishmen never laugh on the boulevards? It was the warmth of the welcome extended to them that most of all impressed the tourists. Everywhere they found "l'entente cordiale" in being. "We have found ourselves among friends," said another of the party. "Everybody has been so kind; we are delighted with London."

130.

INSANITY is often the logic of an accurate mind overtasked. Good mental machinery ought to break its own wheels and levers, if anything is thrust among them suddenly which tends to stop them or reverse their motion. A weak mind does not accumulate force enough to hurt itself; stupidity often saves a man from going mad. We frequently see persons in insane hospitals, sent there in consequence of what are called *religious* mental disturbances. I confess that I think better of them than of many who hold the same notions, and keep their wits and appear to enjoy life very well outside of the asylums. Any decent person ought to go mad, if he really holds such or such opinions. It is very much to his discredit in every point of view, if he does not. What is the use of my saying what some of these opinions are? Perhaps more than one of you hold such as I should think ought to send you straight over to Somerville, if you have any logic in your heads or any human feeling in your hearts. Anything that is brutal, cruel, heathenish, that makes life hopeless for the most of mankind and perhaps for entire races,—anything that assumes the necessity of the extermination of instincts which were given to be regulated, —no matter by what name you call it,—no matter whether a fakir, or a monk, or a deacon believes it,—if received, ought to produce insanity in every well-regulated mind. That condition becomes a normal one, under the circumstances. I am very much ashamed of some people for retaining their reason, when they know perfectly well that if they were not the most stupid or the most selfish of human beings, they would become *non-compotes* at once.—OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES

131.

THE truth is, the characters of Shakespeare are so much the objects of meditation rather than of interest or curiosity as to their actions, that, while we are reading any of his great criminal characters,—Macbeth, Richard, even Iago,—we think not so much of the crimes which they commit, as of

the ambition, the aspiring spirit, the intellectual activity which prompts them to overleap those moral fences. Barnwell is a wretched murderer; there is a certain fitness between his neck and the rope; he is the legitimate heir to the gallows; nobody who thinks at all can think of any alleviating circumstances in his case to make him a fit object of mercy. Or, to take an instance from the higher tragedy, what else but a mere assassin is Glenalvon! Do we think of anything but of the crime which he commits, and the rack which he deserves? That is all which we really think about him. Whereas, in corresponding characters in Shakespeare, so little do the actions comparatively affect us, that while the impulses, the inner mind in all its perverted greatness, solely seems real and is exclusively attended to, the crime is comparatively nothing. But when we see these things represented, the acts which they do are comparatively everything, their impulses nothing. The state of sublime emotion into which we are elevated by those images of night and horror which Macbeth is made to utter, that solemn prelude with which he entertains the time till the bell shall strike which is to call him to murder Duncan,—when we no longer read it in a book, when we have given up that vantage-ground of abstraction which reading possesses over seeing, and come to see a man in his bodily shape before our eyes actually preparing to commit a murder, if the acting be true and impressive, as I have witnessed it in Mr. K.'s performance of that part, the painful anxiety about the act, the natural longing to prevent it while it yet seems unperpetrated, the too close pressing semblance of reality, give a pain and an uneasiness which totally destroy all the delight which the words in the book convey, where the deed doing never presses upon us with the painful sense of presence: it rather seems to belong to history,—to something past and inevitable, if it has anything to do with time at all. The sublime images, the poetry alone, is that which is present to our minds in the reading.—LAMB.

132.

Oh, the Babel of horse and foot, young and old! the cheering, and the exhorting, and the objurgations of number this, and number that! and the yelling of the most sacred names, intermingled too often with oaths.—And yet, after a few moments, I ceased to wonder either at the Cambridge passion for boat-racing, or at the excitement of the spectators. "*Honi soit, qui mal y pense.*" It was a noble sport—a sight such as could only be seen in England—some hundred of young men, who might, if they had chosen, been lounging effeminately about the streets, subjecting themselves voluntarily to that intense exertion, for the mere pleasure of toil. The true English stuff came out there; I felt that, in spite of all my prejudices—the stuff which has held Gibraltar and conquered at Waterloo—which has created a Birmingham and a Manchester, and colonized every quarter of the globe—that grim, earnest, stubborn energy, which, since the days of the old Romans, the English possess alone of all the nations of the earth. I was as proud of the gallant young fellows as if they had been my brothers—of their courage and endurance (for one could see that it was no child's play, from the pale faces, and panting lips), their strength and activity, so fierce and yet so cultivated, smooth, harmonious, as oar kept time with oar, and every back rose and fell in concert—and felt my soul stirred up to a sort of sweet madness, not merely by the shouts and cheers of the mob around me, but by the loud, fierce pulse of the rowlocks, the swift, whispering rush of the long, snake-like eight oars, the swirl and gurgle of the water in their wake, the grim, breathless silence of the straining rowers. My blood boiled over, and fierce tears swelled into my eyes; for I, too, was a man, and an Englishman; and when I caught sight of my cousin, pulling stroke to the second boat in the long line, with set teeth and flashing eyes, the great muscles on his bare arms springing up into knots at every rapid stroke, I ran and shouted among the maddest and the foremost.—Charles Kingsley.

133.

WHAT is the secret mesmerism which friendship possesses, and under the operation of which a person ordinarily sluggish, or cold, or timid, becomes wise, active, and resolute in another's behalf? As Alexis, after a few passes from Dr. Elliotson, despises pain, reads with the back of his head, sees miles off, looks into next week, and performs other wonders, of which, in his own private normal condition, he is quite incapable; so you see, in the affairs of the world, and under the magnetism of friendship, the modest man become bold, the shy confident, the lazy active, or the impetuous prudent and peaceful. What is it, on the other hand, that makes the lawyer eschew his own cause, and call in his learned brother as an adviser? And what causes the doctor, when ailing, to send for his rival, and not sit down and examine his own tongue in the chimney-glass, or write his own prescription at his study-table? I throw out these queries for intelligent readers to answer, who know, at once, how credulous we are and how sceptical, how soft and how obstinate, how firm for others and how diffident about ourselves: meanwhile it is certain that our friend William Dobbin, who was personally of so complying a disposition, that if his parents had pressed him much, it is probable he would have stepped down into the kitchen and married the cook, and who, to further his own interests, would have found the most insuperable difficulty in walking across the street, found himself as busy and eager in the conduct of George Osborne's affairs, as the most selfish tactician could be in the pursuit of his own.—THACKERAY.

134.

To this conclusion, then, hast thou come, O hapless Louis!

The Son of Sixty Kings is to die on the Scaffold by form of Law. Under Sixty Kings this same form of Law, form of Society, has been fashioning itself together these thousand years; and has become, one way and other, a most strange

Machine. Surely, if needful, it is also frightful, this Machine; dead, blind; not what it should be; which, with swift stroke, or by cold slow torture, has wasted the lives and souls of innumerable men. And behold now a king himself, or say rather Kinghood in his person, is to expire here in cruel tortures;—like a Phalaris shut in the belly of his own red-heated Brazen Bull! It is ever so; and thou shouldst know it, O haughty tyrannous man: injustice breeds injustice; curses and falsehoods do verily return 'always home,' wide as they may wander. Innocent Louis bears the sins of many generations: he too experiences that man's tribunal is not in this Earth: that if he had no Higher one it were not well with him.

A King dying by such violence appeals impressively to the imagination, as the like must do, and ought to do. And yet at the bottom it is not the King dying but the man! Kingship is a coat: the grand loss is of the skin. The man from whom you take his Life, to him can the whole combined world do more? Lally went on his hurdle, his mouth filled with a gag. Miserablest mortals, doomed for picking pockets, have a whole five-act Tragedy in them, in that dumb pain, as they go to the gallows, unregarded; they consume the cup of trembling down to the lees. For Kings and for Beggars, for the justly doomed and the unjustly, it is a hard thing to die. Pity them all: thy utmost pity, with all aids and appliances and throne-and-scaffold contrasts, how far short is it of the thing pitied.—CARLYLE.

135.

THE dream commenced with a music, which now I often hear in dreams—a music of preparation and of awakening suspense; a music like the opening of the Coronation Anthem, and which, like that, gave the feeling of a vast march—of infinite cavalcades filing off—and the tread of innumerable armies. The morning was come of a mighty day—a day of crisis and of final hope for human nature, then suffering some mysterious eclipse, and labouring in some dread extremity. Somewhere, I knew not where—

somehow, I knew not how—by some beings, I knew not whom—a battle, a strife, an agony was conducting—was evolving like a great drama or piece of music; with which my sympathy was the more insupportable from my confusion as to its place, its cause, its nature, and its possible issue. I, as is usual in dreams (where, of necessity, we make ourselves central to every movement), had the power, and yet had not the power to decide it. I had the power, if I could raise myself, to will it; and yet again had not the power, for the weight of twenty Atlantes was upon me, or the oppression of inexpiable guilt. "Deeper than ever plummet sounded," I lay inactive. Then, like a chorus, the passion deepened. Some greater interest was at stake; some mightier cause than ever yet the sword had pleaded or trumpet had proclaimed. Then came sudden alarms, hurrying to and fro; trepidations of innumerable fugitives, I knew not whether from the good cause or the bad; darkness and lights; tempest and human faces; and at last, with the sense that all was lost, female forms, and the features that were worth all the world to me, and but a moment allowed—and clasped hands, and heart-breaking partings, and then—everlasting farewells! and again, and yet again, everlasting farewells!

And I awoke in struggles, and cried aloud—"I will sleep no more!"—De Quincey.

136.

That was the age of suppers. Happy age! Meal of ease and mirth; when Wine and Night lit the lamp of Wit! O, what precious things were said and looked at those banquets of the soul! There epicurism was in the lip as well as the palate, and one had humour for a *hors d'œuvre*, and repartee for an *entremet*. In dinner there is something too pompous, too formal, for the true ease of Table Talk. One's intellectual appetite, like the physical, is coarse but dull. At dinner one is fit only for eating; *after* dinner only for politics. But supper was a glorious relic of the ancients. The bustle of the day had thoroughly wound up the spirit, and every stroke upon the dial-plate of wit was

true to the genius of the hour. The wallet of diurnal anecdote was full, and craved unloading. The great meal—that vulgar first love of the appetite—was over, and one now only flattered it into coquetting with another. The mind, disengaged and free, was no longer absorbed in a cutlet or burthened with a joint. The *gourmand* carried the nicety of his physical perception to his moral, and applauded a *bon mot* instead of a *bonne bouche*.

Then, too, one had no necessity to keep a reserve of thought for the after evening; supper was the final consummation, the glorious funeral pyre of day. One could be merry till bed time without an interregnum. Nay, if in the ardour of convivialism one did—I merely hint at the possibility of such an event—if one *did* exceed the narrow limits of strict ebriety, and open the heart with a ruby key, one had nothing to dread from the cold, or, what is worse, the warm looks of ladies in the drawing-room; no fear that an imprudent word, in the amatory fondness of the fermented blood, might expose one to matrimony and settlements. There was no tame, trite medium of propriety and suppressed confidence, no bridge from board to bed, over which a false step (and your wine cup is a marvellous corrupter of ambulatory rectitude) might precipitate into an irrecoverable abyss of perilous communication or unwholesome truth. One's pillow became at once the legitimate and natural bourne to "the overheated brain"; and the generous rashness of the cœnatorial reveller was not damped by untimeous caution or ignoble calculation.—LYTTON.

137.

ALL that day, from morning until past sunset, the cannon never ceased to roar. It was dark when the cannonading stopped all of a sudden.

All of us have read of what occurred during that interval. The tale is in every Englishman's mouth: and you and I, who were children when the great battle was won and lost, are never tired of hearing and recounting the history of that famous action. Its remembrance rankles still in the bosoms

of millions of the countrymen of those brave men who lost the day. They pant for an opportunity of revenging that humiliation; and if a contest, ending in a victory on their part, should ensue, elating them in their turn, and leaving its cursed legacy of hatred and rage behind to us, there is no end to the so-called glory and shame, and to the alternations of successful and unsuccessful murder, in which two high-spirited nations might engage. Centuries hence, we Frenchmen and Englishmen might be boasting and killing each other still, carrying out bravely the Devil's code of honour.

All our friends took their share and fought like men in the great field. All day long, whilst the women were praying ten miles away, the lines of the dauntless English infantry were receiving and repelling the furious charges of the French horsemen. Guns which were heard at Brussels were ploughing up their ranks, and comrades falling, and the resolute survivors closing in. Towards evening, the attack of the French, repeated and resisted so bravely, slackened in its fury. They had other foes besides the British to engage, or were preparing for a final onset. It came at last: the columns of the Imperial Guard marched up the hill of Saint Jean, at length and at once to sweep the English from the height which they had maintained all day, and spite of all: unscared by the thunder of the artillery, which hurled death from the English line—the dark rolling column pressed on and up the hill. It seemed almost to crest the eminence, when it began to wave and falter. Then it stopped, still facing the shot. Then at last the English troops rushed from the post from which no enemy had been able to dislodge them, and the Guard turned and fled.

No more firing was heard at Brussels—the pursuit rolled miles away. Darkness came down on the field and city; and Amelia was praying for George, who was lying on his face, dead, with a bullet through his heart.—THACKERAY.

138.

HE is a King, every inch of him, though without the trappings of a King. Presents himself in a Spartan sim-

plicity of vesture: no crown, but an old military cocked hat . . . ; no sceptre, but one like Agamemnon's, a walking-stick cut from the woods . . . ; and for royal robes, a mere soldier's blue coat with red facings . . . ; rest of the apparel dim, unobtrusive in colour or cut, ending in high over-knee military boots, which may be brushed (and, I hope, kept soft with an underhand suspicion of oil), but are not permitted to be blackened or varnished. Day and Martin with their soot-pots, forbidden to approach. The man is not of god-like physiognomy, and more than imposing stature or costume: close-shut mouth with thin lips, prominent jaws and nose, receding brow, by no means of Olympian height; head, however, is of long form, and has superlative grey eyes in it. Not what is called a beautiful man; nor yet, by all appearance, what is called a happy. On the contrary, the face bears evidence of many sorrows, as they are termed, of much hard labour done in this world; and seems to anticipate nothing but still more coming. Quiet Stoicism, capable enough of what joys there were, but not expecting any worth mention; great unconscious and some conscious pride, well tempered with a cheery mockery of humour, are written on that old face, which carries its chin well forward, in spite of the slight stoop about the neck; snuffy nose, rather flung into the air, under its old cocked hat, like an old snuffy lion on the watch; and such a pair of eyes as no man, or lion, or lynx of that century bore elsewhere, according to all the testimony we have. . . . Most excellent, potent, brilliant eyes, swift-darting as the stars, steadfast as the sun; grey, we said, as the azure-grey colour; large enough, not of glaring size; the habitual expression of them vigilance and penetrating sense, rapidity resting on depth. . . . The voice, if he speak to you, is of similar physiognomy, clear, melodious, and sonorous; all tones are in it, from that of ingenuous inquiry, graceful sociality, light-flowing banter, up to the definite word of command, up to the desolating word of rebuke and reprobation.—CARLYLE.

139.

In Marlowe the passion of ideal love for the ultimate idea of beauty in art or nature found its perfect and supreme expression, faultless and unforced. The radiant ardour of his desire, the light and the flame of his aspiration, diffused and shed through all the forms of his thought and all the colours of his verse, gave them such shapeliness and strength of life as is given to the spirits of the greater poets alone. He—far rather than Chaucer or Spenser, whose laurels were first fed by the dews and sunbeams of Italy and France, whose songs were full of sweet tradition from over the sea, of memories and notes which "came mended from their tongues,"—he alone was the true Apollo of our dawn, the bright and morning star of the full midsummer day of English poetry at his highest. Chaucer, Wyatt and Spenser had left our language as melodious, as fluent, as flexible to all purposes of narrative or lyrical poetry, as it could be made by the grace of genius; the supreme note of its possible music was reserved for another to strike. Of English blank verse, one of the few highest forms of verbal harmony or poetic expression, the genius of Marlowe was the absolute and divine creator. By mere dint of original and godlike instinct he discovered and called it into life; and at his untimely and unhappy death, more lamentable to us all than any other on record except Shelley's, he left the marvellous instrument of his invention so nearly perfect, that Shakespeare first and afterwards Milton came to learn of him before they could vary or improve on it. In the changes rung by them on the keys first tuned by Marlowe, we trace a remembrance of the touches of his hand; in his own cadences we catch not a note of any other man's. This poet, a poor scholar of humblest parentage, lived to perfect the exquisite metre invented for narrative by Chaucer, giving it (to my ear at least) more of weight and depth, of force and fulness, than its founder had to give; he invented the highest and hardest form of English verse, the only instrument since found possible for our tragic or

epic poetry; he created the modern tragic drama; and at the age of thirty he went

"Where Orpheus and where Homer are."

—SWINBURNE.

140.

IT is difficult to say whether these fiords are the most beautiful in summer or in winter. In summer they glitter with golden sunshine, and purple and green shadows from the mountain and forests lie on them; and these may be more lovely than the faint light of the winter noons of these latitudes, and the snowy pictures of frozen peaks which then show themselves on the surface; but before the day is half over, out come the stars—the glorious stars, which shine like nothing that we have ever seen. There the planets cast a faint shadow, as the young moon does with us, and these planets, and the constellations of the sky, as they silently glide over from peak to peak of these rocky passes, are imaged on the waters so clearly, that the fisherman, as he unmoors his boat for his evening task, feels as if he were about to shoot forth his vessel into another heaven, and to cleave his way among the stars.

Still as everything is to the eye, sometimes for a hundred miles together along these deep sea-valleys there is rarely silence. The ear is kept awake by a thousand voices. In the summer there are cataracts leaping from ledge to ledge of the rocks, and there is the bleating of the kids that browse there, and the flap of the great eagle's wings as it dashes abroad from its eyrie, and the cries of whole clouds of sea-birds which inhabit the islets; and all these sounds are mingled and multiplied by the strong echoes till they become a din as loud as that of a city. Even at night, when the flocks are in the fold, and the birds at roost, and the echoes themselves seem to be asleep, there is occasionally a sweet music heard, too soft for even the listening ear to catch by day. Every breath of summer wind that steals through the pine forest wakes this music as it goes. The stiff, spiny leaves of the fir and pine vibrate with the breeze,

like the strings of a musical instrument, so that every breath of the night wind, in a Norwegian forest, wakens a myriad of tiny harps; and this gentle and mournful music may be heard in gushes the whole night through. This music, of course, ceases when each tree becomes laden with snow; but yet there is sound in the midst of the longest winter night. There is the rumble of some avalanche, as, after a drifting storm, a mass of snow, too heavy to keep its place, slides and tumbles from the mountain peak. There is also, now and then, a loud crack of the ice in the nearest glacier, and, as many declare, there is a crackling to be heard by those who listen when the northern lights are shooting and blazing across the sky. Nor is this all. Wherever there is a nook between the rocks on the shore where a man may build a house and clear a field or two—wherever there is a platform beside the cataract where the sawyer may plant his mill, and make a path from it to join some great road, there is a human habitation, and the sounds that belong to it. Thence, in winter nights, come music and laughter, and the tread of dancers, and the hum of many voices. The Norwegians are a social and hospitable people, and they hold their gay meetings, in defiance of their arctic climate, through every season of the year.—HARRIET MARTINEAU.

141.

HAPPY season of Childhood! Kind Nature, that art to all a bountiful mother; that visitest the poor man's hut with auroral radiance; and for thy Nurseling hast provided a soft swathing of Love and infinite Hope, wherein he waxes and slumbers, danced-round by sweetest Dreams! If the paternal Cottage still shuts us in, its roof still screens us; with a Father we have as yet a prophet, priest and king, and an Obedience that makes us Free. The young spirit has awakened out of Eternity, and knows not what we mean by Time; as yet Time is no fast-hurrying stream, but a sportful sunlit ocean; years to the child are as ages: ah! the secret of Vicissitude, of that slower or quicker decay and ceaseless down-rushing of the universal World-fabric,

from the granite mountain to the man or day-moth, is yet unknown; and in a motionless Universe, we taste, what afterwards in this quick-whirling Universe is forever denied us, the balm of Rest. Sleep on, thou fair Child, for thy long rough journey is at hand! A little while, and thou too shalt sleep no more, but thy very dreams shall be mimic battles; thou too, with old Arnauld, must say in stern patience: "Rest? Rest? Shall I not have all Eternity to rest in?" Celestial Nepenthe! though a Pyrrhus conquer empires, and an Alexander sack the world, he finds thee not; and thou hast once fallen gently, of thy own accord, on the eyelids, on the heart of every mother's child. For, as yet, sleep and waking are one: the fair Life-garden rustles infinite around, and everywhere is dewy fragrance and the budding of Hope; which budding, if in youth, too frostnipt, it grow to flowers, will in manhood yield no fruit, but a prickly, bitter-rinded stone-fruit, of which the fewest can find the kernel.—CARLYLE.

142.

As we go catching and catching at this or that corner of knowledge, now getting a foresight of generous possibilities, now chilled with a glimpse of prudence, we may compare the headlong course of our years to a swift torrent in which a man is carried away; now he is dashed against a boulder, now he grapples for a moment to a trailing spray; at the end, he is hurled out and overwhelmed in a dark and bottomless ocean. We have no more than glimpses and touches; we are torn away from our theories; we are spun round and round and shown this or the other view of life, until only fools or knaves can hold to their opinions. We take a sight at a condition in life, and say we have studied it; our most elaborate view is no more than an impression. If we had breathing space, we should take the occasion to modify and adjust; but at this breakneck hurry, we are no sooner boys than we are adult, no sooner in love than married or jilted, no sooner one age than we begin to be another, and no sooner in the fulness of our manhood than we begin to decline towards the grave. It is in vain to seek

for consistency or expect clear and stable views in a medium so perturbed and fleeting. This is no cabinet science, in which things are tested to a scruple; we theorise with a pistol to our head; we are confronted with a new set of conditions on which we have not only to pass a judgment, but to take action, before the hour is at an end. And we cannot even regard ourselves as a constant; in this flux of things, our identity itself seems in a perpetual variation; and not infrequently we find our own disguise the strangest in the masquerade.—STEVENSON.

143.

IN the great world of woman, as the interpreter of the shifting phases and the lunar varieties of that mighty changeable planet, that lovely satellite of man, Shakespeare stands not the first only, not the original only, but is yet the sole authentic oracle of truth. Woman, therefore, the beauty of the female mind, *this* is one great field of his power. The supernatural world, the world of apparitions, *that* is another; for reasons which it would be easy to give, reasons emanating from the gross mythology of the ancients, no Grecian, no Roman, could have conceived a ghost. That shadowy conception, the protesting apparition, the awful projection of the human conscience, belongs to the Christian mind; and in all Christendom, who, let us ask, who, but Shakespeare, has found the power for effectually working this mysterious mode of being? In summoning back to earth "the majesty of buried Denmark," how like an awful necromancer does Shakespeare appear! All the pomps and grandeurs which religion, which the grave, which the popular superstition had gathered about the subject of apparitions, are here converted to his purpose, and bend to one awful effect. The wormy grave brought into antagonism with the scenting of the early dawn; the trumpet of resurrection suggested, and again as an antagonist idea the crowing of the cock (a bird ennobled in the Christian mythus by the part he is made to play at the Crucifixion); its starting "as a guilty thing" placed in opposition to its

majestic expression of offended dignity when struck at by the partisans of the sentinels; its awful allusions to the secrets of its prison-house; its ubiquity, contrasted with its local presence; its aërial substance, yet clothed in palpable armour; the heart-shaking solemnity of its language, and the appropriate scenery of its haunt—viz., the ramparts of a capital fortress, with no witnesses but a few gentlemen mounting guard at the dead of night: what a mist, what a *mirage* of vapour, is here accumulated, through which the dreadful being in the centre looms upon us in far larger proportions than could have happened had it been insulated and left naked of this circumstantial pomp!—De Quincey.

144.

The artificial Comedy, or Comedy of manners, is quite extinct on our stage. Congreve and Farquhar show their heads once in seven years only, to be exploded and put down instantly. The times cannot bear them. Is it for a few wild speeches, an occasional licence of dialogue? I think not altogether. The business of their dramatic characters will not stand the moral test. We screw everything up to that. Idle gallantry in a fiction, a dream, the passing pageant of an evening, startles us in the same way as the alarming indications of profligacy in a son or ward in real life should startle a parent or guardian. We have no such middle emotions as dramatic interests left. We see a stage libertine playing his loose pranks of two hours' duration, and of no after-consequence, with the severe eyes which inspect real vices with their bearings upon two worlds. We are spectators to a plot or intrigue (not reducible in life to the point of strict morality) and take it all for truth. We substitute a real for a dramatic person, and judge him accordingly. We try him in our courts, from which there is no appeal to the *dramatis personæ*, his peers. We have been spoiled with—not sentimental comedy—but a tyrant far more pernicious to our pleasures which has succeeded to it, the exclusive and all-devouring drama of common life; where the moral point is everything; where, instead of the

fictitious half-believed personages of the stage (the phantoms of old comedy) we recognize ourselves, our brothers, aunts, kinsfolk, allies, patrons, enemies,—the same as in life,—with an interest in what is going on so hearty and substantial, that we cannot afford our moral judgment, in its deepest and most vital results, to compromise or slumber for a moment. What is *there* transacting, by no modification is made to affect us in any other manner than the same events or characters would do in our relationships of life. We carry our fireside concerns to the theatre with us. We do not go thither, like our ancestors, to escape from the pressure of reality, so much as to confirm our experience of it; to make assurance double, and take a bond of fate. We must live our toilsome lives twice over, as it was the mournful privilege of Ulysses to descend twice to the shades. All that neutral ground of character, which stood between vice and virtue; or which in fact was indifferent to neither, where neither property was called in question; that happy breathing-place from the burthen of a perpetual moral questioning—the sanctuary and quiet Alsatia of hunted casuistry—is broken up and disfranchised, as injurious to the interests of society. The privileges of the place are taken away by law. We dare not dally with images, or names, of wrong. We bark like foolish dogs at shadows. We dread infection from the scenic representation of disorder, and fear a painted pustule. In our anxiety that our morality should not take cold, we wrap it up in a great blanket surtout of precaution against the breeze and sunshine.—LAMB.

145.

AT church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorned the venerable place;
Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway
And fools, who came to scoff, remained to pray.
The service past, around the pious man,
With steady zeal, each honest rustic ran;
Even children followed with endearing wile,
And plucked his gown, to share the good man's smile.

His ready smile a parent's warmth exprest,
Their welfare pleased him, and their cares distrest;
To them his heart, his love, his griefs were given,
But all his serious thoughts had rest in heaven.
As some tall cliff that lifts its awful form,
Swells from the vale, and midway leaves the storm,
Though round its breast the rolling clouds are spread
Eternal sunshine settles on its head.—GOLDSMITH.

146.

AND there are some, whom a thirst
Ardent, unquenchable, fires,
Not with the crowd to be spent,
Not without aim to go round
In an eddy of purposeless dust,
Effort unmeaning and vain.
Ah yes! some of us strive
Not without action to die
Fruitless, but something to snatch
From dull oblivion, nor all
Glut the devouring grave!
We, we have chosen our path—
Path to a clear-purposed goal,
Path of advance!—but it leads
A long, steep journey, through sunk
Gorges, o'er mountains in snow.
Cheerful, with friends we set forth—
Then, on the height, comes the storm.
Thunder crashes from rock
To rock, the cataracts reply;
Lightnings dazzle our eyes;
Roaring torrents have breach'd
The track, the stream-bed descends
In the place where the wayfarer once
Planted his footstep—the spray
Boils o'er its borders!—aloft
The unseen snow-beds dislodge
Their hanging ruin;—alas,

Havoc is made in our train!
Friends, who set forth at our side,
Falter, are lost in the storm.
We, we only are left!—MATTHEW ARNOLD.

147.

THROUGH thy battlements, Newstead, the hollow winds whistle;
Thou, the hall of my fathers, art gone to decay;
In thy once smiling garden, the hemlock and thistle
Have choked up the rose which late bloom'd in the way

Of the mail-cover'd Barons, who proudly to battle
Led their vassals from Europe to Palestine's plain,
The escutcheon and shield, which with every blast rattle,
Are the only sad vestiges now that remain.

* * * * * *

Shades of heroes, farewell; your descendant, departing
From the seat of his ancestors, bids you adieu!
Abroad, or at home, your remembrance imparting
New courage, he'll think upon glory and you.

Though a tear dim his eye at this sad separation,
'Tis nature, not fear, that excites his regret;
Far distant he goes, with the same emulation;
The fame of his fathers he ne'er can forget.

That fame and that memory still will he cherish;
He vows that he ne'er will disgrace your renown:
Like you will he live, or like you will he perish:
When decay'd, may he mingle his dust with your own.

BYRON.

148.

ARETHUSA arose
From her couch of snows
In the Acroceraunian mountains—

From cloud and from crag,
With many a jag,
Shepherding her bright fountains.
She leapt down the rocks
With her rainbow locks
Streaming among the streams;
Her steps paved with green
The downward ravine
Which slopes to the western gleams:
And gliding and springing,
She went, ever singing,
In murmurs as soft as sleep;
The Earth seemed to love her,
And Heaven smiled above her,
And she lingered towards the deep.

Then Alpheus bold,
On his glacier cold,
With his trident the mountains strook;
And opened a chasm
In the rocks;—with the spasm
All Erymanthus shook.
And the black south wind
It concealed behind
The urns of the silent snow,
And earthquake and thunder
Did rend in sunder
The bars of the springs below:
The beard and the hair
Of the river god were
Seen through the torrent's sweep,
As he followed the light
Of the fleet nymph's flight
To the brink of the Dorian deep.

"Oh, save me! Oh, guide me!
And bid the deep hide me,
For he grasps me now by the hair!"
The loud Ocean heard,
To its blue depth stirred,
And divided at her prayer;

And under the water
The Earth's white daughter
Fled like a sunny beam,
Behind her descended,
Her billows unblended
With the brackish Dorian stream:
Like a gloomy stain
On the emerald main
Alpheus rushed behind,
As an eagle pursuing
A dove to its ruin
Down the streams of the cloudy wind.—SHELLEY.

149.

STILL stands the forest primeval; but far away from its shadow,
Side by side, in their nameless graves, the lovers are sleeping.
Under the humble walls of the little Catholic churchyard,
In the heart of the city, they lie, unknown and unnoticed.
Daily the tides of life go ebbing and flowing beside them,—
Thousands of throbbing hearts, where theirs are at rest and for ever,
Thousands of aching brains, where theirs no longer are busy,
Thousands of toiling hands, where theirs have ceased from their labours,
Thousands of weary feet, where theirs have completed their journey!

Still stands the forest primeval; but under the shade of its branches
Dwells another race, with other customs and language.
Only along the shore of the mournful and misty Atlantic
Linger a few Acadian peasants, whose fathers from exile
Wandered back to their native land to die in its bosom.
In the fisherman's cot the wheel and the loom are still busy;

Maidens still wear their Norman caps and their kirtles of homespun,
And by the evening fire repeat Evangeline's story,
While from its rocky caverns the deep-voiced, neighbouring ocean
Speaks, and in accents disconsolate answers the wail of the forest.—LONGFELLOW.

150.

My heart's so hardened, I cannot repent.
Scarce can I name salvation, faith, or heaven,
But fearful echoes thunder in mine ears,
"Faustus, thou art damn'd!" then swords and knives,
Poison, guns, halters, and envenomed steel
Are laid before me to despatch myself;
And long ere this I should have slain myself,
Had not sweet pleasure conquer'd deep despair.
Have I not made blind Homer sing to me
Of Alexander's love and Œnon's death?
And hath not he, that built the walls of Thebes
With ravishing sound of his melodious harp,
Made music with my Mephistophilis?
Why should I die, then, or basely despair?
I am resolved; Faustus shall ne'er repent.—
Come, Mephistophilis, let us dispute again,
And argue of divine astrology.—MARLOWE.

151.

Nor rural sights alone, but rural sounds,
Exhilarate the spirit, and restore
The tone of languid nature. Mighty winds,
That sweep the skirt of some far-spreading wood
Of ancient growth, make music not unlike
The dash of ocean on his winding shore,
And lull the spirit while they fill the mind,
Unnumbered branches waving in the blast,

And all their leaves fast fluttering all at once.
Nor less composure waits upon the roar
Of distant floods, or on the softer voice
Of neighbouring fountain, or of rills that slip
Through the cleft rock, and chiming as they fall,
Upon loose pebbles, lose themselves at length
In matted grass, that with a livelier green
Betrays the secret of their silent course.
Nature inanimate displays sweet sounds,
But animated nature sweeter still,
To soothe and satisfy the human ear;
Ten thousand warblers cheer the day, and one
The livelong night; nor these alone whose notes
Nice-fingered art must emulate in vain,
But cawing rooks, and kites that swim sublime
In still-repeated circles, screaming loud,
The jay, the pie, and even the boding owl
That hails the rising moon, have charm for me,
Sounds inharmonious in themselves and harsh,
Yet heard in scenes where peace for ever reigns,
And only there, please highly for their sake.

COWPER.

152.

Por. THE quality of mercy is not strained,
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven
Upon the place beneath: it is twice blessed:
It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.
'Tis mightiest in the mightiest, it becomes
The thronèd monarch better than his crown:
His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,
The attribute to awe and majesty,
Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings;
But mercy is above this sceptred sway,
It is enthronèd in the hearts of kings,
It is an attribute to God himself,
And earthly power doth then show likest God's
When mercy seasons justice. Therefore, Jew,
Though justice be thy plea, consider this,

That in the course of justice none of us
Should see salvation: we do pray for mercy,
And that same prayer doth teach us all to render
The deeds of mercy.—SHAKESPEARE.

153.

FIVE years have past; five summers, with the length
Of five long winters! and again I hear
These waters rolling from their mountain springs
With a soft inland murmur.—Once again
Do I behold these steep and lofty cliffs,
That on a wild secluded scene impress
Thoughts of more deep seclusion; and connect
The landscape with the quiet of the sky.
The day is come when I again repose
Here, under this dark sycamore, and view
These plots of cottage ground, these orchard-tufts,
Which at this season, with their unripe fruits,
Are clad in one green hue, and lose themselves
'Mid groves and copses. Once again I see
These hedge-rows, hardly hedge-rows, little lines
Of sportive wood run wild: these pastoral farms,
Green to the very door; and wreaths of smoke
Sent up in silence, from among the trees,
With some uncertain notice, as might seem
Of vagrant dwellers in the houseless woods,
Or of some Hermit's cave, where by his fire
The Hermit sits alone.—WORDSWORTH.

154.

GIVE thy thoughts no tongue,
Nor any unproportioned thought his act.
Be thou familiar, but by no means vulgar:
The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel;
But do not dull thy palm with entertainment

Of each new-hatched, unfledged courage. Beware
Of entrance to a quarrel; but, being in,
Bear't that the opposed may beware of thee.
Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice;
Take each man's censure, but reserve thy judgment.
Costly thy habit as thy purse can buy,
But not expressed in fancy; rich, not gaudy:
For the apparel oft proclaims the man;
And they in France of the best rank and station
Are most select and generous in that.
Neither a borrower, nor a lender be;
For loan oft loses both itself and friend,
And borrowing dulls the edge of husbandry.
This above all,—to thine own self be true;
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.—SHAKESPEARE.

155.

YE field flowers! the gardens eclipse you, 'tis true,
Yet, wildings of nature, I dote upon you;
For ye waft me to summers of old,
When the earth teemed around me with fairy delight,
And when daisies and buttercups gladdened my sight,
Like treasures of silver and gold.

I like you for lulling me back into dreams
Of the blue Highland mountains and echoing streams,
And of broken glades breathing their balm,
While the deer was seen glancing in sunshine remote,
And the deep mellow crash of the wood-pigeon's note
Made music that sweetened the calm.

Not a pastoral song has a pleasanter tune
Than ye speak to my heart, little wildings of June;
Of old ruinous castles ye tell,
Where I thought it delightful your beauties to find,
When the magic of Nature first breathed on my mind,
And your blossoms were part of her spell.

Even now what affections the violet awakes;
What loved little islands, twice seen in their lakes,
Can the wild water-lily restore;
What landscapes I read in the primrose's looks,
And what pictures of pebbled and minnowy brooks
In the vetches that tangled their shore.

Earth's cultureless buds, to my heart ye were dear,
Ere the fever of passion or ague of fear
Had scathed my existence's bloom;
Once I welcome you more, in life's passionless stage,
With the visions of youth to revisit my age,
And I wish you to grow on my tomb.—CAMPBELL

156.

Wol. CROMWELL, I did not think to shed a tear
In all my miseries; but thou hast forced me,
Out of thy honest truth, to play the woman.
Let's dry our eyes; and thus far hear me, Cromwell:
And—when I am forgotten, as I shall be,
And sleep in dull cold marble, where no mention
Of me more must be heard of—say, I taught thee,
Say, Wolsey,—that once trod the ways of glory
And sounded all the depths and shoals of honour,—
Found thee a way, out of his wreck, to rise in;
A sure and safe one, though thy master missed it.
Mark but my fall, and that that ruined me.
Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ambition:
By that sin fell the angels; how can man, then,
The image of his Maker, hope to win by 't?
Love thyself last: cherish those hearts that hate thee.
Corruption wins not more than honesty.
Still in thy right hand carry gentle peace,
To silence envious tongues. Be just, and fear not.
Let all the aims thou aim'st at be thy country's,
Thy God's, and truth's: then if thou fall'st, O Cromwell,
Thou fall'st a blessed martyr. Serve the King;
And—pr'ythee lead me in:

There take an inventory of all I have,
To the last penny; 't is the King's: my robe,
And my integrity to Heaven, is all
I dare now call my own. O Cromwell, Cromwell!
Had I but served my God with half the zeal
I served my King, He would not in mine age
Have left me naked to mine enemies.—SHAKESPEARE.

157.

Is this the region, this the soil, the clime,
Said then the lost archangel, this the seat
That we must change for heaven, this mournful gloom
For that celestial light? Be it so, since he,
Who now is Sovereign, can dispose and bid
What shall be right: farthest from him is best,
Whom reason hath equall'd, force hath made supreme
Above his equals. Farewell, happy fields,
Where joy for ever dwells: hail, horrors; hail,
Infernal world; and thou, profoundest hell,
Receive thy new possessor; one who brings
A mind not to be changed by place or time.
The mind is its own place, and in itself
Can make a heaven of hell, a hell of heaven?
What matter where, if I be still the same,
And what I should be, all but less than he
Whom thunder hath made greater? Here at least
We shall be free; the Almighty hath not built
Here for his envy, will not drive us hence.
Here we may reign secure, and in my choice
To reign is worth ambition, though in hell:
Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.—MILTON.

158.

ALL the bells of heaven may ring,
All the birds of heaven may sing,

All the wells on earth may spring,
All the winds on earth may bring,
All sweet sounds together;
Sweeter far than all things heard,
Hand of harper, tone of bird,
Sound of woods at sundawn stirred,
Welling water's winsome word,
Wind in warm wan weather,

One thing yet there is, that none
Hearing ere its chime be done,
Knows not well the sweetest one
Heard of man beneath the sun,
Hoped in heaven hereafter;
Soft and strong and loud and light,
Very sound of very light
Heard from morning's rosiest height,
When the soul of all delight
Fills a child's clear laughter.

Golden bells of welcome rolled
Never forth such notes, nor told
Hours so blithe in tones so bold,
As the radiant mouth of gold
Here that rings forth heaven.
If the golden-crested wren
Were a nightingale—why, then,
Something seen and heard of men
Might be half as sweet as when
Laughs a child of seven.—SWINBURNE

PART IV.

NOTES.

The dark figures refer to the passages, the light figures to the lines.

1. 2. **obtained**: use *remporter*.
3. **disguised himself**: the past definite should be employed throughout.
4. **harper**: *joueur de harpe*: for "as a," see § 186, 6. **entered**: use *pénétrer dans* (§ 14). **to**: *auprès de*.
5. **for music**: *de musicien*.

2. 2. **into the presence**: *en présence*.
3. **in arms**: *à la tête d'une armée*.
4. **I came**: past indefinite.
6. **the attendants**: *les gens de la suite*. **fell**: use *se jeter*. **with their swords**: *l'épée à la main* (§ 167, 5).
7. **survived**: see § 14. The past definite should be used.
8. **of which . . .** : begin a new sentence—"of these nine years . . ." **a prisoner**: omit the indefinite article (§ 186, 2). **the Tower**: *la Tour de Londres*.

3. 2. **James the Second's precautions for escape**: say—"the precautions which James II. had taken to flee."
3. **were perfectly successful**: say—"succeeded completely."
7. **to meet him**: *à sa rencontre*.
10. **were**: *êtes arrivé*. **first**: say—"the first."

4. 1. **a firm hold**: *de ferme appui* (§ 172, note). **feet**: *pattes* (f.).
2. **yet immediately**: begin a fresh sentence—"in spite of that, it renewed . . . "
5. **recommenced**: *recommença de nouveau*.
9. **I will**: use *vouloir*. **the best**: see § 59. **I have already . . .**: say—"I have already succumbed . . . under."
10. **forces**: *nombre* (m.).
12. **may be successful**: say—"perhaps will succeed."

5. 1. **has occurred in**: *a éprouvé.*

3. **laid . . . in ruins**: *a renversé.* As this is a journalistic account of a recent event, the past indefinite is used (§ 32).

4. **destruction**: *ravages* (m. pl.).

5. **on the previous occasion**: *la fois précédente.*

6. **almost destroyed**: supply—"entirely." **escaped**: use the pluperfect.

8. **it is known**: *il est avéré;* see § 24.

9. **and about eighty injured**: say—"and that about eighty have been injured."

6. 1. **was born**: *naquit.* The past definite of *naître* is used in speaking of those who are dead, but "I was born" is *je suis né.*

2. **in the year**: *en* or *l'an* or *en l'an.*

3. **than**: see § 184, 1. **cities**: *de villes.*

7. 1. **on**: *dans.*

2. **which he had discovered**: say—"discovered by him."

3. **in his hand**: see § 167, 5.

5. **long**: *longuement.* Omit "to see."

6. **beards**: see § 214.

7. **natives**: *naturels du pays.*

8. **who had descended**: omit "who had"; see § 227.

8. 1. **had . . . built**: use the past definite of *faire*, followed immediately by "to build"; see § 63. Put "a monastery" after "battlefield"; see § 202.

2. **Queen**: see § 167, 2.

4. **so**: *c'est pourquoi;* see § 26. **ladies-in-waiting**: *dames de compagnie.*

5. **canvas**: supply *de* after "canvas," and see § 159.

6. **worsted**: omit.

7. **from . . . until**: *depuis . . . jusqu'à.*

8. **by**: *sous.*

9. 2. **hoping**: say—"in the hope of." **whilst . . .**: supply "he was."

5. **a poor peasant**: supply *c'est.*

6. **supply them**: *y pourvoir.*

7. **whether Solon . . .**: say—"if, at least, Solon did not believe him happy, while admitting even that he was (*subj.*) not the most happy of men."

10. **pronounced**: *salué du nom de.*

10. 3. **richest**: see § 59.
4. **the reconquest of**: say—"to re-conquer" (§ 207).
5. **at his own expense**: *à ses propres frais.*
6. **the purpose of**: *omit.*
8. **Eastern**: say—"of the East," *l'Orient* (m.).
9. **silk stuffs**: *des soieries* (f. pl.).
12. **taken**: *mis.*

11. 1. **in Italy**: *d'Italie.*
5. **go**: omit. **unpunished**: say—"without punishing them."
7. **lost**: use the pluperfect. **just as I am**: *tout comme je le suis* (§ 177).
9. **there is not**: supply *en* (§ 179). **who would have**: see § 58.
11. **now**: *en ce moment.*

12. 1. **in**: *sur.*
2. **where**: *à l'endroit où.* **stands now**: *se dresse aujourd'hui* (§ 250).
3. **were hushed**: use the past definite of *se taire.*
4. **he had made**: see § 107.
5. **to her bosom**: *sur son cœur.*
6. **she was heard**: see § 237, 2.
7. **from the lofty scaffold**: *du haut de l'échafaud.* **I have great fear**: *j'ai grand'peur;* see § 184, 2.
8. **were**: see § 251. **of God**: *du Ciel.*
10. **girl**: *jeune fille;* this is the usual way of rendering the English word.
11. **there was one cry**: *on l'entendit pousser ce cri.*

13. 1. **it was**: *ce fut.*
2. **as a**: *en sa qualité de;* see § 186, 6.
4. **it was**: *il était.*
6. **was not . . . erased**: *ne s'effaça pas* (§ 237, 3).
10. **held up**: use *présenter.*
11. **were to**: see § 24, iv.
12. **than**: say—"than that."

14. 1. **stood**: *se tenaient;* see § 250. **ready for**: say—"ready to receive."
2. **coming across**: say—"advancing from the other side of."
3. **about nine o'clock**: see § 260.
4. **they came near**: say—"the enemy arrived." **now**: say—"then."

14. 6. **in**: say—"divided into" (§ 277).

9. **where**: see note on § 12, 2. **is**: *se trouve* (§ 250).

10. **native Normans**: *Normands d'origine.*

12. **where**: say—"and where." **stood ready for them**: say—"awaited them."

15. 3. **assume the government**: *prendre en main les rênes du gouvernement.*

6. **she embarked**: see § 20, note. **pensively**: translate by the adjective.

10. **greatly cherished and admired**: *objet de beaucoup d'amour et d'admiration.*

16. 3. **the unwilling leader**: say—"unwillingly the leader."

5. **some persons**: *quelqu'un.*

7. **hold out**: *tenir.*

9. **insisted on**: *exigea.*

10. **numbers**: say—"a great number"; see § 4. **people**: say—"citizens."

17. 1. **has already been mentioned**: see § 153.

2. **when**: omit (§ 248).

3. **effects**: use the singular. **for which reason . . .**: *aussi vous conseille-t-on toujours;* see §§ 198, iii. and 227.

6. **with it**: *y.*

11. **river**: *rivière* not *fleuve*, the latter being usually applied to large rivers.

18. 3. **on the first evening**: *le soir même.*

4. **sad complaints**: *qu'on se plaignait amèrement.*

5. **the flocks and herds**: *des troupeaux de moutons et de gros bétail.* There is only one word in French for "flock" and "herd."

6. **beast**: *fauve* (m.). This word is used of ferocious wild beasts.

7. **was doing**: supply "still."

8. **them**: *les assistants* (§ 224). **him**: say—"this lion."

11. **he was so small**: say—"he would find him too small."

19. 2. **the sleep**: *du sommeil.* The cognate accusative is usually represented in French by an adverbial genitive.

3. **as**: say—"as it."

6. **will have been deaf**: say—"will be deaf."

7. **to do**: *agir.* **that was thy portion**: *voilà quel fut ton lot* (§ 139, note).

19. 8. **persons**: use the singular.
10. **it**: say—"this destiny" (§ 224). **from thyself**: *à tes yeux.*

20. 2. **every preparation . . .**: see § 237, 2.
3. **give**: *faire.* **the beauty and serenity of the weather**: say—"the beautiful and serene weather" (§ 209).
7. **of gallant bearing**: *au port élégant.*
8. **to meet him**: *pour aller à sa rencontre. Rencontrer* alone is not used in the sense of ceremonial meeting.
9. **has been compared**: see § 237, 2.
11. **were paraded**: *on fit parader.*
13. **of gold**: *en or.*

21. 1. **flew like lightning**: say—"spread with the rapidity of lightning." For the order of words see § 192.
2. **the people**: *on.*
6. **helpless**: *abandonnée.*
7. **was**: see § 250.

22. 1. **visited**: use *faire visite à.*
2. **address him**: say—"address myself to him."
6. **I should see him**: *je venais à le voir*: see §§ 13, 38.

23. 1. **stale**: use *caduc.*
2. **for endeavours**: say—"for having endeavoured" (§ 207).
3. **to the best of my understanding**: *dans la mesure de mon intelligence.*
6. **they are**: *il doit* (§ 6).
8. **or**: *ou bien. Bien* is frequently thus used to emphasize an alternative.
9. **to**: *pour.*

24. 2. **trembled**: say—"began to tremble."
3. **in**: *qui ébranlait* (§ 277).
5. **or**: *autrement.*
6. **was no more than**: *n'était que.*
8. **to swim to the ship**: *pour gagner le vaisseau à la nage.*
11. **with**: omit (§ 278).

25. 2. **of**: *que lui offrait* (§ 277).
3. **her power**: say—"it" (§ 217).
6. **their respect for**: *le respect qu'ils portaient à* (§ 277). **the old line . . .**: *la longue suite de ses ancêtres.*

25. 7. **which they enjoyed**: see § 14.
8. **these were**: *c'étaient là* (§ 139). **the only**: see § 59, note.
10. **foreign**: *du dehors.*
11. **treason**: use the plural.

26. 1. **a poor widow . . .**: say—"there was once a poor widow who . . ." **with a garden . . .**: say—"before which was (*s'étendait*) a garden."
2. **one bearing**: put a semi-colon, and continue—"one bore . . ."
10. **in the household**: *dans les travaux du ménage.* **read aloud to her**: *lui faisait la lecture à haute voix.*

27. 2. **low in rank**: *d'un grade peu élevé.*
3. **honour**: use the plural.
4. **young of days**: *d'un âge tendre.*
7. **girl**: see note on 12, 10. **disguised in men's clothing**: *qui se cachait sous des vêtements d'homme* (§ 246).
9. **watched his looks**: *épiaient son regard.*

28. 2. **being in high spirits on account of**: *rassurés par.*
7. **the door**: supply—"of it."
8. **cries for mercy**: *supplications* (f.).
10. **that the Nabob**: *que celui-ci* (§ 217).

29. 1. **this speech**: *ces paroles.* **he raised his hand**: see § 167, 5.
3. **ordered him to be taken**: see § 72.
6. **made . . . ask**: say—"ordered . . . to ask."
7. **by this time . . . .**: *cependant s'était un peu calmé.*
8. **so**: *aussi*; see § 198.

30. 2. **in weather so cold**: *par un si grand froid.* **over**: omit.
3. **after trial**: say—"after having been tried" (§ 207).
4. **by authority**: *d'après l'ordre.*
5. **publicly**: *en place publique.*
6. **the office of king**: *la royauté.*
9. **including**: *en comptant.*
10. **expressing**: see § 239.
12. **to take only a pledge**: *à faire seulement prêter serment.*
13. **to**: *dans.*

31. 1. **the grandson . . . the founder**: see § 186, 1.
3. **on the whole**: *en somme.* Begin the sentence with this phrase.

31. **7. from**: say—"in."
9. **and gathered**: put a semi-colon, and say—"he gathered."
11. **title**: *nom.*
13. **the latter**: *ce dernier* (§ 133).
14. **Charles the Fifth**: see § 158, 3, note 1.
15. **by which**: see § 202. **as a**: *en tant que.*

32. 2. **sitting**: *assis.*
3. **by**: *auprès de.*
4. **his instructions**: see § 187.
5. **weak**: say—"weakened."
7. **as a hermit would**: *en ermite.*
10. **he had**: see § 107.
12. **so**: *c'est ainsi que* (§ 26).
14. **its**: see § 167, 5, note 2.

33. 2. **whatever sorrows**: say—"and the sorrows."
3. **allowed**: use *laisser;* see § 63.
6. **than**: see § 184, 1.
9. **aid**: *secours* (m. pl.).
10. **so earnestly**: *avec tant d'ardeur.*
11. **truly**: use the adverb *tout* (§ 146).

34. 1. **of De Vere**: *des de Vere.*
3. **the crisis of peril**: say—"this perilous crisis" (§ 208). Put the phrase after "Elizabeth."
4. **rode . . . through**: *parcourait à cheval.*
5. **shouting**: *qui poussaient des cris de joie* (§ 238).
8. **meant**: *en pensait.*
9. **insisted on his speaking out**: *insista pour qu'il parlât ouvertement* (§ 241).
11. **I have not . . . the name of**: *je ne passe pas . . . pour.*
12. **fine fellows**: *braves compagnons.* **are praying**: use *désirer.*
14. **cannot**: see § 91.

35. 1. **I was born**: see note on § 6, 2. **stood**: *s'élevait:* see § 250.
2. **and a broad stream**: insert a semi-colon and reconstruct thus—"a broad stream ran round it (*tout autour*), on the banks of which . . ."
4. **seem**: omit.
6. **by the edge of**: *le long de.*
7. **about**: omit.
8. **each**: see § 162.

36. 3. **under**: say—"under the command of."
4. **had invaded**: see § **33**.
7. **entire subjugation**: see § **170**.
8. **an arrangement with the French generals**: see § **202**.
13. **more**: *plus vivement.* **than was to be expected**: *qu'on n'aurait pu le supposer;* see §§ **177**, note 4, **181**. **from**: *d'après;* cp. **33**, 7.

37. 1. **the easy reduction**: reconstruct thus—"the ease with which Normandy was conquered after the fall of Château-Gaillard, which took place some years later . . ."
3. **were mingled in him**: *se confondaient en lui.*
7. **were its walls**: see § **42**, 3, note.
11. **whose fall**: *qui.* **had an angel . . .**: see § **40**.
12. **from heaven**: *venu du ciel.*
13. **cool**: *spirituel.*

38. 2. **as**: *que le sont* (§ **177**).
5. **maker**: *éditeur.* **had been fool enough to**: *avait eu la sottise de.*
6. **Bickerstaff had rejoined**: omit full stop and say—"to which Bickerstaff . . ."
9. **was long in convulsions of laughter**: *s'en tordit longtemps de rire.*

39. 2. **happily**: *par bonheur.*
4. **and their horses too**: say—"with their horses."
6. **the air**: use the plural.
7. **both**: render this by putting *à la fois* after the verb.
8. **whirlwind**: *remous* (m.).
10. **one**: *l'un.*
11. **coming up**: see § **239**.

40. 2. **rank**: *débordant.*
3. **line**: *cordon* (m.).
10. **whilst calling out . . .**: *en même temps qu'elle anime d'une vigueur presque surnaturelle.*
13. **particle**: *brin* (m.).

41. 3. **brought . . . down**: use *amener.* **came**: use the pluperfect.
7. **at any but relations' houses**: *à moins que ce ne fût chez des parents.*
9. **with large noses**: *au nez fort* (§ **214**). **the most helpless creatures**: *les êtres les plus incapables de se tirer d'affaire;* see § **59**.

42. 1. **when**: *que.*

4. **was severed**: use a reflexive verb.

6. **was left . . .**: use the impersonal construction—*il ne resta qu'une dignité . . .*

7. **differing . . .**: say—"of different races, tongues, and religions."

11. **passed over**: *se produisit dans.*

43. 2. **to**: *de.*

5. **was laid by**: *reposait.*

6. **called Johnson . . .**: say—"invoked the help of Johnson."

7. **the latter**: see note on **31**, 13. **as a sort of**: *en guise de*, see § 186, 6.

11. **glanced over**: say—"threw a glance over." **ran out and offered it**: say—"went away running to offer it."

12. **pounds**: *livres sterling.* The invariable adjective *sterling* must always be used in reference to the English pound.

14. **which**: see § 117. **read a sharp lecture**: *donner une bonne semonce.*

44. 1. **left it free . . .**: say—"left to Peterborough the liberty."

3. **upon it**: *d'après cette dépêche* (§ 224).

4. **over-reached themselves**: use *se fourvoyer.* **by an exaggerated estimate of**: *pour s'être exagéré;* see § 69.

6. **how little we are missed**: *combien peu nous manquons aux autres.*

9. **unlike**: *au contraire de.*

10. **that conciliation is . . .**: say—"that one of the great duties of a chief is to incline (*tendre*) to conciliation."

12. **had acted**: *avait eu affaire.*

13. **soldiers and civilians**: *les fonctionnaires militaires et civils.*

45. 1. **he who**: see § 135. **whatever books**: say—"whatever may be the books which" (§ 152).

3. **who are**: omit.

6. **alone . . . alone**: *solitaire . . . seul.*

10. **knowledge**: *connaissances* (f. pl.).

11. **has**: use *porter.*

46. 1. **at home**: *dans notre pays.*

2. **from the Crimea**: *de Crimée.*

3. **foes far more formidable than the Russians**: put this after "bad management," which may be rendered by *le manque d'organisation* (§ 220).

46. 4. the Black Sea . . . : use the active voice.

7. was of incalculable injury: *fit un tort incalculable.* the loss of life: *le nombre des morts.*

11. metal substance: *objet* (m.) *de métal.* with his bare hand: *à main nue.*

12. behind him: *y.*

13. were: see § 250. a wretchedly disorganized state: *un triste état de désorganisation* (§ 220).

47. 3. club: *cercle* (m.). to meet at one another's houses: *pour se réunir tantôt chez l'un tantôt chez l'autre.*

5. minister and all-powerful: say—"all-powerful minister."

6. he himself: omit "he." fine culture: *les beaux-arts.*

9. minds: use the singular (§ 214).

12. holding: say—"and to hold."

13. they consented: *ils y consentirent.*

48. 2. unnecessarily: *à tort.* you are: omit.

3. I pledge you . . . : *je vous donne ma parole d'homme d'honneur et de Français;* see § 186, 6.

4. we intend you no injury: say—"we have not the intention of injuring you."

6. it will not do: say—"it is useless."

8. from: *d'après.*

10. the thing stands thus: *voici la chose.*

11. nothing which: see § 58.

17. an innocent man: see § 215.

18. point out: *dévoiler.*

49. 3. and one of his shooting party: *et prenait part à ses chasses.*

4. turned: use the passive of *amener.*

5. came out to luncheon: *sortit goûter.*

13. the prince had been inquired after: *c'était du prince que la princesse s'était informée.*

50. 1. none who were conscious of guilt: say—"no individual knowing himself guilty."

5. that they were no . . . : *de n'être plus infestés.*

8. were restored: see § 1.

9. a purse of gold: *une bourse pleine d'or.*

51. 1. pray: *je vous en prie.* be sure: *ne manquez pas de.*

2. guess: *en juger.*

51. 3. **I am . . . likely**: say—"which in all probability I am (use *devoir*) to;" see § 59.

5. **therefore**: *donc.*

6. **as cosily as may be in**: *avec tout l'agrément que me donnera.*

7. **is**: *se trouve être.*

8. **in the world**: *d'ici-bas.*

52. 1. **that adjoined**: *faisant suite à* (§ 227).

3. **first wood fire**: supply—"of the year."

4. **though they could not see it**: say—"without seeing it," and put after "hear."

5. **late Indian summer**: *été de la Saint-Martin.*

6. **before long**: say—"the first frosts would not be long (*ne devaient pas tarder*);" see § 257.

10. **there was plenty of it**: *elle éclairait abondamment.*

53. 4. **harassed**: use *déchirer.*

11. **adopted from**: say—"borrowed from."

12. See § 237.

17. **burst into**: *se déborder dans.*

19. **art**: omit.

54. 2. **dear boy**: say—"my dear son," and use *tu* throughout.

8. **assistance**: use *aider.*

11. **than to write a good letter**: say—"than to be able to write letters well."

12. **aim at**: *viser à.*

16. **you should only consider**: say—"all that you have to do is to consider."

55. 8. **strong**: say="advantageous."

12. **had just marched**: say—"had just made a march."

15. **to prevent . . . from**: see § 184. 4.

56. 2. **little more than a three days' journey**: say—"the journey (*trajet*) lasts hardly more than three days by rail."

6. **as the guests of, etc.**: this should come after "at Bombay" to avoid ambiguity.

7. **halted**: use *passer.*

8. **ever raised by man**: see § 59.

10. **it was not until the morning**: *ce ne fut que le matin.*

17. **from personal observation**: *d'après ce que j'en ai pu voir de mes yeux.*

18. **implicitly**: say—"without reserve."

57. 4. **hard by**: say—"close by."

7. **resembling**: translate either by an adjective or by a relative clause.

8. **signal**: *éclatant.*

14. **of itself**: *à elle seule.* **to entitle**: say—"to secure for."

17. **taken**: say—"made prisoners."

58. 3. **would have sat him down**: say—"was preparing to," or, "was about to."

4. **came up to him**: use present participle.

5. **such as to deserve**: *de ceux qui méritent.*

7. **more honourable**: say—"in honour they are above."

9. **with his scanty wit**: *assez dépourvu d'esprit.*

14. **right well**: *de toutes pièces.*

15. **turned his horse's head**: *tourna bride.*

16. **went off homewards**: *regagna le camp.*

17. **although he behaved badly, he did better**: say—"his conduct, although it was bad was better (*valoir mieux*)."

59. 4. **My Lord**: *Monseigneur.*

11. **it was impossible**: see § 47.

15. **does**: use *arriver* (impers.).

17. **in haste**: *en toute hâte.*

20. **the rain fell in torrents**: say—"it rained in torrents (*à verse*)."

21. **was greatly angered that**: see § 46.

22. **should seem wiser**: say—"could know more about it (*en savoir plus long*)."

60. 1. **of twenty**: in French "years" may not be omitted.

3. **must**: use *se voir forcé.*

4. **was he dissatisfied**: say—"was it his work which"; use *déplaire à.*

8. **be taken into the . . . service**: *entrer au service.*

10. **or if he had**: say—"if he had one."

13. **it was an admission**: say—"it was to admit."

14. **sires and dams**: *père et mère* (sing.).

16. **peculiarly human relationship**: *parent tout particulier à l'homme.*

19. **admit . . . to be**: use *reconnaître . . . comme.*

20. Supply "as such" (*pour tel*).

61. 1. **almost night**: *entre chien et loup.*

2. **before he got many miles**, etc.: say—"he had hardly proceeded some miles on the moor (*lande*, f.)."

6. **wonder**: use a verb

8. **away**: *au loin.*

9. **hive-like**: *en forme de ruche.*

10. **he was within**: *il en était à.*

14. **when he was**: use present participle of *être.*

21. **when they want me**: see § 34.

62. 1. **in October**: insert "month."

2. **work**: say—"preach the Gospel."

3. **detained**: say—"obliged to stop."

8. **as giving us additional evidence of**: say—"for it is an additional (*de plus*) evidence concerning."

11. **the table was cleared**: *on desservit.*

20. **I have it**: *oui, c'est ça.*

21. **they will do**: *ça suffira.*

26. **you took a hard hammer**, etc.: say—"the lesson is stern, but it has entered my thick brains (*cervelle*, f.)."

63. 1. **in**: *par.*

4. **in time of difficulties**: *lorsqu'il est dans l'embarras.*

11. **daily intercourse**: *les relations quotidiennes.*

13. **spoken**: omit. **about**: *au sujet de.*

16. **who sees with clearer eyes**: *qui y voit plus clair.* **may be of inestimable value**: say—"can render us the greatest service."

21. **convert**: *faire de.*

64. 1. **minute**: *détaillé.* **manners**: say—"life."

4. **prodigal dispensations**: say—"the prodigality with which . . . dispensed."

6. **political**: say—"an effect of politics." **was a foreigner**: say—"as a foreigner."

10. **to enjoy**: say—"in the hope of enjoying."

11. **airy honour**: *élévation vaine.* **knighthood**: say—"the rank of knight."

17. **plate**: *vaisselle plate.*

20. **arts of the money trader**: *les artifices des manieurs d'argent.*

22. **serious**: use *fécond.*

65. 1. **were we to**: see § 38.

3. **itself**: omit.

65. **4.** in this particular : *sous ce rapport.*
5. upon computation makes : say—"gives a total of."
8. whole circle : supply—"of human knowledge."
9. history, politics, etc. : see § 167.
11. are taught : see § 237. the letters : say—"to read," or, "the alphabet."
15. upon less easy terms : *à moins.* at this rate : *à ce compte.*

66. 1. early : *tout jeune.*
3. nor anything : say—"and nothing."
4. widely : use *si.* 9. on : *par.*
11. to join : use *se jeter dans.*
16. as : *à mesure que.*
19. for ever : omit.

67. 3. temper : *naturel.*
4. we take a more familiar view : *nous considérons sous un jour plus familier.*
8. was no military character : say—"had nothing military." at home : say—"with what happened in the interior."
13. the want of this sort, etc. : say—"it is in the want of . . . that we find, etc."
14. to pass a judgment : *porter un jugement.*
18. who fails : see § 34.
19. because of : say—"due to."

68. 1. French court : say—"court of the King of France."
5. if lost : see § 237, 2.
12. should appear : see § 45, ii. wearing : use *parer.*
13. was assured : see § 184, 5.
17. made every effort : *mit tout en œuvre.*
18. whom they sought : *à la recherche duquel ils s'étaient mis.*
19. three of them : *trois d'entre eux.* to oppose them : *après eux.*

69. 6. holy men and women : use only the adjective.
7. was never tired of : *ne se lassait jamais de.*
10. next few years : say—"the years that followed."
11. visited : say—"occupied." one or other : *alternativement.*
16. ride : *monter à cheval.*
18. to seek out : *se mettre à la recherche de.*
20. Joan the Maid : *Jeanne la Pucelle.*

70. 4. and note : instead of repeating *si* use *que*, but see § 54, note. running north and south : *qui la traversent du nord au sud.*

70. 7. **in these narrow streets**: this should be taken before "great houses" to avoid ambiguity.

10. **with any view to**: *en vue de.*

12. **city of**: use *agglomération.*

13. **this was by no means the case**: say—"far from being the case (*en être ainsi*), it was, on the contrary."

14. **nearly all of which**: *dont la presque totalité.*

18. **to endow**: *enrichir de leurs dons.*

71. 1. **before (dawn)**: use *devançant.*

3. **on the first of September**: say—"fought on, etc."

4. **after negotiating, etc.**: say—"after having spent the night up to one o'clock in negotiating."

8. **I rode towards**: *je me dirigeai à cheval vers.* **washing**: *faire ma toilette.*

11. **to dismount**: *mettre pied à terre.* **as at**: supply—"as I would have done at."

16. **I was unacquainted with**: *je connaissais assez mal.*

19. **he drove**: *la voiture se mit en route.*

20. **ridden after me**: use *accourir à cheval après.*

72. 2. **a good bit**: *un bon moment.*

3. **when I did get to sleep**: use *finir par.*

6. **people were shouting outside**: *on poussait des clameurs au dehors.*

8. **just got on**: say—"just time enough to slip on (*passer*)."

9. **just put something round you**: say—"dress no matter how."

11. **just outside**: *à.*

13. **how it was**: use *se faire* (impersonal).

15. **screaming for help**: *criant au secours.*

73. 1. **rang the bell**: *sonna;* make a temporal clause of this, and let "he opened" be the principal clause of the sentence.

2. **appeared**: say—"answered his call."

8. **kind support**: say—"the valuable help he provided for her."

10. **at once fetched**: say—"ran and fetched." **put secretly**: use *glisser.*

18. **someone desires my ruin**: say—"to ruin me."

74. 2. **falling to decay**: *délabré.*

5. **leading to**: use *donner accès à.*

9. **to go to-night**: say—"to spend the night."

13. **with . . . on her**: say—"clothed in."

74. 15. **than she must have been**: see § 184, i.
16. **like in features to**: say—"the very portrait of."
19. **the best thou canst find**: *ce que tu trouveras de mieux.*
20. **food and liquor**: say—"to eat and drink."

75. 2. **rode**: use *se rendre à cheval.*
3. **gentleman on horseback**: express by one substantive.
11. **if**: use *quand* and see § 34.
12. **riding through the streets**: say—"in the streets a gentleman on horseback." 14. **riding**: use *chevaucher.*

76. 1. **one of the most generous of men**: *un homme des plus généreux.*
3. **a lad**: see § 186. **fifteen**: supply—"years."
7. **but had never**: say—"without ever having."
9. **blunt manner**: *façon grossière.* **come here**: *approchez un peu.*
10. **ought to have said**: use *s'y prendre.*
13. **to be graciously pleased**: *bien vouloir.*
15. **for yourself**: say—"for your trouble."

77. 3. **for this good purpose**: say—"in order to accomplish this charitable purpose."
4. **riding horse**: *cheval de selle.*
6. **ride his horse**: use *monter son cheval.* **unless**: see § 184, 3.
10. **to stir from the spot**: use *bouger.*
12. **when my money was all gone**: say—"when I had emptied my purse."
13. **to get him on**: say—"to persuade him to go on." **pretend**: not *prétendre* but *faire semblant.*

78. 3. **undergo training of a special character**: *subir un entrainement spécial.*
5. **permanent**: *nommé à titre permanent.*
7. **well-being of the service**: *bonne marche du service.*
11. **home**: *à l'intérieur*
12. **to know as much about**: *en savoir autant sur.*

79. 2. **in cultivating**: use substantive preceded by definite article
4. **exercise**: say—"physical exercise."
7. **snatches**: *des extraits.*
8. **to the fact of their being brief**: say—"to their briefness."
10. **reading**: use a substantive. **by forcing**: see § 76.
13. **it is**: use *s'agir de.*

79. 15. **on** : use a present participle, see § 277.

17. **as soon as they felt at all weary** : say—"at the first symptom of fatigue."

18. **again and again** : say—"in turn."

80. 4. **because they had**, etc. : begin with this clause for emphasis, say—"it is because, etc."

6. **lay** : *gisaient.* 13. **quite cross** : *contrarié.*

81. 2. **about** : omit. **he was eating his supper** : express as a clause qualifying "man" and incorporate in the previous sentence.

4. **Bruin** : *Martin.*

7. **might** : use *pouvoir* (imperfect indicative).

8. **was coming** : see § 27.

13. **at the great**, etc. : say—"at the sight of the great, etc."

82. 10. **to commence a law-suit against** : *intenter un procès à.*

11. **to give a decision** : *rendre un arrêt.* **His Majesty** : bear in mind that *Majesté* is feminine even when it refers to a man.

14. **as compensation for the injury he had done** : *à titre de dommages-intérêts.*

83. 3. **in the place of greatest danger** : *au plus fort du danger.*

8. **struck to the ground** : use *désarçonner* (to unhorse).

11. **the most distinguished note** : say—"the highest rank."

15. **broken up** : use *lever.*

19. **upon the spot** : *sur les lieux.* **from the want of** : *faute de.*

84. 5. **give quarter** : *faire quartier.*

7. **he would hang them** : say—"he would have them hung."

85. 1. **had called into existence . . .** : say—"had created in England a new class of men."

4. **had generally sprung** : use the imperfect. **neither ancient nor opulent** : see § 219.

5. **at an early age** : *fort jeunes.*

7. **it was natural that** : supply "these men," and omit "they."

9. **should exhibit** : subjunctive. **some of the awkwardness . . . upstarts** : *une grossièreté, un luxe de parvenus.*

12. **surprising, if not disgusting, to** : say—"which astonished, which disgusted even" (§ 222).

15. **sink** : *rentrer.* **obscurity at home** : *l'obscurité première.* **and, as they had** : omit "and," and begin a new sentence ; omit "it was natural," and say simply "they displayed a little obtrusively (*ils taisaient valoir d'une façon quelque peu encombrante*)."

85. 19. **there was**: say—"there arose" (*surgir*).

22. **long continued to distinguish**: say—"was long the distinctive characteristic."

86. 1. **dull as to**: *borné que de.*

2. **the travelling**: begin a fresh sentence here.

3. **the only way**: see § 59.

8. **and therefore**: *et c'est pourquoi.*

10. **in his nature**: *de nature*

13. **boys**: *jeunes gens.* **so that**: *au point que.*

14. **demolished**: use *mettre en pièces.*

16. **prevented them**: supply *en*, "from so doing."

19. **as had been predicted**: use *l'on*, and supply *le*, "it." **pray**: *je vous en prie;* cp. § 51, 1.

20. **if he had not read it**: see § 91.

87. 1. **sloping**: *à pente douce.*

2. **sheltered with**: begin a fresh sentence—"a fine wood sheltered us behind, a brook prattled in front."

3. **on one side**: supply—"we had."

5. **having given**: say—"and I had given a hundred pounds (*cent livres de pot-de-vin*)."

6. **good-will**: *cession* (f.).

7. **hedge-rows**: *les haies qui les entouraient.*

10. **an air of great snugness**: *un air très coi.*

15. **coppers**: *la batterie de cuivre;* omit "being," and make the preceding enumeration the subject of *faisaient un effet agréable à la vue et tenaient lieu de beaux ameublements.*

19. **within**: *dépendant de.*

20. **with two beds**: *à deux lits.*

88. 5. **with the abruptness . . .**: say—"of which one has slightly softened the curve."

6. **comb**: *crête* (f.). **with a battle-axe attachment**: *montée d'une hache d'armes.*

7. **passing boats**: see § 222.

9. **black**: *en noir.*

10. **became . . . and**: say—"having become," and omit "and."

12. **be substituted**: supply *y*, "for it."

15. **snubbing**: *réprimande* (f.).

18. **so let it remain**: see § 225.

89. 2. **when we know no harm of the possessor**: *quand nous n'avons rien à critiquer chez qui la possède.*

6. **though she would not**: *bien qu'il lui soit impossible.*

8. **form**: use the plural.

11. **in person and character**: *dans sa personne et par son caractère.*

16. **her immediate connections**: *ceux qui vivent dans son intimité.*

18. **opinions**: use the singular. **disposition**: use the plural. **if it be but**: *ne serait ce que.*

20 **and vice-versâ**: *et il en est inversement de même.*

21. **heart**: *âme* (f.).

90. 1. **had Elizabeth's opinions . . .**: say—"if Elizabeth had only formed for herself an opinion from (*d'après*) her own family."

5. **which youth and beauty generally give**: see § 217.

7. **very early in**: *peu après.* **in**: *dans la recherche de* (§ 277).

15. **he was very little . . .**: say—"he was only indebted for the amusement which she had procured for him by . . ."

17. **this is not**: see § 139.

91. 2. **I was exceedingly surprised with**: say—"I perceived," and begin the next sentence with "I was exceedingly surprised (*je fus frappé d'étonnement*)." This extract must be translated freely, Defoe's slipshod style being totally antagonistic to that of good French prose.

7. **I went up the shore and down the shore**: *je parcourus le rivage en tous sens.*

8. **I could see no other impression but that one**: *je n'aperçus aucune autre trace.*

9. **I went to it again to see**: *je revins vers l'empreinte; je voulais voir.*

10. **there was no room for that**: *il n'y avait pas à s'y tromper.*

12. **how it came . . .**: say—"How had this foot come there I knew it not, and could not in any way conceive it."

14. **like a man**: omit.

16. **not feeling . . . the ground I went on**: *sans seulement . . . me sentir marcher.* **but terrified . . .**: say—"I was absolutely terrified," and make the following gerunds into co-ordinate clauses (§ 245).

92. 2. **in a scrutiny of**: *à inventorier* (§ 207).

3. **there had been nothing like**: *on n'y avait mis.*

6. **in coin**: *en espèces.*

9. **by the tables**: *d'après les tableaux comparatifs.*

92. 10. **gold**: *en or.*

11. **money**: *monnaies* (f. pl.).

14. **we could make nothing of**: say—"it was impossible for us to decipher."

15. **the value of the jewels . . .**: this construction must be altogether altered; see § 178, note.

17. **some of them**: *dont quelques-uns* (§ 113).

18. **of them**: omit.

22. **the settings themselves . . .**: say—"as for the settings themselves, we put them apart: they appeared . . . beaten up with hammers;" use *briser à coups de marteau.*

93. 3. **we must concede thus much**: say—"we must make this concession."

10. **could**: use the subjunctive, the principal clause being dubitative; see § 47.

11. **not so**: *non point.*

12. **having once arisen**: *une fois née.*

16. **might**: use the conditional perfect.

19. **of things beyond the grave**: *de l'au-delà.*

94. 2. **sadly time-worn and weather-beaten**: *en fort piteux état et fort endommagée par la vieillesse;* see § 223.

6. **figured so gallantly**: *firent tant de prouesses chevaleresques.* Then omit "chivalrous."

11. **an obedient hen-pecked husband**: *un mari que sa femme faisait obéir à son gré.*

13. **that meekness of spirit**: *la douceur et l'égalité d'humeur.*

13. **which gained him**: *qui lui avaient valu.*

14. **for those men . . .**: say—"it is not rare, in fact, to find these qualities in (*chez*) the men who are under the discipline of shrews at home (*qu'a domptés une tyrannie domestique*)."

16. **tempers**: use the singular (§ 214).

17. **the fiery furnace of domestic tribulation**: *la haute température du foyer toujours en ébullition.*

18. **a curtain lecture**: *un sermon prononcé par la ménagère.* Then, for "sermons," say "preachers."

22. **was thrice blessed**: *avait reçu plus que triple part.*

95. 1. **in choosing persons**: *dans le choix de leur personnel* (§ 207).

3. **the common size**: *la moyenne.*

6. **to be comprehended only by**: *que puissent seules pénétrer.*

7. **of which there seldom . . .**: *comme un siècle en voit naître à peine deux ou trois.*

95. 9. to be in every man's power: *tout homme peut les posséder.*

12. **a course of study**: *des connaissances spéciales.*

13. **but they thought**: use the present.

16. **persons so qualified**: say "persons endowed with the latter but destitute of the former." **and, at least**: repeat—"they think (*estiment*)."

96. 4. reflected credit on: *ne pouvait que faire honneur à.*

6. **the turnings on the right . . .**: say—"the street corners which she was to turn on the right (*à droite*) and those which she was not to turn on the left."

9. **Boarding and Day Establishment**: *pensionnat et externat.* **which was**: see § 227.

14. **to pass that gate**: *à franchir le seuil de cette porte.*

16. **broad-brimmed**: *à larges bords* (§ 218).

18. **frowned on**: *restait sévèrement fermée devant.*

19. **mankind**: *le sexe masculin.*

97. 2. puzzling over . . .: *peinant à chercher le résultat d'une longue division.*

8. **a long stride . . .**: *de longues enjambées arpentèrent la salle.*

10. **herself**: *elle aussi.* **column**: *perche* (f.).

11. **had frowned on me so ominously**: say—"had regarded me with an eye so severe and so contemptuous."

13. **buttoned up**: *sanglé.*

14. **looking**: omit.

20. **my vicious nature**: *la perversité de ma nature* (§ 229).

21. **I had been looking out daily for the Coming Man**: *chaque jour j'épiais la venue inévitable de cet homme.*

27. **her eye**: *le regard de Mlle. Temple; son regard* would be ambiguous. **expecting**: begin a fresh sentence—"I expected."

28. **its dark orb . . .**: *ses yeux noirs se tourner vers moi chargés d'une expression de . . .*

30. **at the top of the room**: *au premier rang.*

31. **its import**: *le sens de ses paroles.*

98. 2. it: say—"of it."

3. **from among which . . .**: say—"from the midst of which its simple walls, of a bright and modest whiteness, shine . . ."

7. **peeps may be caught at**: *la vue peut s'échapper jusqu'à.*

12. **along which raves**: begin a fresh sentence—*un gros torrent s'y précipite.*

98. 13. **over a deep black part of the stream**: say—"at one of the deepest and gloomiest parts (*endroits*) of its course."

15. **the road that led to it . . .**: adopt an active construction, *les arbres, surplombant, couvraient d'une ombre épaisse . . .* ; then begin a fresh sentence with—"they cast (*répandaient*)."

21. **a most heretical disbeliever**: *un mécréant, qui ne croyait pas du tout . . .*

24. **over bush and brake**: *par-dessus taillis et buissons.*

25. **when**: say—"then."

27. **sprang away over**: say—"springing over . . . disappeared."

99. 2. **deaths**: see § 214.

3. **is more affecting**: say—"affects us more."

5. **and the reasons**: supply—"of this (*en*)." **first**: *d'abord.* Omit "that."

11. **secondly**: *ensuite.*

14. **thirdly**: *enfin.*

19. **as it were**: *pour ainsi dire.* **by**: *en vertu de* (§ 277).

21. **I find it impossible**: say—"it is impossible to me."

23. **any particular death**: *la mort d'un être quelconque.*

24. **besiegingly**: see § 256.

100. 1. **it was indeed**: begin—"Lovel was some time before . . ."

4. **obscurely lighted by**: use a relative construction, *qu'éclairaient à peine . . .* **latticed**: *à vitraux sertis de plomb.*

6. **limited in space**: say—"small."

7. **which, therefore . . .**: *aussi, les livres y étaient-ils entassés sur deux ou trois rangs de profondeur . . .*

12. **which was**: omit (§ 228).

14. **having their little . . .**: *aux petites ailes de canard entre lesquelles s'épanouissaient leurs grosses figures joufflues.*

19. **grim**: *à figures sévères.*

23. **on account of**: say—"and."

25. **panelled or wainscoted**: *orné de panneaux ou de lambris.*

27. **being**: omit.

28. **and as many . . .**: *d'autre part, autant de figures au regard sévère . . . images de ses propres ancêtres.*

33. **in the midst**: *au beau milieu.*

36. **which**: begin a fresh sentence—"superstitious eyes might have taken it . . ."

41. when discovered: *une fois trouvé.*

101. 2. **gathered in**: *s'était emparée de.*

4. **as that of going home**: say—"as to (*que de*) go home."

7. **half wild**: *un sauvageon.*

16. **were thieves**: *n'étaient qu'un tas de voleurs.*

17. **got**: see § 255. **to drive**: *comme monture.*

19. **had reached . . .**: say—"was at its height (*comble*), and that flight to (*auprès de*) the gipsies was . . ."

24. **who found fault with her**: *qui la trouvait fautive.*

27. **a letter . . . and just let him know**: *un billet dans lequel elle lui ferait connaître.*

102. 1. **some hardships in the life of plants**: *les misères des plantes.*

3. **between**: see § 277. **lives**: see § 214.

4. **the struggle for existence**: *la lutte pour la vie.*

9. **did but**: *n'a fait que.*

13. **and there are**: *et l'on observe.*

14. **there are not wanting**: begin the sentence with "those who" and end with "are by no means rare."

17. **nor even those**: *ceux-là même ne le sont pas* (§ 137).

20. **or a crystal of alum grow**: *ou président à la formation d'un cristal d'alun.*

22. **laying stress on**: *faire particulièrement remarquer.*

24. **pregnant**: *important.*

28. **any**: *n'importe quel* (§ 155).

31. **of to-day . . . of yesterday**: *actuelles . . . passées.*

35. **hard, matter of fact deductions**: *les déductions évidentes et indéniables.*

38. **into**: *à travers.*

41. **then, and not till then**: say—"then perhaps, and then only." **fit**: *armés.*

42. **start on our quest after**: say—"commence the study of."

103. 1. **I was thrown**: *je me trouvai placé.*

5. **I concluded**: supply "therefrom (*en*)."

8. **my own talk**: *ma conversation à moi.*

9. **knew . . . thought**: supply *en* with each of these verbs.

12. **directions**: *branches* (f.).

13. **the results of much observation**: say—"many fruitful observations."

14. **more than one**: see § 5, note.

16. **youthful**: see § 218, note.

17. **dull**: *borné.*

26. **get one of them**: *chambrer l'un d'entre eux.*

104. 2. from the site of: *de la place qu'avait occupée.*

5. **placed**: say—"it was constructed," and connect the following sentence by "and."

9. **less**: *auquel manquait.* **lattices**: *vitraux* (m.).

12. **a wondrous specimen**: say—"it was a wondrous specimen."

16. **of what . . .** : say—"which seemed . . . to consist only of fanciful open work (*découpures capricieuses*)."

18. **the house of Marney**: *la famille Marney.* Notice the omission of the preposition in such phrases.

20. **all perfect, and all of carved black oak**: say—"of old carved oak, perfectly preserved."

24. **ancient state and splendour**: say—"ancient and stately splendour."

26. **noble**: *gentleman.*

28. **you ascended . . .** : say—"one had access (*accédait*) to it by ascending . . . and after having traversed."

32. **rich in history**: *dont chacun avait une histoire intéressante.*

35. **even to this . . .** : say—"to this chamber, in spite of its royal dimensions . . ."

105. 2. much of his popularity . . . : this sentence must be inverted ; see § 178, note. Translate "we believe" by *selon nous.*

5. **it**: *cela.*

6. **which would otherwise . . .** : say—"which would not have failed to attack (*s'attaquer à*)."

7. **so great a favourite**: *autant le favori.*

11. **hearing**: omit.

17. **when burning with**: *alors qu'il était dévoré de.*

23. **in one**: *en une seule personne.* **heightened by . . .** : say—"and, in addition, something delicate which was no other than Addison himself."

26. **he went on in . . .** : say—"he traversed a series of great thoughts and in a language which . . ."

106. 7. they were more like each other: say—"they resembled each other more than do usually brothers ;" see § 184, 1, and § 177, note 1.

9. **that every face should be clean-shaven . . .** : say—"that every man should have the beard entirely shaved, that he should have the hair powdered and the neck (*nuque*) adorned . . ."

11. **biting winds . . .** : say—"the wind (*la bise*) had tanned them and the sun of the tropics had bronzed them."

106. 16. older: *d'un certain âge.*

18. **weather-beaten:** *vieux.*

20. **Red Indian faces:** *figures de peaux-rouges.*

21. **I could hardly . . . :** say—"I did not manage (*arriver*) to eat, so much I was occupied in watching them."

24. **I seemed to read:** *il me semblait lire* (§ 22).

107. 6. were offered: supply—"to the French poet."

13. **till his means . . . :** say—"as long as his resources were below his desires."

14. **his greediness for lucre . . . .** *son âpreté au gain se manifesta sans souci de.*

21. **the lady's:** say—"this lady's" (§ 133).

22. **was there ever:** *vit-on jamais.*

26. **with great dexterity:** say—"was crafty (*fin*) enough to play indifference."

27. **seemed inclined:** *se donna l'air.*

28. **of which the sense was that:** say—"according to which."

30. **soon carried:** see § 257.

33. **the end . . . :** say—"how would end relations which began (*débutaient*) thus;" see § 234.

108. 1. beyond control: say—"which one is powerless to control (*maîtriser*)." **it is like seeing:** *il semble voir.*

2. **gone mad:** say—"taken with sudden madness."

3. **she:** *le vaisseau.*

9. **half-stripped:** *à demi vêtus.*

14. **two apparently ladies:** *deux d'entre elles évidemment des femmes du monde.*

17. **at once and correctly judged to be the mate:** *qu'on prenait de suite, et avec raison, pour le second.*

19. **now only marked . . . :** say—"which, at this moment, only distinguished itself from the whitened sea as a spot (*tache*) more white still."

21. **head:** say—"prow."

22. **on board:** omit.

25. **was coming:** say—"was near."

29. **standing steady in:** *debout, impassibles, formant . . .*

109. 5. remains unchanged: say—"has not been modified."

6. **signatories to:** *cosignataires de.*

7. **the year:** *l'année courante.*

109. 8. **to dissuade**: *dans le but de déconseiller à.*

9. **they**: *les puissances* (§ 224).

13. **yet**: supply *à l'heure actuelle.*

20. **to terminate**: *l'expiration de* (§ 234).

24. **in consequence of . . . .**: *à la suite du fait que le gouvernement chinois avait transgressé.*

33. **held in celebration of**: say—"by which has been celebrated."

35. **the bond of union between**: say—"the ties which unite."

45. **of my officers of all ranks**: *dont ont fait preuve un grand nombre de fonctionnaires de tout rang.*

47. **and with an anxious desire to**: *et en ayant soin, au plus haut point, de.*

54. **which caused a large number of deaths**: *qui a sévi.*

58. **to prevent it from spreading**: say—"to prevent the propagation of the scourge."

60. **there is a steady decrease . . . .**: say—"one observes (*constate*) a continual diminution from the point of view as well of the number of sick as of the number of deaths."

110. 2. **the sound of**: omit.

3. **in the nose**: *du nez.*

4. **twang**: *cacophonie* (f.).

5. **when aggravated**: say—"when its sounds are swollen."

6. **would have some mercy on him**: *de compatir à ses souffrances.*

8. **a consultation of the clan . . . .**: say—"the clan, in an assembly held to settle (*vider*) the question, decided"

16. **is fain**: *en est réduit.*

20. **that looks into**: *sur.*

24. **in the way of**: omit these words and put the following substantives in the plural.

30. **where we dined by invitation**: say—"who had invited us to dinner."

31. **savours of**: *rappelle.*

34. **to gentlemen dependents . . . .**: *pour des parents du sexe masculin qui vivent aux crochets de la famille, et pour les pique-assiettes.*

36. **occasional**: express this by using the verb *improviser.*

37. **heath**: use the plural.

42. **so much to my satisfaction**: say—"so well."

43. **it**: say—"this couch."

111. 6. **from the world**: omit. **in taking administration**: *à sa prise de gestion.*

111. 7. **the coat . . . :** see § 178.

8. **hold together:** use *durer*.

18. **had laid a foundation:** *eut jeté les bases de l'instruction de Le Fèvre.*

20. **Whitsuntide:** supply *aux vacances de.*

23. **when:** *à cette époque.*

24. **kindling:** say—"kindled."

25. **he left his Greek and Latin without leave:** *il laissa là grec et latin.*

27. **along with it:** omit.

28. **twice:** *par deux fois.*

31. **hung down his head:** *sa tête retomba.*

34. **untouched:** *toujours.*

39. **this will not fail thee:** *elle ne te trahira pas.* **musing a little:** *un peu rêveur.*

42. **shape . . . another course:** say—"find another career."

112. 1. **one effective regiment:** *l'effectif d'un régiment.*

3. **than we could spare:** say—"than we (*en*) had to lose."

4. **opened:** supply *le feu.*

7. **we could scarcely believe . . . :** *à peine nous pûmes en croire nos yeux.*

8. **surely that handful . . . :** say—"was that handful of men going to . . ."

10. **and far indeed was it removed from:** *laissant bien loin.*

14. **without power to aid:** *impuissants.*

16. **the distance of:** omit.

17. **belched forth, from thirty . . . a flood of . . . :** say—"sent them a torrent of . . . vomited by thirty . . ."

19. **their flight was marked . . . :** make the whole sentence active.

22. **they never halt . . . :** say—"they continue to advance without slackening (*ralentir*)."

23. **with diminished ranks:** say—"their ranks are diminished;" put a semi-colon after "accuracy," and then continue in the present tense.

34. **as they stood:** *debout à côté de leurs pièces.*

37. **when:** put a semi-colon, and say "but."

113. 5. **if he went on with his work at once:** *de se mettre de suite à la besogne.*

6. **up:** *en montant.* **he saw:** supply *briller.*

113. 10. **the bustling preparations**: *les allées et venues occasionnées par les préparatifs.*

11. **consequent thereupon**: omit. Translate "steam up" by *échapper.*

13. **was gall and wormwood . . . :** *mit Gabriel en rage.*

17. **who crowded round them as they flocked up-stairs**: *qui les entouraient et escaladaient avec eux les étages.*

18. **in**: say—"in playing at."

23. **strode along**: say—"continued his way."

24. **such . . . as . . . :** say—"some . . . whom . . ."

25. **until he turned into**: say—"until he had turned the corner of."

27. **Gabriel had been looking forward**: use *tarder* impersonally.

32. **a young urchin . . . :** say—"the joyous sounds of a Christmas song shouted vociferously by an urchin."

33. **this very sanctuary**: *ce sanctuaire par excellence.*

38. **to keep himself company**: *pour ne pas se sentir si seul.*

39. **was shouting out . . . :** *s'époumonait à brailler sa chanson.*

44. **with his hand to his head**: *en se frottant la tête.*

45. **tune**: say—"song."

46. **very heartily to himself**: *d'une façon extrêmement satisfaite.*

114. 2. **sad**: supply *teinte* (f.).

4. **finery**: use *vêtements* (m.).

5. **wampum-belts . . . :** say—"wearing belts of wampum (*coquillages*) and feathers, daubed with red and yellow ochre . . ."

11. **claimed by**: say—"accorded to."

12. **the Spanish Main**: *les colonies espagnoles.*

13. **humours**: *divertissements* (m.).

14. **rough-looking desperadoes**: say—"regular (*vrais*) brigands of savage aspect." **and an immensity of beard**: express this by the adjective *hirsute* qualifying *face.*

17. **and sustaining**: say—"and which sustained."

22. **tobacco**: omit, and supply *sans vergogne.*

24. **draughts**: *de fortes lampées.*

26. **the gaping crowd around them**: say—"the crowd which regarded them gaping (*bouche bée*)." **it remarkably characterized**: say—"it is a characteristic feature of."

27. **that a licence was allowed**: *que la grande licence accordée;* see § 185.

29. **on**: say—"committed on" (§ 277).

30. **would go near to be . . . in our own**: say—"would run the risk now-a-days of seeing himself . . ."

114. 32. **this very ship's crew**: say—"the crew of the ship of which I speak."

34. **on**: *au préjudice de* (§ 277).

36. **necks**: say—"head."

38. **very much**: omit.

39. **any attempts at**: say—"a shadow of."

42. **nor**: omit, and make the sentence negative.

43. **it was disreputable . . .** : say—"one could (subj.) neither deal without falling into discredit nor associate (*frayer*) if the opportunity of doing so (*en*) presented itself."

47. **jolly seafaring men**: *marins en goguette.*

115. 5. **lingering**: say—"languishing."

6. **young**: say—"new."

9. **when he had reached the outskirts**: say—"when he had left behind him the last houses."

13. **the tracts of original forest . . .** : say—"the primitive forest only yielded to the cleared ground in a very small (*faible*) proportion."

15. **whirling away**: *emportant en tourbillon.*

18. **the road had . . .** : say—"the road which had just . . . was opening on to . . ."

24. **could not but**: say—"could not prevent himself from."

26. **made accursed**: *souillé.*

27. **one hasty grave**: *une fosse creusée en hâte.*

28. **on which they suffered**: *instrument de leur supplice.* **he struggled**: *il se roidit.*

30. **compelled himself**: say—"was sufficiently master of himself."

116. 8. **of**: *qu'entraîne* (§ 277).

10. **with as free a hand**: *avec autant de prodigalité.*

11. **has been so trained . . . that his body is . . .** : say—"has, from his youth, habituated his body to be . . ."

15. **parts**: *facultés* (f.).

17. **to be turned**: omit. **and spin**: *à tisser.*

19. **is stored with**: *s'est assimilé.*

22. **trained to come to heel by . . . the servant of . .** : say—"habituated to obey . . . in the service of . . ."

26. **and no other**: say—"and such a man only." **I conceive**: *selon moi.*

28. **he will make the best of her**: *il en tirera les plus grands avantages.*

30. **her conscious self**: *son incarnation.*

117. 3. **in the centre**: supply—"which existed," see § 277.
4. **to lack**: *manquer de.*
6. **was**: use present tense.
9. **than it is**: see § 184.
14. **had seen floating**: see § 62.
16. **shaped wood**: *bois travaillé.*

118. 2. **on her knees**: use a past participle only.
6. **a few minutes are all**, etc.: say—"there remain to you now only," etc.
14. **why he came**: say—"the object of his coming."
17. **likewise**: see § 103, 7.
21. **may it profit you**: see § 42, 2.
24. **treasure**: use *conserver précieusement.*

119. 5. **it**: must be expanded, see § 224.
7. **this was**: use present tense.
13. **in it**: say—"at that time."
15. **that the glow**, etc.: see § 58.
16. **left to us**: see § 237.

120. 1. **little suspected**: use *se douter guère.*
6. **old**: say—"advanced."
8. **not expecting him to live**, etc.: say—"reckoning on (*escompter*) his speedy death."
11. **gallant**: i.e. brave.
12. **not the kind of person to**: *pas homme à.*
16. **own**: *propre.*
19. **with**: *malgré.*
23. **recognise him as**, etc.: say—"recognise in him his son."

121. 3. **in obtaining recognition**: use *se faire reconnaître.*
5. **having bound himself**, etc.: say—"having taken (*prêter*), etc."
9. **when he**: say—"and even then he only."
11. **raising money**: use *se procurer des fonds.*
12. **quarrels among**: see § 277.
16. **except so far as it was affected**: say—"with the exception of the restriction imposed by."
16. **under these**: see § 233.
19. **worked**: use *fonctionner.*
22. **unpopular with**: *mal vu de.*

122. 7. **about two hours' run**: say—"after a run of about two hours."

12. **are huddled together**: *s'y pressent.*

15. **everywhere in**: say—"throughout the whole valley."

123. 2. **rate**: *train.* **at which**: see § 277.

5. **with such despatch as we might**: say—"with all possible despatch."

14. **earlier**: *lointain.*

17. **betwixt . . . and**: *d'un côté . . . de l'autre.*

20. **exercise**: say—"enjoyment."

22. **wrong**: *mauvais.*

33. **to which**: begin a new principal clause.

124. 2. **beguiled the way**: use *tromper la monotonie du chemin.*

3. **as**: *en.*

8. **human nature**: take "that his hours flowed . . . public life' next, and begin a fresh sentence with: "the period . . . resentment." The sentence as it stands is too long and intricate to make good French.

15. **flung his reins**: use *lâcher la bride sur.*

18. **mood**: say—"disposition of mind."

20. **quarter**: *coin.*

125. 2. **I had a finger in the pie**: *je n'y ai pas nui.* Use historic present.

4. **what the question was**: use *il s'agit de.*

14. **to give my own opinion on the subject**: *pour en dire mon avis.*

19. **at it**: *y.*

21. **with all deference**: *sauf correction.*

24. **so much to the point**: *si ad rem.*

25. **I carried the meeting with me**: *j'entraînai l'assemblée.*

126. 5. **lively ridicule**: *mordante épigramme.*

7. **unguarded**: *échappé.*

10. **think it an advantage**: say—"believed in the advantage of having."

12. **was almost entirely rhetorical**: *procède presque entièrement de la rhétorique.*

26. **trite**: *banal.* **niceties**: *pointilleries.*

28. **infected**: use *gagner.*

29. **conceit**: *pointe.*

127. 2. **the French language**: say—"French spoken."
3. **nurse**: *bonne (d'enfant)*.
4. **never left it till within**: say—"left it for the first time."
6. **can make shift to talk it a little**: use *commencer à s'en tirer un peu*.
10. **made a point of**: say—"applied myself to."
14. **take pains with**: use *soigner*. **to be much at a loss**: *être embarrassé*.
20. **own**: say—"maternal."
35. **shelf**: *rayon d'armoire*.

128. 2. **pregnant**: use *gros de portée*.
5. **no words could have been**: see § 237, 2.
6. **none**: *ou qui*, see § 58.
7. **the people have delighted to honour**: use *se faire une joie de fêter* and remember that *peuple* is singular.
14. **geographically**: say—"in the geographical sense of the word."
15. **stand for**: use *représenter*.
16. **as between neighbours, friendship is**: say simply—"friendship between neighbours is."
22. **and every reason that it should**: turn the phrase somewhat thus—"on the contrary all possible reasons require that it should be so."
25. **existing ones**: use a relative clause.
26. **that to place**: take "task" from l. 28 here and say—"the task of placing."
27. **good will**: supply "reciprocal" to balance "mutual" in the preceding line.
30. **it**: use a substantive.
32. **to pledge**: *faire raison à*.

129. 8. **Londoners**: say—"its inhabitants."
12. **insularity**: say—"insular pride."
14. **with . . . in them**: use a participle.
15. **welcome**: use *saluer*.
19. **continental conception of**: say—"the idea formed on the continent of," see § 277.
21. **without reason**: *à tort*.
22. **we are at our best**: say—"we show our best side."
29. **in being**: *bien vivante*.

130. 10. **and keep their wits**: *mais qui ne perdent pas la tête.*

11. **decent**: *honnête.*

12. **it is very much to . . .**: say—"if he is not, it is a cause of great discredit (*déconsidération*) for him.

14. **what is the use**: *qu'ai-je besoin.*

15. **such as**: say—"some (*en*) . . . which."

16. **Somerville**: *les petites-maisons.*

18. **anything that**: *tout ce qui* (§ 155).

22. **no matter whether a fakir . . .**: say—"let it be indifferently an article of faith for the fakir . . ."

25. **that condition . . .**: *c'est une condition, et qui devient normale, dans la circonstance.*

131. 1. **so much**: omit. Put a full stop after "actions," and begin —"that is so true that . . ."

13. **what else but . . .**: say—"is Glenalvon other than."

14. **the rack**: *la roue.*

18. **while**: omit, and put a semi-colon after "attended to."

20. **these things represented**: say—"these personages on the stage (*à la scène*)."

27. **when we have given up . . .**: say—"but when (*que*), renouncing the advantage of being able to abstract which he who reads possesses over him who sees, we go and see . . ."

32. **the painful anxiety about the act . . .**: *l'angoisse poignante qui vous saisit au sujet du crime sur le point de se commettre.*

36. **where**: say—"for, in reading."

132. 2. **objurgations of**: say—"reproaches addressed to."

11. **intense exertion**: *rude exercice.*

12. **of toil**: *de l'effort.*

20. **for one could see . . .**: say—"for, by (*à*) the paleness of their faces and by the quivering of their lips, one could see."

24. **and felt**: begin a fresh sentence with—"I felt."

27. **the swift, whispering rush**: *le sifflement accéléré.*

29. **the grim, breathless . . .**: say—"by the sombre silence of the rowers and by their panting efforts."

35. **and the foremost**: *au premier rang.*

133. 2. **and**: omit.

5. **reads with the back of his head**: say—"reads what is behind his head."

16. **I throw out**: say—"I leave."

133. 18. **how . . . how . . .** : express this only once by *combien nous sommes à la fois . . .*

134. 3. **by form of law**: *de par une loi.*

8. **dead**: say—"dumb." **which with swift stroke . . .**: say—"with swift strokes . . . it has wasted . . ."

11. **say**: *disons.*

12. **in the belly of . . .**: say—"in the belly in fusion of his own brazen bull" (§ 218).

16. **home**: *à leur point de départ.*

17. **too**: *à son tour.*

18. **that if he had . . .**: "that it is (*se trouve*) very fortunate for him that there is a higher one."

21. **as the like . . .**: say—"this is what such deeds must produce and do produce certainly."

23. **is of the skin**: *c'est le corps.*

25. **went**: say—"was dragged."

135. 2. **of preparation and of awakening suspense**: *préparatoire, vague, indécise.*

6. **morning was come**: say—"dawn had risen."

11. **was conducting**: *se produisait.*

12. **with which my sympathy . . .**: say—"my sympathy for this struggle was by so much more unbearable that I only understood indistinctly its place . . ."

20. **deeper than ever plummet sounded**: *dans des profondeurs insondables.*

22. **deepened**: *allait grandissant.*

25. **hurrying to and fro**: say—"people rushing hither and thither."

29. **and but a moment allowed**: *et puis le moment suprême.*

136. 1. **meal of . . .**: say—"meal where reigned . . ." (§ 277).

3. **what precious things . . .**: say—"what charming viands the word and the ardour of the guests served at . . ."

7. **ease**: *laisser-aller* (m.).

11. **wound up the spirit**: *monté les facultés.*

12. **every stroke . . .**: say—"to every stroke . . . the genius of the moment replied by a faithful echo."

13. **the wallet . . .**: say—"the memory arrived, loaded with the anecdotes of the day . . ."

18. **burthened with a joint**: *plongé dans un rosbif.*

19. **applauded**: use *faire fête à.*

136. 24. **nay**: *bien plus.*

27. **and open the heart . . .**: say—"and if (*que*) the god of wine had opened his heart with his irresistible key."

30. **in the amatory fondness of the fermented blood**: *échappé à l'effervescence du sang dans un moment de tendresse bachique.*

33. **no bridge from board to bed**: *il n'y avait point, de la table au lit, ce pont périlleux à franchir.*

38. **bourne**: use *repos.*

39. **the cenatorial reveller**: *le gai convive.*

137. 8. **rankles still in the bosoms**: say—"awakens still rancours in."

10. **they pant for**: *ils attendent impatients.*

13. **there is**: say—"there would be."

24. **and comrades falling, and . . .**: say—"the comrades fallen, the survivors were closing (*serraient*) resolutely the ranks."

30. **at length and at once to sweep**: *pour balayer et du coup.*

32. **and spite of all**: *inébranlables.*

37. **the post**: *les positions* (f.).

39. **the pursuit rolled miles away**: *on s'éloignait à la poursuite de l'ennemi en fuite.*

41. **on his face**: *la face contre terre.*

138. 1. **every inch of him**: *tout en lui est d'un roi.*

4. **no sceptre but . . .**: say—"no other sceptre than that of . . . "

7. **unobtrusive in colour or cut**: *de couleur peu voyante, de coupe simple.*

9. **with an underhand suspicion of oil**: *en sous-main, avec un soupçon d'huile.*

11. **their soot-pots**: *leurs pots de noir.*

16. **and has superlative grey eyes in it**: *les yeux gris sont d'une expression peu ordinaire.*

21. **there were**: *lui échurent.*

22. **great unconscious and some conscious pride**: *une grande fierté, surtout inconsciente, mais en partie voulue.*

26. **snuffy nose**: *son nez hume l'air.*

27. **like an old snuffy lion on the watch**: *on dirait un vieux lion reniflant l'air, à l'affût.*

32. **not of glaring size**: *sans excès.*

34. **resting on**: *unie à.*

139. 3. **faultless and unforced**: *sans défaut et sans contrainte.*

6. **colours**: *variétés.* **shapeliness**: *élégance de tournure.*

139. 8. **he**: *c'est lui.*

11. **mended**: *corrigés.*

13. **the bright and morning star of the full midsummer day**: *la brillante étoile annonciatrice de la pleine et resplendissante lumière estivale.*

24. **than any other on record**: *que n'importe quelle autre dans les annales de l'histoire.*

30. **of any other man's**: *qui soit à un autre.*

140. 7. **before the day is half over**: *avant le déclin du jour.*

10. **with us**: say—"in our climates."

15. **to cleave his way**: *se frayer un passage.*

25. **till they become**: *jusqu'à former.*

29. **too soft for . . .**: say—"much too soft for one to detect it during the day, even by listening (*en prêtant l'oreille*)."

30. **every breath of summer wind**: *le plus léger zéphyr.*

33. **every breath of the night wind**: *chaque souffle nocturne.*

38. **there is sound in . . .**: say—"the silence of the longest winter night is broken."

40. **drifting storm**: *tourmente* (f.).

41. **there is . . . a loud crack of the ice in . . .**: *on entend un fort craquement ; c'est une fissure dans la glace de . . .*

48. **where the sawyer may plant his mill**: *où l'homme puisse installer une scierie.*

141. 4. **a soft swathing**: *les langes moelleux.*

8. **an obedience**: say—"a duty of obedience."

12. **vicissitude**: *l'Instabilité.*

13. **ceaseless down-rushing of the universal world-fabric**: say—"incessant and universal fall which carries away the whole machine of the world."

15. **we taste**: *nous goûtons, enfants.*

18. **is at hand**: *te guette.*

22. **celestial Nepenthe**: *ô divin remède.*

25. **as yet**: *pour eux encore.*

142. 1. **as we go . . .**: say—"as we seek feverishly to reach and to seize some shred of knowledge."

7. **he is hurled out . . .**: say—"this man is at last thrown into (*à*) the gloomy and boundless ocean which engulfs him."

9. **we are torn away from . . .**: say—"obliged to abandon our theories, we are carried away in a whirl of contradictions; life shows us turn by turn different aspects to the point that we must be (*il faut être*) foolish or knavish (*de mauvaise foi*) to remain attached . . ."

142. 15. we are no sooner . . . : *à peine enfants, nous sommes hommes.*

17. jilted: *trahis.*

21. in which things are tested to a scruple: *où tout est rigoureusement évalué, éprouvé à la coupelle.*

26. a constant: *stables.*

143. 1. the great world of woman: *ce monde immense qu'est la femme.*

2. the lunar varieties: *les changements tout lunaires.*

6. of his power: *propre à son génie.*

9. reasons emanating from: *et qui tiennent à.*

13. who, let us ask, who but Shakespeare: say—"what other than Shakespeare, I ask."

14. for effectually working: *pour réaliser et mettre en œuvre.*

23. suggested: *évoquée.*

27. struck at: use *menacer.*

29. its local presence: *le lieu bien défini où elle apparaît.*

31. heart-shaking: *angoissant.*

35. through which the dreadful . . . : say—"through it, in the midst of it, the being of terror (*épouvante*) appears, indistinct and menacing, in proportions . ."

144. 3. exploded and put down: *renversés et bafoués.*

6. business: *action* (f.).

7. we screw everything up to that: say—"we wish to constrain everything to the rules of morality."

16. not reducible in life to the point of strict morality: *qui, dans la vie, ne pourraient pas rentrer dans les bornes d'une stricte morale.*

23. all-devouring: *absorbant.*

24. where: say—"there."

31. what is there transacting, by no modification . . . : say—"what passes there, whatever modification is applied to it (*qu'on y apporte*), cannot affect us . . ."

34. fireside: *domestiques.*

37. to make assurance double . . . : *pour doubler notre certitude et nous lier par contrat à la destinée.*

42. that happy breathing-place from . . . . : *ce bien-heureux lieu de repos où ne pèse plus le fardeau de la sempiternelle question morale.*

44. the sanctuary and quiet Alsatia: *sanctuaire sûr et cour des miracles.* broken up and disfranchised: *interdit et détruit.*

51. a great blanket surtout of precaution: *un grand surtout de laine épaisse, précaution.*

145. In translating verse into French the division of lines should be ignored, and the order of words must often be considerably modified.

1. **with meek and unaffected grace**: *où il paraissait avec une attrayante et douce simplicité.* In poetic or lofty style the adjective is more often placed before the substantive than in prose. The exact converse is the case in English, *e.g.* § **104**, 19 and 20.

2. **looks**: *présence* (f.).

4. **who came to scoff**: see § **227**.

6. **with steady zeal**: *affermis dans leur zèle.*

7. **with endearing wile, and plucked**: *et d'une main câline ils prenaient.*

11. **to them . . . were given**: *tout était pour eux.*

15. **rolling . . . spread**: use *tourbillonner.*

146. 1. **some**: *d'aucuns.*

5. **in an eddy of purposeless dust . . .**: say—"spending themselves in unmeaning and vain efforts, without design, in an eddy of dust."

9. **but something to snatch . . .**: say—"in order to snatch something from (*à*) dark oblivion, and from the devouring voracity of the tomb."

13. **path to**: *route conduisant à.* **clear-purposed**: *préconçu.*

25. **the spray boils o'er its borders**: *la vague écumante envahit les rives.*

26. **aloft the unseen . . .**: say—"from on high the invisible avalanche descends bearing destruction."

147. 5. **way**: *allée* (f.).

6. **mail-covered barons**: *barons vêtus de cottes de mailles.*

13. **new courage**: see § **170**.

17. **the fame of his fathers he ne'er can forget**: see § **178**, and cp. next line.

18. **still**: *toujours.*

21. **when decayed**: *alors qu'il aura péri* (§ **248**). **with**: *à.*

148. 5. **with many a jag**: *aux nombreuses dentelures.*

6. **shepherding**: *menant paître.*

7. **she leapt down the rocks**: *en descendant les rocs, elle sautait.*

11. **the downward ravine**: *le versant de la ravine.*

18. **she lingered**: *languissamment, elle s'acheminait.*

19. **Alpheus bold**: put the adjective before the substantive, and see § **96**.

148. 23. **with the spasm**: *sous le choc.*

30. **bars**: *barrières* (f.).

34. **he followed the light of the fleet nymph's flight**: say—"he followed the rapid gleam of the nymph who was fleeing."

40. **loud**: *bruyant.*

52. **as an eagle**: *tel qu'un aigle.*

53. **a dove to its ruin**: *une colombe éperdue.*

149. 1. **still stands**: *elle est toujours là.*

3. **are sleeping**: use *sommeiller.*

7. **go ebbing and flowing**: *descendent et montent.*

8. **thousands of throbbing hearts**: say—"thousands of hearts throb," and continue with the same construction. **where**: *quand.*

20. **linger**: *se sont arrêtés.* **whose fathers from exile . . .**: *dont les pères exilés, errants, sont revenus.*

24. **kirtles of homespun**: *jupes tissées au pays.*

27. **the deep-voiced, neighbouring ocean**: say—"the deep voice of the neighbouring ocean."

150. 2. **name**: *prononcer les mots de.*

4. **swords and knives . . .**: see § **174.**

6. **to despatch myself**: *m'invitant à la mort.*

10. **of**: omit.

14. **why should I die . . .**: see § **60, 9.**

151. 4. **far-spreading**: *grand.*

5. **not unlike**: *qui rappelle.*

8. **unnumbered branches waving**: use the present tense, beginning a new sentence.

10. **waits upon**: say—"accompanies."

13. **and chiming as they fall . . .**: *butent avec un tintement joyeux contre les menus cailloux de leur lit et vont se perdre . . .*

20. **warblers**: *oiseaux chanteurs.*

22. **nice-fingered art**: *l'art aux doigts mignons.*

29. **for their sake**: *à cause de ces scènes mêmes.*

152. 1. **is not strained**: *est de n'être point forcé.*

3. **the place beneath**: *l'humble plaine.* **it is twice blessed: it blesseth . . .**: say—"it produces at the same time the double happiness of him who . . ."

9. **wherein doth sit . . .**: say—"it is by it that one respects and fears kings."

152. 15. thy plea: *l'objet de ta poursuite.*

16. in the course of justice: *à ne suivre que la rigueur de la justice.*

17. for: *pour obtenir.*

18. that same prayer: say—"that prayer that we make for ourselves." to render the deeds of mercy: say—"to use mercy towards others."

153. 1. with: *ajoutés à* (§ 277).

3. their mountain springs: *les montagnes où elles sourdent.*

4. a soft inland murmur: say—"that soft murmur that the sea knows not."

11. orchard-tufts: *bouquets d'arbres fruitiers.*

12. unripe: say—"half-ripe."

15. little lines of sportive wood run wild: *petites lignes fuyantes d'un bois capricieux.*

19. with some uncertain notice . . .: *dont la forme indécise provient peut-être du foyer de quelques nomades errant dans les bois déserts.*

154. 2. nor any . . .: say—"nor execution to any idea which is (*subj.*) ill calculated."

3. familiar: *civil et poli.* vulgar: *bassement familier.*

6. do not dull thy palm . . .: *ne prodigue pas ta main et ses caresses banales à . . .*

7. courage: *connaissance* (f.).

9. may beware of thee: *t'évite à son tour.*

12. buy: *payer;* supply "it."

16. are most select and generous in that: *ont surtout en ce point un goût exquis et noble.*

19. dulls the edge: *perd l'esprit.*

155. 2. wildings: *enfants sauvages.*

3. ye waft me . . .: say—"you carry me back to vanished summers."

4. when the earth teemed . . .: *où tout dans l'univers autour de moi nageait dans un bonheur féerique.*

7. for lulling me back: say—"for you lull me."

9. broken glades breathing their balm: *clairières embaumées.*

10. glancing: omit.

13. not a pastoral song . . .: say—"no pastoral song goes to my heart with sounds so sweet as that which . . ."

23 pebbled and minnowy: *jasant sur leurs lits de cailloux et remplis de poissons.*

155. 26. **ague**: omit.

29. **with the visions of youth . . . .**: say—"to live again with you the joys of youth."

156. 3. **to play the woman**: *à ressentir la faiblesse d'une femme.*

4. **thus far hear me**: *écoute encore ces mots, ils seront les derniers.*

7. **I taught thee**: *je t'ai donné une utile leçon.*

8. **the ways**: *les sentiers brillants.*

9. **shoals**: *écueils* (m.).

11. **one**: repeat *route.*

13. **fling away**: *repousse loin de toi.*

15. **win**: say—"prosper."

16. **love thyself last**: *ne songe à toi qu'en dernier lieu.*

19. **not**: say—"nothing."

26. **my integrity to heaven**: *ma foi devant le ciel.*

27. **call my own**: *dire être à moi.*

30. **to**: *à la fureur de* (§ 277).

157. 2. **lost**: *déchu.*

6. **farthest**: *être le plus loin.*

11. **one who brings**: begin a new sentence—*Celui-là t'apporte . . .*

18. **hath not built here for his envy**: *n'a pas construit cette demeure pour nous l'envier.*

21. **is worth ambition**: *en vaut la peine.*

22. **better to reign**: *plutôt régner.*

158. 10. **wind in warm wan weather**: *le doux zéphyr par une blême journée de feu.*

12. **ere its chime be done**: *avant que ses sons ne meurent.*

17. **very sound of very light heard from morning's rosiest height**: *son qu'on saurait à peine distinguer de la lumière que répandent à l'aube les cieux rougis.*

21. **of welcome**: omit.

25. **here that rings forth heaven**: *dont les sons semblent venir des cieux.*

NOTES ON THE EXERCISES.

The Exercises following each of the several divisions of the book-work (pp. 1-130) consist of sentences taken from the passages for translation; the Notes on the latter (pp. 235-275) will serve as an aid in the rendering of the Exercises, and may be found with the help of the following Table.

Ex. 1,	1,	see Notes	16,	10
	5,	,,	112,	8
	7,	,,	114,	34
	8,	,,	50,	8
	12,	,,	156,	26
Ex. 2,	1,	see Notes	22,	2
	2,	,,	23,	1
	3,	,,	35,	8
	4,	,,	4,	3
	11,	,,	35,	1
	14,	,,	93,	10
	16,	,,	93,	16
Ex. 3,	2,	see Notes	25,	8, 10
	4,	,,	29,	6
	7,	,,	2,	7
	8,	,,	5,	6
	12,	,,	44,	6
	13,	,,	46,	11
	16,	,,	18,	6
	17,	,,	19,	10
Ex. 4,	1,	see Notes	2,	6
	7,	,,	12,	3
	9,	,,	13,	6
	10,	,,	14,	1
	12,	,,	15,	6
	15,	,,	19,	2
	16,	,,	21,	1
	17,	,,	21,	2
	18,	,,	22,	2
	25,	,,	42,	11
	27,	,,	47,	3
	30,	,,	50,	5
Ex. 5,	1,	see Notes	92,	14
	2,	,,	106,	24
	3,	,,	108,	1
	4,	,,	5,	8
	5,	,,	13,	1
	7,	,,	16,	7
	9,	,,	31,	13
	12,	,,	44,	6
	13,	,,	48,	6
	14,	,,	102,	28
	15,	,,	41,	9
Ex. 6,	2,	see Notes	2,	7
	4,	,,	6,	1
	5,	,,	7,	7
	6,	,,	13,	1
	8,	,,	19,	6
	9,	,,	20,	8
	10,	,,	24,	1
	11,	,,	24,	6
	12,	,,	26,	1
	14,	,,	30,	10
	19,	,,	44,	1
	20,	,,	46,	7
	22,	,,	85,	1
	23,	,,	85,	4
	24,	,,	85,	22
	25,	,,	86,	10
	26,	,,	22,	6
	27,	,,	27,	9
	28,	,,	46,	11
	30,	,,	102,	42
	31,	,,	37,	11, 12
	32,	,,	148,	19
	33,	,,	156,	7

Ex. 7, 6, see Notes 48, 11
7, ,, 51, 3
8, ,, 85, 7, 9
10, ,, 93, 10
11, ,, 94, 13
12, ,, 95, 6
17, ,, 106, 9
19, ,, 10, 3
20, ,, 25, 8
21, ,, 29, 3
22, ,, 34, 12
23, ,, 37, 7
24, ,, 41, 9
25, ,, 88, 12
26, ,, 89, 6
29, ,, 109, 13
30, ,, 114, 43
31, ,, 134, 16
33, ,, 141, 22
35, ,, 101, 19
38, ,, 147, 21
39, ,, 154, 12

Ex. 8, 1, see Notes 2, 3
2, ,, 2, 4
4, ,, 8, 1
5, ,, 9, 2
6, ,, 13, 4
7, ,, 15, 3
10, ,, 17, 6
12, ,, 20, 2, 3
13, ,, 20, 11
15, ,, 23, 2
20, ,, 29, 3
22, ,, 33, 3
23, ,, 36, 8
26, ,, 44, 4
30, ,, 51, 1
32, ,, 91, 16
34, ,, 150, 14

Ex. 9, 1, see Notes 4, 1
2, ,, 5, 3
3, ,, 7, 7
4, ,, 11, 7

Ex. 10, 2, see Notes 5, 9
5, ,, 31, 15
6, ,, 33, 2

Ex. 10, 8, see Notes 33, 6
9, ,, 33, 10
10, ,, 33, 11

Ex. 11, 1, see Notes 34, 14
9, ,, 86, 14, 16

Ex. 12, 3, see Notes 16, 9
4, ,, 17, 11
5, ,, 21, 6
10, ,, 43, 14
11, ,, 89, 6
12, ,, 110, 3, 4
13, ,, 113, 23
15, ,, 150, 2
16, ,, 104, 19

Ex. 13, 1, see Notes 2, 6
2, ,, 22, 2
4, ,, 28, 7
5, ,, 34, 14
11, ,, 139, 8
16, ,, 149, 7

Ex. 14, 1, see Notes 13, 10, 11
3, ,, 24, 6
4, ,, 12, 4
5, ,, 32, 10
6, ,, 51, 3
9, ,, 92, 17
14, ,, 25, 3
15, ,, 137, 37
17, ,, 142, 21
18, ,, 43, 14
21, ,, 156, 30

Ex. 15, 3, see Notes 100, 1
4, ,, 130, 14
8, ,, 135, 11

Ex. 16, 1, see Notes 5, 1
2, ,, 7, 5
3, ,, 13, 6
7, ,, 25, 8
8, ,, 31, 13
9, ,, 45, 1
11, ,, 90, 17
14, ,, 157, 2

Ex. 17, 1, see Notes 8, 2
3, ,, 12, 3
8, ,, 20, 2, 3
9, ,, 21, 2

Ex. 17, 10, see Notes 24, 5
12, ,, 33, 11
14, ,, 42, 6
16, ,, 45, 1
20, ,, 47, 6
21, ,, 50, 9
25, ,, 99, 3
26, ,, 101, 16, 17
28, ,, 102, 28
29, ,, 154, 2

Ex. 18, 1, see Notes 5, 3
2, ,, 6, 1
3, ,, 8, 5
4, ,, 30, 5
5, ,, 32, 2
6, ,, 31, 14

Ex. 19, 2, see Notes 10, 9
4, ,, 13, 10
5, ,, 24, 2
9, ,, 35, 6
10, ,, 35, 8
12, ,, 46, 13
15, ,, 147, 13
16, ,, 156, 8

Ex. 20, 1, see Notes 7, 3
2, ,, 7, 6, 7
3, ,, 17, 6
4, ,, 21, 1
8, ,, 27, 7
9, ,, 31, 1
11, ,, 32, 12, 14
13, ,, 99, 19
17, ,, 40, 3
18, ,, 92, 14
20, ,, 4, 1
21, ,, 145, 1
22, ,, 148, 19
23, ,, 150, 4, 6

Ex. 21, 1, see Notes 11, 7
2, ,, 86, 19
4, ,, 103, 9
7, ,, 106, 7
8, ,, 34, 8
9, ,, 38, 2
11, ,, 88, 18
12, ,, 99, 5
13, ,, 112, 7

Ex. 21, 19, see Notes 141, 25
22, ,, 156, 13

Ex. 22, 1, see Notes 6, 8
4, ,, 44, 6
5, ,, 86, 1
6, ,, 108, 1
8, ,, 36, 13
10, ,, 144, 31
11, ,, 94, 18

Ex. 23, 1, see Notes 1, 3, 4
2, ,, 2, 8
4, ,, 13, 2
5, ,, 32, 7
6, ,, 48, 3
7, ,, 31, 15

Ex. 24, 1, see Notes 14, 9
3, ,, 29, 8
4, ,, 37, 7
5, ,, 39, 6
6, ,, 12, 8
8, ,, 27, 7
10, ,, 29, 1
11, ,, 38, 2
12, ,, 95, 6
13, ,, 106, 7
14, ,, 130, 14
18, ,, 143, 1
19, ,, 21, 1
20, ,, 145, 15

Ex. 25, 1, see Notes 8, 1
2, ,, 31, 15
3, ,, 36, 8
6, ,, 91, 12
7, ,, 157, 6

Ex. 26, 1, see Notes 92, 2
2, ,, 37, 1
3, ,, 30, 3, 5
4, ,, 23, 2
5, ,, 44, 4
6, ,, 143, 1
7, ,, 102, 3
9, ,, 46, 2, 3
11, ,, 28, 10
12, ,, 111, 6
13, ,, 34, 1, 3
14, ,, 46, 11

Ex. 26, 15, see Notes 52, 3
18, ,, 47, 9
19, ,, 104, 26
21, ,, 87, 10

Ex. 27, 3, see Notes 94, 11
5, ,, 100, 14
6, ,, 103, 16
10, ,, 141, 15
11, ,, 138, 7
12, ,, 12, 6, 7
14, ,, 97, 20
16, ,, 104, 5
20, ,, 148, 52, 53

Ex. 28, 1, see Notes 44, 1, 3
2, ,, 49, 3
3, ,, 19, 10
4, ,, 100, 6, 7
5, ,, 25, 6
6, ,, 3, 2
7, ,, 28, 2
8, ,, 98, 12
9, ,, 100, 33, 36
10, ,, 7, 7
11, ,, 114, 11-13
12, ,, 22, 6
13, ,, 50, 1
15, ,, 96, 16
16, ,, 97, 31
17, ,, 145, 4
19, ,, 154, 16

Ex. 29, 1, see Notes 27, 7
2, ,, 39, 10, 11
3, ,, 100, 4
4, ,, 113, 46
5, ,, 87, 5, 6
6, ,, 87, 7
7, ,, 17, 1
11, ,, 46, 13
12, ,, 46, 7
14, ,, 42, 4
16, ,, 46, 4

Ex. 29, 18, see Notes 50, 9
19, ,, 105, 26
21, ,, 107, 22
24, ,, 110, 5
25, ,, 114, 32
27, ,, 138, 21
30, ,, 30, 10
31, ,, 32, 2, 3
34, ,, 45, 11
35, ,, 46, 2
40, ,, 85, 22
41, ,, 91, 7
44, ,, 100, 41
45, ,, 101, 24
46, ,, 105, 17
47, ,, 110, 37
52, ,, 147, 21

Ex. 30, 2, see Notes 33, 10
3, ,, 30, 5
4, ,, 39, 2
6, ,, 48, 2
7, ,, 93, 10
8, ,, 98, 15
9, ,, 100, 4
10, ,, 100, 19
11, ,, 107, 30
14, ,, 113, 46

Ex. 31, 1, see Notes 104, 26
3, ,, 102, 28
4, ,, 108, 29
5, ,, 37, 11, 12
7, ,, 25, 6
9, ,, 143, 1
10, ,, 50, 9
11, ,, 14, 1
12, ,, 104, 2
13, ,, 87, 19
14, ,, 49, 13
16, ,, 145, 1, 2
17, ,, 146, 13
18, ,, 156, 30

PART V.

VOCABULARY.

N.B.—Words given in Notes are not in all cases repeated in the Vocabulary. Proper Names are given only when different from the English.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	adjective	*pl.*	plural.
ad.	adverb	*poss.*	possessive
c.	conjunction	*pr.*	pronoun
f.	feminine	*prep.*	preposition
imp.	impersonal	*relat.*	relative
interj.	interjection	*qqch.*	quelque chose
interr.	interrogative	*qqn.*	quelqu'un
intr.	intransitive	*s.*	substantive
m.	masculine	*tr.*	transitive
pers.	personal.		

A, an: un, une.
abandon: abandonner.
abbey: abbaye, *f.*
ability: habileté, capacité, *f.*; talent, *m.*
abject: méprisable, vil, bas.
able: capable, à même, en état; **to be —**: être en état de, être à même de, pouvoir.
abolish: abolir, anéantir, annuler.
about: de, environ, vers, sur; **to be — to**: être sur le point de, aller faire, être au moment de faire.
above: *prep.* & *ad.*, au-dessus de, par-dessus, sur; **—all**: surtout.
abroad: à l'étranger.
absolute: absolu, illimité; **absolutely**: absolument, vraiment, positivement.
abstraction: distraction, *f.*; **in —**: distraitement.
absurdity: absurdité, *f.*
Abyssinia: Abyssinie, *f.*
academy: académie, école, école supérieure, *f.*
accept: accepter.
accompany: accompagner.
accomplish: accomplir, exécuter, achever.
according (to): selon, suivant, à en croire.
account: compte, récit, renseignement, *m.*; **on — of**: à cause de; **on that —**: par (pour) cette raison; **to settle —s**: régler les comptes.
accumulate: accumuler, amasser.
accurately: exactement.
accustom: *tr.*, accoutumer, habituer; *intr.*, avoir coutume de.
acknowledge: reconnaître, avouer.
acquire: acquérir, amasser, obtenir, prendre, apprendre.

acre: acre, arpent, *m.*
across: à travers, en travers.
act: acte, *m.*; exécution, action, *f.*; fait, exploit, *m.*
act: agir; **to — upon**: agir d'après; **to — with**: avoir affaire avec.
action: action, *f.*; fait, *m.*
active: actif, agile.
activity: activité, opération, *f.*
addition: addition, augmentation, *f.*; **in —**: en outre, de plus, en sus; **in — to which**: d'ailleurs.
address: adresser, s'adresser à, parler à.
adjust: ajuster.
adjutant: adjudant, *m.*
administer: administrer, gouverner.
administration: administration, *f.*; **to take —**: prendre gestion.
admiration: admiration, *f.*
admire: admirer.
admit: admettre, recevoir, permettre, conduire, permettre d'entrer.
adopt: adopter.
adoption: adoption, *f.*
adorn: orner, parer.
advance: *tr.*, avancer; *intr.*, s'avancer.
advantage: avantage, *m.*; supériorité, *f.*
advantageous: avantageux.
adversary: adversaire, ennemi, rival, *m.*
advice: conseil, *m.*
advise: *tr.*, conseiller, prévenir.
affair: affaire, *f.*
affect: affecter, émouvoir, toucher.
affectation: affectation, *f.*
affection: affection, tendresse, *f.*
affright: épouvanter, effrayer.
afraid: épouvanté; **to be — to**: craindre (de), avoir peur.
after: *prp.* & *ad.*, après derrière, selon, ensuite, au bout de, selon.
afternoon: après-midi, *m.*
afterwards: ensuite, après, dans la suite, plus tard.
again: encore, de nouveau; **never —**: jamais plus.
against: contre, vers, sur; **to be —**: opposer.
age: âge, *m.*; époque, *f.*; vieillesse, *f.*; **to be twenty years of —**: avoir vingt ans.
aged: âgé, vieux,
agent: agent, trésorier, *m.*
aggravate: aggraver, enfler.
agony: agonie, *f.*
agree: *intr.*, consentir à, convenir de.
agreeable: agréable.
aid: secours, *m.*
ail: souffrir, inquiéter.
aim: fin, *f.*; but, *m.*
aim: *tr.*, diriger; *intr.*, viser à.
air: air, *m.*
Alan: Alain.
alarm: alarmer, inquiéter.
alarming: alarmant.
alas! hélas!
Alexander: Alexandre.
Algeria: Algérie, *f.*
alight: descendre, mettre pied à terre.
all: *a.*, tout; *ad.*, tout entièrement; **in —**: en tout; **— along**: tout le long de, tout le temps.
allied: allié.
allow: accorder, permettre, laisser.
all-powerful: tout-puissant.
ally: allié, *m.*
almanac: almanach, *m.*
Almighty: Tout-Puissant, *m.*
almost: presque, à peu près.
alms: aumône, charité, *f.*
alone: *a.*, seul, solitaire; *ad.*, seulement.
along: le long de, tout le long de; **all —**: tout le temps, depuis, au long.
aloud: haut, à haute voix.
Alpheus: Alphée.
already: déjà.

also: aussi, également, encore, de plus.
although: quoique, bien que.
altogether: tout à fait, vraiment.
always: toujours, continuellement.
amaze: épouvanter, étonner, émerveiller, ébahir, frapper d'étonnement.
amazement: étonnement, *m.*; surprise, *f.*
amazing: étonnant.
ambassador: ambassadeur, *m.*
American: américain.
amiable: aimable.
amid(st): au milieu de, parmi.
among(st): parmi, entre, au milieu de, chez.
ample: ample, grand, large.
amusement: amusement, divertissement, *m.*
amusing: amusant, divertissant, plaisant.
anachronism: anachronisme, *m.*
ancestor: ancêtre, *m.*; — **s**: ancêtres, aïeux, *m. pl.*
ancient: ancien, antique, vieux, âgé.
and: et.
angel: ange, *m.*
angel: *a.*, séraphique.
anger: colère, *f.*
anger: mettre en colère, irriter, dépiter, **fâcher.**
angry: fâché; **to be —**: se mettre en colère, se fâcher.
animal: animal, *m.*
animated: animé.
animosity: haine, *f.*
announce: déclarer, annoncer.
annual: annuel.
another: un autre, encore un.
answer: réponse, réplique, *f.*
answer: répondre **à.**
antagonism: antagonisme, *m.*
antagonist: antagoniste, *m.*
antechamber: antichambre, *f.*
anticipate: prévenir, devancer.
antipathy: antipathie, *f.*
antique: vieux, antique, ancien.
antiquity: antiquité, *f.*
anxiety: inquiétude, angoisse, *f.*
any: quelque, quelqu'un, aucun, n'importe quel; — **more**: encore, plus, davantage.
anyone: quelqu'un, qui que ce soit.
anything: quelque chose, rien.
anywhere: nulle part, partout.
apart: à part.
apartment: appartement, *m.*; chambre, *f.*
Apollo: Apollon.
apology: excuse, *f.*
apparel: vêtement, *m.*; parure, *f.*
apparent: apparent, frappant, évident.
apparition: apparition, vision, *f.*; spectre, *m.*
appear: paraître, apparaître; **to — before**: se présenter à, paraître devant.
appearance: apparence, *f.*; aspect, *m.*; apparition, *f.*
appliance: moyen, *m.*; remède, *m.*
appoint: fixer, nommer, désigner, former.
apprehension: appréhension, crainte, *f.*
apprise: informer, instruire.
approach: *tr.*, s'approcher de, aborder.
approbation: approbation, *f.*; aveu, *m.*
approval: approbation, *f.*
April: avril, *m.*
apt: apte, propre.
archangel: archange, *m.*
architecture: architecture, *f.*
ardour: ardeur, chaleur, passion, *f.*
Arethusa: Aréthuse.
arise: s'élever, découler, provenir de.
aristocracy: aristocratie, *f.*
arm: bras, *m.*

arm: armer.
armour: armure, *f.*; **in — :** revêtu d'armure.
arms: armes, *f. pl.*
army: armée, *f.*
around: autour de.
arrange: arranger.
arrangement: arrangement, *m.*; disposition, *f.*; accommodement, *m.*
arrest: arrêter.
arrival: arrivée, *f.*
arrive: arriver, parvenir **à**.
arrow: flèche, *f.*
art: art, *m.*
article: article, *m.*
artillery: artillerie, *f.*
artist: artiste, *m.*
as: comme, lorsque, ainsi que, en, aussi, que, selon que, suivant, tel que, puisque, tandis que; **as . . . as**: aussi . . . que, si . . . que; — **for**: quant à; — **to**: sur, selon, suivant, quant à; — **well** — : aussi bien que; — **soon** —: aussitôt que; — **an honest man**: en tant qu'honnête homme; **to be dressed** —: être habillé en.
ascend: monter, gravir.
ascertain: s'assurer de, constater, reconnaître.
ashamed: honteux, confus; **to be — of**: avoir honte de, rougir.
ashore: à terre.
Asia: Asie, *f.*
ask: demander (**à**), réclamer, interroger, s'informer, prier, inviter; **to — for**: demander.
asleep: endormi; **to be —**: dormir.
ass: âne, *m.*
assault: assaut, *m.*; attaque, *f.*
assemble: rassembler.
assert: affirmer, maintenir, défendre, revendiquer.
assist: aider, appuyer, favoriser, seconder.
assistance: aide, *f.*; secours, *m.*
associate: compagnon, *m.*
assort: assortir, arranger, faire le triage.
assume: prendre.
assurance: assurance, *f.*
assure: assurer; **assuredly**: assurément, certainement.
astonish: étonner.
astonishment: étonnement, *m.* surprise, *f.*
astrologer: astrologue, *m.*
at: à, dans, en, sur, après, contre, chez.
Athens: Athènes, *f.*
atomic: atomique.
atrocity: atrocité, *f.*
attachment: attachement, *m.*; dévotion, affection, *f.*
attack: attaque, *f.*; assaut, *m.*
attack: attaquer, assaillir.
attempt: essai, *m.*; tentative, enterprise, *f.*; **to make an —**: tenter.
attempt: *tr.*, essayer, tenter, entreprendre.
attend: *tr.*, suivre, escorter, accompagner; **to — to**: s'occuper de.
attendant: serviteur, domestique, *m.*; — **s**: gens, *pl.*, *m.* & *f.*
attention: attention, *f.*; **to pay —**: faire attention, prêter attention.
attitude: attitude, *f.*
attract: attirer, gagner.
audience: auditoire, *m.*
aunt: tante, *f.*
Austrian: Autrichien.
authentic: authentique, certain, vrai.
author: auteur, *m.*
authority: autorité, influence, puissance, *f.*; ordre, *m.*
avarice: avarice, *f.*
avoid: éviter.
await: attendre.
awake: éveillé.
awaken: *tr.*, éveiller, réveiller, *intr.*, s'éveiller.

aware: vigilant; **to become — of**: se rendre compte de.
away: loin; **far —**: bien loin; **three miles —**: à trois milles de distance.
awe: crainte, *f.*; effroi, *m.*
awkwardness: maladresse, gaucherie, *f.*

baboon: babouin, *m.*
baby: bébé, *m.*; petit, *m.*
bacchanalian: bachique, de bacchantes.
back: dos, *m.*
bad: mauvais, méchant; **—ly**: mal.
baggage: bagages, *m. pl.*
bagpipe: cornemuse, *f.*
ball: bal, *m.*
balm: baume, *m.*
banish: bannir.
bank: bord, rivage, *m.*
Barcelona: Barcelone.
bare: nu, découvert.
barefoot(ed): nu-pieds.
bareheaded: nu-tête.
barren: stérile.
base: bas, vil, méprisable, lâche; **—ly**: lâchement.
base: asseoir, appuyer.
basket: panier, *m.*; corbeille, *f.*
battle: bataille, *f.*; combat, *m.*; action, *f.*; **— -field**: champ de bataille, *m.*
B. C.: avant J. C.
be: être, exister, se trouver, demeurer; **there is, there are**: il y a; **there she is!** la voilà! **what is it?** qu'y a-t-il?
bear: ours, *m.*
bear: *tr.*, porter, supporter, produire, posséder; *intr.*, supporter.
beard: barbe, *f.*
bearing: mine, *f.*; air, port, maintien, *m.*
beast: bête, *f.*; animal, *m.*; **wild —**: fauve, *m.*
beat: battre, vaincre; **to — up**: briser.
beautiful: beau, agréable, joli, superbe.
beauty: beauté, *f.*; charmes, *m. pl.*
because: car, parce que, à cause de.
become: *intr.*, devenir, se faire.
bed: lit, *m.*; **to go to —**: se coucher.
bedroom: chambre à coucher,
before: *prep.*, à, avant, devant; *ad.*, auparavant, avant que, avant de.
beg: demander, prier.
beggar: mendiant, *m.*
begin: *tr.*, commencer (à, de, par), se mettre à.
behave: se comporter, se conduire.
behaviour: conduite, *f.*
behind: *prp.*, derrière; *ad.*, par derrière, en arrière.
behold: voir, regarder, contempler, considérer.
being: être, *m.*; existence, *f.*
believe: *tr.*, croire, penser, estimer, s'imaginer; **I —**: à mon avis.
bell: cloche, sonnette, *f.*
belong: appartenir à.
beloved: bien-aimé, chéri.
below: *prp.*, au-dessous de; *ad.*, en bas.
bench: banc, *m.*
beneath: *prp.*, sous, dessous, au-dessous de.
benefit: profit, *m.*; jouissance, *f.*
beside(s): à côté de, auprès de, outre, d'ailleurs, sauf, de plus.
besiege: assiéger.
best: le (la) meilleur(e); **to the — of my remembrance**: autant que je puis m'en souvenir.
best: *ad.*, le mieux.
betake oneself: se diriger.
better: *a.*, meilleur; *ad.*, mieux; **it is —**, il vaut mieux; **so much the —**: tant mieux.
between: entre.

betwixt : entre.
beyond : au delà, par delà, en dehors de, hors de.
bias : biais, *m.*
Bible : bible, *f.*
bid : commander à, dire à, ordonner, prier, inviter ; **to — farewell** : dire adieu.
big : gros, grand.
bigot : bigot, *m.*
bind : lier, attacher, obliger ; **to be bound to** : être tenu de.
bird : oiseau, *m.* ; gibier, *m.*
birth : naissance, *f.*
bishop : évêque, *m.*
bitter : amer, mordant.
black : noir, sombre.
blame : blâme, *m.*
blame : blâmer, censurer.
blanket : couverture de lit, *f.*
blessing : bénédiction, *f.* ; bonheur, *m.* ; bienfait du ciel, *m.*
blood : sang, *m.*
bloody : sanglant, ensanglanté.
blow : coup, *m.*
blow : *intr.*, souffler.
blue : bleu.
boat : bateau, *m.* ; canot, *m.*
body : corps, *m.* ; société, assemblée, *f.*
bold : hardi, courageux, insolent, audacieux, effronté ; **—ly** : hardiment, courageusement.
bonnet : chapeau, *m.*
book : livre, *m.* ; bouquin, *m.*
book-shelf : rayon de bibliothèque.
boot : botte, *f.*
border : border.
born : né ; **to be —** : naître.
borrow : emprunter à.
borrower : emprunteur, *m.*
bosom : sein, *m* ; cœur, *m.*
both : les deux, tous les deux, l'un et l'autre ; **— of you** : vous deux.
bottle : bouteille, *f.*
bow : salut, *m.* ; révérence, *f.*
bow (ship) : proue, *f.* ; avant, *m.* ; **— (weapon)** : arc, *m.*
bow : *intr.*, se courber, s' incliner, saluer.
box : boîte, *f.* ; coffre, *m.* ; **— on the ear** : soufflet, *m.*
boy : garçon, enfant, *m.* ; jeunes gens, *m. pl.* ; jeune garcon, valet, *m.*
brain : cerveau, *m.* ; cervelle, *f.*
brand : marquer.
brass : cuivre, airain, *m.*
brave : brave, vaillant, courageux.
bravery : bravoure, intrépidité, vaillance, *f.*
break : *tr.*, rompre, briser, détruire, fracasser ; *intr.*, se briser ; **to — from** : *tr.*, arracher de ; **to — up** : *intr.*, se disperser, s'écouler ; **to — one's word** : manquer à sa parole ; **to — off** : rompre.
breakfast : déjeuner, *m.*
breast : poitrine, *f.* ; flancs, *m. pl.*
breed : engendrer.
bridge : pont, *m.*
briefness : brièveté, précision, *f.*
brigand : brigand, pillard, *m.*
bright : luisant, étincelant, reluisant, éclatant, vif.
brilliancy : éclat, m. ; splendeur, *f.*
brilliant : brillant, étincelant.
brim : bord, *m.*
bring : apporter, amener, conduire ; **to — before** : mettre en présence de ; **to — back** : rapporter, ramener ; **to — on** : attirer ; **to — out** : apporter.
Britain : Bretagne, *f.*
broad : large.
broken : cassé, brisé, écroulé.
bronze : bronze, *m.*
brook : ruisseau, torrent, *m.*
brother : frère, *m.*
brow : front, *m.*
brown : brun, de couleur brune, noir.
Brussels : Bruxelles.

brutal: brutal, cruel.
buccaneer: pirate, *m.*
bud: bouton, bourgeon, *m.*
budding: bourgeonnement, *m.*
build: *tr.*, bâtir, construire.
building: bâtiment, édifice, *m.*
bulk: masse, *f.*
bundle: paquet, *m.*; monceau, *m.*
Burgundy: Bourgogne, *f.*
burn: *tr.*, brûler; *intr.*, brûler; **to — with**: être dévoré de.
burning: brûlé, *m.*; feu, *m.*
bush: buisson, *m.*
business: affaire, *f.*
bust, buste, *m.*
busy: occupé, affairé, actif.
busy: occuper; **to — oneself**, s'occuper (de).
but: mais, en revanche, si ce n'est, sinon, seulement, ne . . . que; **I cannot —**, je ne puis m empêcher de.
butcher: boucher, *m.*
butter: beurre, *m.*
butterfly: papillon, *m.*
buy: acheter, payer.
by: près de, auprès de, par, sur, d'après, selon.

cabinet: cabinet, coffre, bahut, *m.*
calculation: calcul, *m.*
call: appeler, crier, nommer, dire; **to — out**: animer; **to — to**: appeler.
callous: insensible.
calm: calme, tranquille.
camp: camp, *m.*
campaign: campagne, *f.*
can: pouvoir, être capable de, savoir.
canal: canal, *m.*
cannon: canon, *m.*
canoe: canot, *m.*
canvas: canevas, *m.*; toile, *f.*
capable: capable, propre à.
Capetown: Cap, *m.*
capital: capitale, *f.* (city); capital, *m.* (money).
Capitol: Capitole, *m.*
capitulation: capitulation, *f.*
captain: capitaine, *m.*
captivate: captiver, séduire.
captive: captif, -ve, *m.* & *f.*
care: inquiétude, peine, *f.*; **to take —**: avoir soin, prendre soin, prendre garde; **to — for**: goûter.
careful (to be): avoir soin, prendre garde; **—ly**: soigneusement, attentivement.
carriage: voiture, *f.*; **open —**: voiture découverte.
carry: porter, mener, conduire, l'emporter sur; **to — off**: emporter, enlever.
cast: jeter, lancer; **to — down**: abattre.
castle: château, fort, *m.*
cat: chat, *m.*
catastrophe: catastrophe, *f.*
catch: prendre, saisir, attraper.
catholic: catholique.
cause: cause, *f.*
cause: causer, faire.
cavalier: cavalier, *m.*
cavalry: cavalerie, *f.*
cave: caverne, *f.*
cease: *tr.*, cesser de.
celestial: céleste, divin.
cell: cellule, *f.*
censer: encensoir, *m.*
censure: critique, censure, *f.*
censure: censurer, blâmer.
century: siècle, *m.*
ceremony: cérémonie, *f.*
certain: certain, sûr, évident; **—ly**: *ad.*, certainement, assurément.
chain: chaîne, *f.*
chain: enchaîner.
chair: chaise, *f.*; siège, *m.*
chamber: chambre, *f.*
champion: champion, défenseur, *m.*
change: changement, *m.*
change: *tr.*, échanger (contre),

changer ; **to — into** : transformer.
channel : chenal, *m.* ; canal, *m.*
chaos : chaos, *m.*
character : caractère, *m.* ; personne, réputation, nature, renommée, *f.* ; personnage, trait, *m.*
characteristic : caractéristique, *f.*
characteristic : caractéristique.
charge : charge, *f.*
charge : charger, recommander, accuser, attaquer.
charitable : charitable, bienfaisant.
Charles V. (Emperor) : Charles-Quint.
charm : charme, *m.*
chase (engrave) : ciseler.
chasm : brèche, *f.* ; gouffre, abîme, *m.*
cheerful : gai, joyeux, gracieux, enjoué.
chemistry : chimie, *f.*
cherish : chérir, aimer.
cherub : chérubin, *m.*
chest : coffre, *m.*
chief : chef, commandant, *m.*
chief : principal ; **—ly** : principalement, surtout, d'ordinaire.
child : enfant, *m.* & *f.*
childish : enfantin, puéril.
chimerical : chimérique.
China : Chine, *f.*
Chinese : Chinois ; *a.*, chinois.
choose : choisir, faire choix de, élire.
christian : chrétien.
chronology : chronologie, *f.*
chuckle : ricaner.
church : église, *f.* ; temple, *m.* ; chapelle, *f.*
churchyard : cimetière, *m.*
circle : cercle, *m.*
circumstance : circonstance, *f.* ; événement, *m.*
citizen : citoyen, *m.* ; **fellow—** : concitoyen, *m.*
city : ville, *f.*
clad : vêtu, habillé.
claim : demande, prétention, *f.* ; **to lay — to a thing** : prétendre à qqch. ; avoir des prétentions à.
claim : réclamer, prétendre.
clamour : cri, *m.* ; clameur, *f.* ; bruit, *m.*
clap : bruit, fracas, *m.*
clasp : embrasser, étreindre, serrer.
class : classe, *f.* ; ordre, *m.*
clear : clair, net, évident ; **— purposed**, préconçu
cleared : défriché (soil).
Clement : Clément.
clever : habile, adroit.
climate : climat, *m.*
climb : *tr.*, monter, grimper sur.
clime : climat, *m.*
cloak : manteau, *m.*
clock : horloge, pendule, *f.* ; **one o' —** : une heure.
close by : tout près de.
close : *tr.*, fermer, conclure, terminer.
close-shut : étroitement fermé.
clothe : *tr.*, habiller, revêtir, vêtir, couvrir.
clothing : vêtement, m.
cloud : nuage, *m.*
cloud : obscurcir.
cloudy : nuageux, obscur, sombre, couvert (ciel), chargé de nuages.
club : société, *f.* ; cercle, *m.*
coat : habit, *m.*
coin : pièce de monnaie, *f.*
cold : froid, *m.*
cold : froid.
collapse : s'affaisser, s'écrouler.
collect : recueillir, ramasser.
collective : collectif.
colonial : colonial.
colony : colonie, *f.*
colour : couleur, *f.*
coloured people : indigènes, *m. pl*
colourless : pâle, incolore.
Columbus : Colomb, *m.*
comb : peigne, *m.* ; crête, *f.*

combat: combat, *m.*
combine: combiner, arranger, se liguer, se coaliser.
combined: coalisé.
come: venir, arriver, s'avancer (vers), se diriger; **to — across**: s'avancer; **to — back**: revenir; **to — forth**: apparaître, sortir, s'avancer; **to — into**: entrer dans, envahir; **to — in (into)**: entrer (dans); **to — from**: sortir (de); **to — out**: sortir; **to — over**: venir, traverser; **to — to**: parvenir, se rendre, arriver; **to — up**: monter; **to — up to**: aller à, s'approcher de.
comfort: consolation, *f.*; agrément, *m.*; bien-être, *m.*
command: commandement, ordre, *m.*; **to have at —**: pouvoir disposer de.
command: commander à.
commander: commandant, général, chef, *m.*
commencement: commencement, début, *m.*
commendation: recommandation, *f.*
commerce: commerce, *m.*
commit: commettre.
common: bruyère, *f.*
common: commun, ordinaire, populaire, moyen; **— soldier**, simple soldat; **—ly**: communément, ordinairement.
Commons (House of): chambre des communes, *f.*
community: communauté, société, *f.*
companion: compagnon, *m.*
company: compagnie, société, *f.*; gens, *m.* & *f.*; troupe, *f.*
compare: comparer.
compel: forcer, contraindre, astreindre, obliger.
complain: se plaindre.
complaint: plainte, *f.*: mécontentement, *m.*
complete: complet, achevé, parfait; **—ly**: complètement.
comply: s'accommoder à, se rendre à.
compose: composer.
composure: tranquillité, *f.*; calme, *m.*
comprise: contenir, renfermer.
compulsion: contrainte, *f.*
conceal: cacher, dissimuler.
concealment: retraite, *f.*
conceive: concevoir.
concern: toucher, regarder.
concerning: concernant, touchant, au sujet de.
concert: concert, *m.*; **by concert**: de concert.
concession: concession, *f.*
conciliation: conciliation, *f.*
conclude: conclure, déterminer.
conclusion: conclusion, décision, *f.*
conduct: conduite, *f.*
conduct: mener, conduire, produire.
confederacy: confédération, alliance, *f.*
confess: confesser, avouer, reconnaître.
confide: se fier, se confier à, compter sur.
confidence: confiance, *f.*
confine: borner, limiter.
confused: confus, éperdu,
congratulate: féliciter, se réjouir.
congregation: assemblée, *f.*; auditoire, *m.*
conjecture: conjecturer, imaginer.
conjugal: conjugal.
connexion: rapport, *m.*; relations, *f. pl.*
conquer: conquérir, vaincre.
conqueror: conquérant, vainqueur, *m.*
conquest: conquête, victoire, *f.*
conscience: conscience, *f.*
conscious (to be — of guilt): se sentir (savoir) coupable.

consent: consentir à.
consequence: conséquence, suite, *f.*; résultat, *m.*
consider: *tr.*, regarder, considérer, songer (à); *intr.*, méditer, réfléchir.
consideration: considération, importance, *f.*; égard, *m.*
considering: attendu que, vu que, d'après, considérant, en égard à.
consist: consister (en, dans), être composé (de).
console: consoler.
constant: constant, continuel; —**ly**: constamment, continuellement.
constitute: constituer, composer.
constitutionally: constitutionnellement.
construct: construire, bâtir, établir.
contain: contenir, renfermer.
contemplation: contemplation, méditation, *f.*
contempt, mépris, dédain, *m.*
contemptuous: méprisant, dédaigneux.
content: content, satisfait; **to be — to**: se contenter de.
contents: contenu, *m.*
continue: continuer.
continuously: *ad.*, sans cesse, continuellement.
contracted: étroit, restreint.
contrary: contraire, opposé, *m.*; **on the —**: au contraire.
contrary: contraire, opposé.
contrast: contraste, *m.*
contribute: contribuer, fournir.
control: autorité, *f.*; **to have — over oneself**: maîtriser ses passions; **beyond —**: qu'on est impuissant à maîtriser.
control: contrôler, gouverner, surveiller.
controversy: dispute, polémique, *f.*
conversation: conversation, *f.*; entretien, *m.*
converse: converser, parler.
convoke: convoquer, assembler.
cook: cuisinière, *f.*
cool: frais, froid, calme; —**ly**: froidement, de sang-froid.
corner: coin, *m.*; extrémité, *f.*
correct: corriger, châtier, rectifier.
corresponding: correspondant.
corrupt: *a.*, corrompu.
corrupt: corrompre.
corruption: corruption, dépravation, malversation, *f.*
cost: prix, *m.*
costly: cher, coûteux, somptueux, beau.
cottage: chaumière, *f.*
couch: couche, *f.*
couch: cacher, renfermer, concevoir.
council: conseil, corps, *m.*
counsel: conseil, avis, *m.*
count: comte, *m.*
count: compter, calculer.
countenance: contenance, figure, mine, *f.*
counter: jeton, *m.*
country: pays, *m.*; contrée, campagne, patrie, *f.*
countryman: compatriote, concitoyen, *m.*
courage: courage, *m.*
courageous: courageux.
course: course, carrière, *f.*; cours, *m.*
court: cour, *f.*
courtier: courtisan, *m.*
cover: couvrir, cacher, charger.
coward: poltron, lâche, *m.*
crackling: pétillement, *m.*
create: créer.
creature: créature, *f.*; être, *m.*
creep: ramper, se traîner; **to — into**: se blottir dans.
crescent: croissant, *m.*
crew: équipage, *m.*
crime: crime, *m.*

Crimea: Crimée, *f.*
criminal: criminel, coupable.
crisis: crise, *f.*
critic: critique, censeur, *m.*
criticism: critique, censure, *f.*
Crœsus: Crésus, *m.*
cross: croix, *f.*
cross: traverser.
crowd: foule, presse, populace, *f.*
crowded: pressé, rempli, bondé.
crown: écu, *m.*
crown: couronner, sacrer.
crucifix: crucifix, *m.*
cruel: cruel, inhumain, féroce.
crumb: miette, *f.*
crush: écraser, briser, étouffer.
cry: cri, *m.*; acclamation, clameur, *f.*
cry: crier, publier, proclamer.
culpable: coupable.
culture: culture, *f.*
curiosity: curiosité, *f.*
curl: boucle, *f.*
current: courant, *m.*
curse: malédiction, imprécation, *f.*; blasphème, *m.*
curtly: brusquement.
curve: courbe. *f.*
cushion: coussin, *m.*
cut: coupe, *f.*
cut: couper.

daily: *a.*, journalier, quotidien; *ad.*, journellement, quotidiennement, de jour en jour, d'un jour à l'autre.
dame: dame, *f.*; femme, *f.*
dance: danser.
Dane: Danois.
danger: danger, péril, *m.*
dangerous: dangereux.
dare: braver, oser, avoir la hardiesse.
daring: hardi, audacieux.
dark: sombre, obscur; **to be — (night)**: faire nuit noire.
darkness: obscurité, *f.*; ténèbres, *f. pl.*
date: date, *f.*
daughter: fille, *f.*
dawn: aurore, *f.*; aube, *f.*
day: jour, *m.*; journée, *f.*; âge, *m.*; **to —**; aujourd'hui; **the next —**: le lendemain; **in the —s of**: au temps de.
daylight: clarté du jour, *f.*; **in —**: en plein jour.
daytime: jour, *m.*; **in the —** en plein jour.
dazzling: éblouissant.
dead (the): *pl.*, les morts.
dead: mort.
deaf: sourd, insensible.
deal: quantité, partie, *f.*; **a great —, a good —**: une grande partie, beaucoup.
dean: doyen, *m.*
dear: cher, aimé, bon.
death: mort, *f.*
debt: dette, *f.*
decay: décadence, *f.*; **to go to —**: tomber en ruines.
decay: périr.
deceitful: trompeur.
deceive: décevoir, tromper; **to be —d**: se tromper.
December: décembre, *m.*
decide: décider, résoudre; **to — against**: condamner.
decipher: déchiffrer.
decisive: décisif.
deck: pont. *m.*
declare: déclarer, annoncer.
decline: baisser.
decorate: décorer, orner, embellir, parer.
decree: décret, *m.*
decree: accorder, décréter.
deed: action, *f.*; exploit, *m.*
deep: abîme, *m.*
deep: profound, creux.
defeat: défaite, déroute, *f.*
defeat: défaire, mettre en déroute.
defect: faute, *f.*; défaut, *m.*
defend: défendre, protéger, dissimuler.
defender: défenseur, *m.*

defensive: défensif.
defiant: hardi, défiant; **to be — of**: se moquer de.
defile: défilé, *m.*
degeneracy: dégénération, décadence, *f.*
degree: degré, *m.*
delicate: délicat, exquis, tendre.
delicious: délicieux, exquis.
delight: *tr.*, divertir, réjouir, plaire.
delightful: délicieux, charmant, captivant.
dell: vallée, *f.*; vallon, *m.*
demi-god: demi-dieu, *m.*
demolish: démolir, abattre, mettre en pièces.
demon: démon, *m.*
den: antre, *m.*; caverne, *f.*; repaire, *m.*
deny: nier, désavouer, refuser.
depart: partir.
departure: départ, *m.*
deportment: conduite, *f.*
depredation: déprédation, *f.*; pillage, *m.*
depressed: opprimé, déprimé, triste.
depression: dépression, *f.*
deprive: priver.
depth: profondeur, *f.*; abîme, *m.*
derive: dériver, provenir, procéder; **to — benefit from**: faire son profit de.
descend: *intr.*, descendre; **to — to**: conduire à.
descendant: descendant, *m.*
describe: décrire, dépeindre, rapporter.
desert: désert, *m.*
deserve: mériter, être digne.
design: dessein, *m.*; composition, *f.*
design: dessiner, composer.
desire: désir, *m.*; envie, *f.*
desire: désirer, souhaiter, demander, prier.
despair: désespoir, *m.*
despair: désespérer.
despatch: dépêche, *f.*
despatch: expédier, tuer.
despise: mépriser, dédaigner.
destination: destination, *f.*
destine: destiner.
destiny: destinée, *f.*
destitute: privé de, denué de.
destroy: détruire, dévaster, exterminer, tuer, ruiner.
destruction: destruction, ruine, *f.*; ravage, *m.*; perte, *f.*
detain: retenir, arrêter.
determine: décider, se décider à, arrêter.
devastation: dévastation, *f.* ravage, *m.*
devote, dévouer.
devour: dévorer.
dewy: de rosée.
diamond: diamant, *m.*
dictate: dicter.
die: mourir, expirer.
differ: distinguer; **to — from**: être d'un avis différent de.
different: différent, divers, varié.
difficult: difficile, pénible.
difficulty: difficulté, peine, *f.*
diffuse: répandre, étendre.
dignity: dignité, *f.*
dim: sombre, obscur.
dim: obscurcir, offusquer.
dine: dîner.
dint (by — of): à force de.
direct: direct, droit.
direct: ordonner, recommander.
direction: instruction, direction, *f.*; **in that —**: de ce côté.
dirk: dague, *f.*; poignard, *m.*
disable: défaire.
disagreeable: désagréable.
disappear: disparaître.
disappointment: désappointement, *m.*
disaster: désastre, malheur, *m.*; calamité, *f.*
disclosure: découverte, *f*; **to make —s**: dévoiler.
discover: découvrir, faire voir.
discredit: discrédit, *m.*

discuss: discuter, examiner, agiter.
disguise: déguiser.
disguise: déguisement, *m.*
disgust: dégoûter; **to be —ed with**: se plaindre de.
dish: plat, *m.*; assiette, *f.*
disinterested: désintéressé.
dislike: dégoût, *m.*; répugnance, antipathie, *f.*
dislodge: déloger.
dismal: sombre, triste.
dismay: crainte, épouvante, frayeur, *f.*
dismay: épouvanter, consterner.
dismiss: renvoyer, congédier, laisser partir.
dismount: descendre de sa monture, mettre pied à terre.
disordered: bouleversé.
disparity: différence, f.
dispense: distribuer.
display: déploiement, étalage, *m.*; profusion, manifestation, parade, *f.*
display: offrir, étaler, faire parade.
disposed: disposé, préparé, enclin, porté, incliné.
disposition: disposition, intention, inclination, *f.*; caractère, ordre, *m.*
dispute: querelle, *f.*
dispute: disputer.
disreputable: déshonorable.
distaff: quenouille, *f.*
distance: distance, *f.*; **at a —**: de loin, à distance; **at a little —**: à quelque distance.
distant: éloigné.
distinct: distinct, clair.
distinction: distinction, *f.*; caractère, *m.*
distinctive: distinctif.
distinguish: distinguer, reconnaître; **to — oneself**: se distinguer.
distinguished: distingué.
distress: malheur, *m.*; détresse, *f.*
distress: rendre malheureux, affliger.
diverting: amusant, plaisant.
divide: diviser, partager, se diviser.
do: faire, agir; **how — you —?** comment allez-vous?
doctor: médecin, *m.*
document: document, *m.*
dog: chien, *m.*
doll: poupée, *f.*
dollar: dollar, *m.*
domain: domaine, *m.*
domestic: domestique.
dominion: domination, possession, *f.*
Domremy: Domrémy.
donkey: âne, *m.*
doom: condamner.
door: porte, *f.*
double: doubler, augmenter.
doubt: doute, *m.*; incertitude, *f.*; soupçon, *m.*
doubt: douter, hésiter.
doubtless: sans doute.
dove: colombe, *f.*; pigeon, *m.*
down: le long de, vers.
draw: tirer, traîner, attirer; **to — near**: approcher de; **to—out**: tirer; **to—over**: tirer par-dessus.
drawer, tiroir, *m.*
drawing-room: salon, *m.*
dread: craindre, redouter.
dreadful: terrible.
dream: songer, rêver, se faire une idée de.
dreary: triste, lugubre.
dress: vêtement, *m.*; toilette, robe, *f.*
dress: *tr.*, vêtir, habiller, parer.
dressing-gown: robe de chambre, *f.*
drink: boire.
drive: *tr.*, pousser, chasser: **to — along**: pousser en avant; (of snow), tourbilloner.
droll: amusant, plaisant.
dry: sec.
ducat: ducat, *m*

due: droit, *m.*; **to be — to**: dépendre de.
due: *a.*, dû, requis, nécessaire, voulu.
duke: duc, *m.*
dull: stupide, borné, insensible.
during: pendant, durant.
dust: poussière, *f.*
Dutch: 'hollandais.
duty: devoir, *m.*; taxe, *f.*; impôt, *m.*; attribution, obligation, tâche, *f.*
dwell: demeurer, s'arrêter sur.
dwelling: habitation, demeure, *f.*
dynasty: dynastie, *f.*

each: *pr.* chacun, chacune; *a.*, chaque; — **other**: se, l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, réciproquement.
eager: désireux, empressé, vif, ardent.
eagle: aigle, *m.*
ear: oreille, *f.*
earl: comte, *m.*
early: *a.*, précoce, hâtif; *ad.*, de bonne heure, vers le commencement.
earnestly: sérieusement, instamment.
earring: boucle d'oreille, *f.*
earth: terre, *f.*; monde, *m.*
earthquake: tremblement de terre, *m.*
ease: aise, *f.*; luxe, *m.*; facilité, *f.*; **to be at one's —**: se sentir à l'aise.
easily: facilement.
East: Est, Orient, *m.*
eastern: oriental, de l'Orient.
easy: aisé, facile; — **-chair**: fauteuil, *m.*
eat: manger, dévorer.
ebb: descendre.
echo: écho, *m.*; acoustique, *f.*
eddy: tourbillonner.
edge: bord, *m.*
Edinburgh: Édimbourg.
Edward: Édouard.
effect: effet, résultat, *m.*
effort: effort, *m.*
Egypt: Égypte, *f.*
eight: huit.
eighteen: dix-huit.
eighth: huitième.
eighty: quatre-vingts.
either: *pr.* l'un ou l'autre; *c.*, soit, ou; **either . . . or**: ou . . . ou.
elder: ancien, *m.*
eldest: aîné.
election: élection, *f.*
electorate: électorat, *m.*
eleven: onze.
Elizabeth: Elizabeth.
elm: orme, *m.*
else: autre; **nobody —**: aucun autre, personne autre, nul autre.
elsewhere: ailleurs.
embark: s'embarquer.
emboss: bosseler, graver.
embrace: embrasser.
emerald: émeraude, *f.*
emperor: empereur, *m.*
empire: empire, *m.*: autorité, domination, *f.*
employ: employer, occuper, se servir de.
employment: emploi, *m.*; charge, condition, *f.*
empty: vider.
encampment: camp, *m.*; campement, *m.*
enclosure: clôture, *f.*; enclos, *m.*
encounter: rencontrer.
encourage: encourager.
end: bout, *m.*; fin, conclusion, *f.*; côté, *m*; **to come to an —**: se terminer; **to put an — to**: mettre fin à.
end: finir, terminer, achever; **to — in**: se terminer par.
endeavour: effort, *m.*; peine, *f.*
endeavour: essayer, s'efforcer, tâcher.
endless: infini, interminable, innombrable.
endow: douer de.

endowment: don, *m.*
endure: endurer, supporter.
enemy: ennemi, adversaire, *m.*
engage: s'engager.
England: Angleterre, *f.*
English: Anglais, anglais.
engraving: gravure, *f.*
enjoy: jouir de.
enjoyment: jouissance, *f.*; plaisir, *m.*; distraction, *f.*
enlighten: éclairer, instruire.
enmity: inimitié, haine, *f.*
enough: assez, suffisamment, justement.
enter: entrer dans, admettre, inscrire, pénétrer dans.
entertain: entretenir, traiter, recevoir.
entertainment: entretien, agrément, *m.*, réception, *f.*
enthusiasm: enthousiasme, *m.*
enthusiastic: enthousiaste.
entire: entier, complet, tout; —**ly**: entièrement.
entrance: entrée, *f.*
entreat: supplier, conjurer, prier.
entreaty: prière, sollicitation, supplication, *f.*
entrust: confier à.
envenom: envenimer.
envious: envieux, jaloux.
envy: envie, jalousie, *f.*
equal: égal, compagnon, *m.*
equal: égal, semblable; —**ly**: également.
equal: égaler, rivaliser, faire l'égal de.
era: ère, époque, *f.*
erase: raser, effacer.
erect: ériger, élever.
error: erreur, méprise, faute, *f.*
Erymanthus: Érymanthe.
escape: fuite, évasion, *f.*
escape: *intr.*, échapper, fuir, s'échapper, s'évader.
eschew: éviter, renoncer à.
escort: escorter, accompagner.
especial: spécial; —**ly**: spécialement, particulièrement, surtout.
establish: établir, affermir, fonder.
establishment: établissement, *m.*
estate: domaine, *m.*; propriété, *f.*
esteem: estime, *f.*; respect, *m.*
estimate: appréciation, *f.*
estimate: estimer.
eternal: éternel.
European: Européen.
Eustace: Eustache.
evacuate: évacuer.
even: même, encore.
evening: soir, *m.*; soirée, *f.*
event: événement, *m.*
ever: toujours, jamais; **for** —, à jamais.
every: *tr.*, chacun; *a.*, chaque, tout.
everybody: tout le monde, chacun.
everything: tout.
everywhere: partout.
evidence: preuve, *f.*; témoignage, *m.*; **to believe the** — **of one's senses**: en croire ses yeux.
evident: évident, clair; —**ly**: évidemment, sans doute.
exact: exact, précis, soigneux, parfait; —**ly**: exactement, juste, justement, tout juste.
example: exemple, modèle, *m.*
exceed: dépasser, surpasser.
exceedingly: excessivement, extrêmement, fort.
excel: *tr.*, surpasser.
excellent: excellent.
except: à moins que, excepté, hormis, sauf.
excess: excès, *m.*
exchange: échange, *m.*
excite: exciter.
excitement: excitation, agitation, *f.*; encouragement, *m.*
exclaim: s'écrier.
excuse: excuse, *f.*
excuse: excuser, disculper, justifier.
execute: exécuter, accomplir.

execution: exécution, *f.*; accomplissement, *m.*; **to carry into —**: mettre à exécution.
exercise: exercice, *m.*
exercise: exercer.
exhibit: montrer, produire, faire voir.
exist: exister, être.
expand: *intr.*, se développer, s'épanouir.
expect: attendre, espérer, s'attendre à, supposer.
expedition: expédition, *f.*
expense: dépense, *f.*; frais, *m. pl.*
experience: expérience, *f.*
experienced: expérimenté.
expose: exposer.
expostulate: contester, se plaindre.
expound: expliquer, estimer, interpréter.
express: exprès; **— -train**: rapide, *m.*
express: marquer, exprimer, énoncer, représenter.
exquisitely: *ad.*, d'une manière exquise.
extend: *intr.*, s'étendre.
extensive: vaste, d'une grande étendue.
extravagance: luxe, *m.*
extreme: extrême, *m.*
exuberant: exubérant.
eye: œil, *m.*; (*pl.* yeux), regard, *m.*; vue, *f.*

face: visage, *m.*; figure, *f.*; **— to —**: face à face.
facility: facilité, *f.*
fact: fait, *m.*; **in —**: en (au) fait, en effet.
fail: *intr.*, abandonner, manquer, ne pouvoir.
failure: échec, insuccès, *m.*
fair: beau.
faith: foi, *f.*
faithful: fidèle.
fall: chute, *f.*; prise, *f.*
fall: *intr.*, tomber, laisser tomber; **to — upon**: attaquer, se jeter sur, s'abattre sur.
fallen: tombé, abattu.
false: faux.
falsehood: tromperie, *f.*
falsify: contrefaire, altérer.
falter: se troubler, échouer, se perdre.
fame: renommée, gloire, *f.*
familiar: familier.
family: famille, *f.*
famine: famine, *f.*
famous: fameux, renommé, célèbre.
fancy: imagination, *f.*; esprit, *m.*; fantaisie, *f.*; caprice, *m.*
fancy: s'imaginer, se figurer, penser.
far: *a.*, éloigné, loin, reculé, lointain; *ad.*, loin, au loin, beaucoup, très; **as — as**: aussi bien que, autant que.
fare: nourriture, *f.*
farewell: adieu, *m.*
farm: ferme, *f.*; **—house**: ferme, *f.*
farmer: fermier, *m.*
farmer-general: fermier-général.
farther: plus loin, au-delà.
farthest: *a.*, le plus éloigné; *ad.*, au plus loin.
fashion: forme, façon, coutume, manière, mode, *f.*; usage, rang, *m.*
fast: *a.*, vite, rapide.
fast: *adv.*, vite, rapidement; **—hurrying**: au cours rapide.
fatal: fatal, funeste.
fate: destin, sort, *m.*
father: père, *m.*; **fathers**: *pl.*, aïeux, *m. pl.*
fatigue: fatigue, *f.*
fault: faute, *f.*; **to find — with**: trouver à redire, trouver fautif.
faultless: sans défaut.
favour: grâce, *f.*; avantage, *m.*
favourable: favorable, convenable.
favoured: favorisé.

favourite : favori, *m.* ; favorite, *f.*
fear : peur, *f* ; crainte, *f.*
fear : craindre, redouter.
fearful : terrible, plein d'horreur, affreux.
feather : plume, *f.*
feature : trait, *m.* ; phase, *f.*
February : février, *m.*
feeble : faible.
feed : nourrir, soigner, donner à manger.
feel : *tr.*, sentir, ressentir, éprouver ; *intr.*, se sentir, sentir.
feeling : sentiment, *m.*
felicity : bonheur, *m.* ; félicité, *f.*
fellow : compagnon, camarade, garçon, *m.*
ferment : fermenter.
fertilise : fertiliser.
fetch : chercher.
feud : hostilité, animosité, *f.*
feudal : féodal.
few : peu ; **a —** : un peu, un petit nombre, peu de, quelque.
fidelity : fidélité, honnêteté, *f.*
field : champ, *m* ; — **of battle** : champ de bataille.
fierce : féroce, cruel, farouche.
fifteen : quinze.
fifth : cinq, cinquième.
fight : *tr.*, combattre ; **to — a battle** : tenir tête à, livrer bataille ; **to — one's way** : faire son chemin.
figure : figure, forme, statuette, taille, *f.*
fill : emplir, remplir.
finally : définitivement.
finance : finance, *f.*
find : constater, trouver, découvrir, apercevoir, voir, se procurer, rencontrer ; **to — out** : découvrir, reconnaître, voir, trouver ; **to — oneself**, se trouver ; **to — one another**, se trouver.
fine : beau, gros, élégant, exquis, louable.
finger : doigt, *m.* ; — **ring** : bague, *f.*
fiord : fiord, *m.*
fir : pin, sapin, *m.*
fire : feu, *m.* ; incendie, *m.* ; **to be on —** : être en feu.
fireside : cheminée, *f.* ; coin du feu, *m.*
firing : bruit de canon.
firm : ferme ; **—ly** : fermement, fortement.
first : *a.*, premier ; *ad.*, premièrement, d'abord ; **at —** : d'abord.
fish : poisson, *m.*
fit : convenable, propre, apte, approprié, armé pour.
five : cinq.
fix : fixer, attacher, arrêter.
fixed : fixé.
flake : flocon, *m.*
flame : flamme, f.
flashing : fulgurant.
flat : plat, uni ; — **stones** : dalles, *f. pl.*
flee : s'enfuir.
flight : fuite, *f.*
fling : lancer ; **to — away** : rejeter, repousser.
flock : troupeau, *m.*
flock : *intr.*, accourir.
floor : plancher, *m.*
flow : couler, découler, monter.
flower ; fleur, *f.*
fluttering : agité.
fly : fuir, voler, s'écouler, se répandre ; **to — open** : s'ouvrir brusquement.
foe : ennemi, *m.*
foible : faiblesse, *f.*
fold : plier, croiser.
follow : suivre, accompagner, imiter, s'ensuivre, résulter.
following : *a.*, suivant.
folly : folie, sottise, extravagance, *f.*
fond : **to be — of** : aimer, affectionner.
fool : sot, niais, *m.*
foot : pied, *m.* ; patte, *f.* (*anim.*) ;

(*mil.*) infanterie, *f.*; fantassins, *m. pl.*
for: *prp.*, pour, à cause de, quant à; *c.*, car, aussi bien, en égard à, parce que.
foray: razzia, *f.*
force: force, vigueur, validité *f.*; **to keep in —**: maintenir en vigueur.
force: forcer, contraindre, obliger.
foreign: étranger.
foreigner: étranger, *m.*
forerunner: avant-coureur, précurseur, *m.*
foresight: prévoyance, *f.*
forest: forêt, *f.*
forget: oublier.
forgive: pardonner à.
form: forme, figure, espèce, *f.*
form: faire; former, façonner, se faire, se former.
formal: formel, étudié.
former: premier, précédent, celui-là, celle-là; **—ly**: autrefois, jadis.
formidable: formidable, redoubtable.
forsake: abandonner, quitter.
fort: fort, *m.*
forthwith: sur-le-champ, aussitôt.
fortification: fortification, *f.*
fortify: fortifier.
fortune: fortune, renommée, *f.*; sort, hasard, *m.*; aventure, *f.*
forty: quarante.
foul: sale, malpropre.
founder: fondateur, *m.*
four: quatre.
fourteen: quatorze.
fourteenth: quatorze, quatorzième.
fourth: quatre, quatrième.
fragrance: parfum, *m.*
frame: construction, *f.*; cadre, *m.*; **— of mind**: disposition, *f.*
Francis; François.
Frank: Franc.
Frederic(k): Frédéric.
free: libre, aisé; **to leave it — to**: laisser la liberté à.
freedom: liberté, indépendance, *f.*
freeze: geler, glacer.
French: français, *m.*; langue française, *f.*
French: français.
French(man): Français, *m.*
frequently: fréquemment.
fresh: frais.
friend: ami, *m.*; amie, *f.*
friendship: amitié, *f.*
fright(en): effrayer, épouvanter; **to be frightened**: avoir peur.
from: de, par, dès, depuis, d'après.
front: façade, *f.*; **in —**: devant, par devant, sur le devant, en face.
frontier: frontière, *f.*
frost: gelée, *f.*
fruit: fruit, *m.*
fulfilment: accomplissement, *m.*
full: plein, rempli, entier; **to be quite — of**: déborder de.
fulness: plénitude, *f.*
fun (to make — of): se moquer de.
fund: fonds, *m.*
fur: fourrure, *f.*
furious: furieux.
furnish: décorer, meubler.
fury: rage, colère, *f.*
future: avenir, *m.*; **for the —**: à (pour) l'avenir.

gain, gagner, obtenir, profiter; **to — a victory**: remporter une victoire.
gallant: vaillant, brave, courageux, élégant.
gallery: galerie, *f.*
gallop: galoper.
garb: vêtement, costume, *m.*
garden: jardin, *m.*
garment: vêtement, *m.*; robe, *f.*
garret, grenier, *m.*; mansarde, *f.*
gate: porte, *f.*
gather: cueillir, ramasser, assembler, réunir, rassembler.

gaunt : maigre, décharné, sec.
gauntlet : gantelet, *m.*
gay : gai, joyeux.
general : général, *m.*
general : général, universel, commun, public ; —**ly** : généralement, en général, pour la plupart.
generosity : générosité, *f.*
generous : généreux, bienfaisant, noble.
genial : doux, propice, joyeux.
genius : génie, *m.*
gentle : doux, noble, bénin, bénévole, paisible.
gentleman : monsieur, gentilhomme, *m.*
gentleness : douceur, noblesse, naissance, *f.*
gentry : haute bourgeoisie, *f.*
George : Georges.
German : Allemand, *m.* ; *a.*, allemand.
Germany : Allemagne, *f.*
get ; obtenir, gagner, saisir, s'emparer ; **to — on** : réussir, être ; **to — up** : se lever, monter ; **to — up behind** : monter en croupe ; — **up !** debout !
gewgaw : joujou, *m.* ; babiole, *f.*
ghost : revenant, *m.*
Gipsy : Bohémienne, *f.*
gipsydom : la vie auprès des Gypsies, vie de Bohémiens.
girl : jeune fille, *f.* ; **little —** : petite fille.
give : donner, offrir, prêter, rendre ; **to — battle** : livrer bataille ; **to — up** : rendre, abandonner ; **to — way** : céder.
glacier : glacier, *m.*
glad : aise, heureux, joyeux.
gladden : réjouir.
glance : éclat, coup d'œil, *m.* ; **to cast a — over** : jeter un coup d'œil sur.
glance : hasarder un regard, jeter un coup d'œil.
glen : vallée, *f.* ; vallon, *m.*
gliding : glissant.
glitter : briller, scintiller, étinceler.
gloom : ténèbres, *f. pl.* ; obscurité, *f.*
gloomy : lourd, sombre, triste.
glorious : superbe.
glory : gloire, *f.*
go : aller, marcher, partir, s'en aller, se rendre, exister ; **to — away** : s'en aller ; **to — in** : entrer (dans) ; **to — off** : s'en aller, s'échapper ; **to — on** : exister, avancer, continuer ; **to — through** : parcourir, traverser ; **to — up against** : marcher contre.
goal : but, *m.*
God : Dieu, *m.* ; —**s** : dieux.
godlike : divin, de dieu.
gold : or, *m.*
golden : d'or, doré.
golden-crested : à couronne d'or
gondola : gondole, *f.*
good : bien, *m.*
good : bon, bienveillant, sage, vertueux, convenable, favorable ; — **-humoured** ; gai, joyeux, bienveillant ; — **-natured** : brave, bon, bienveillant, sans malice.
good ! : bien ! bon ! c'est bien !
goodness : bonté, *f.*
goods : effets, *m. pl.* ; marchandises, *f. pl.* ; produits, *m. pl.*
gorgeous : splendide, somptueux.
gospel : Evangile, *m.*
govern : gouverner.
government : règne, gouvernement, *m.* ; administration, *f.*
governor : gouverneur, *m.*
Grace : altesse, *f.*
grace : grâce, faveur, simplicité, *f.*
graceful : gracieux, élégant.
grand : grand, énorme, sublime.
grandeur : grandeur, magnificence, *f.*

grandson : petit-fils, *m.*
grapple : accrocher, attacher à.
grasp : saisir, serrer.
grass : herbe, *f.* ; — **-grown** : couvert d'herbe gazonné.
grating : grille, *f.* ; judas grillé, *m.*
gratitude : reconnaissance, *f.*
gratuity : pourboire, *m.*
grave : tombeau, *m.*
grave : grave, posé.
gravity : gravité, *f.*
great : grand, gros, considérable, éminent, massif, puissant, immense, vaste ; — **ly** : beaucoup, très, fort.
greatness : grandeur, dignité, *f.*
Greece : Grèce, *f.*
Greek : Grec, *m.* ; *a.*, grec.
green : pelouse, *f.*
green : vert.
greet : saluer.
greeting : salut, *m.*
grey : gris, sombre.
grim : renfrogné, rude.
ground : terre, *f.* ; (floor) carreau, *m.* ; **to fall to the** — : tomber par (à) terre.
group : grouper ; **to** — **together** : serrer.
grow : croître, pousser, devenir ; **to** — **up** : croître, devenir ; **to** — **out of** : résulter de.
growing : naissant, croissant.
growl : grognement, *m.*
growth : croissance, *f.*
guess : deviner, conjecturer, juger de.
guest : hôte, convive, *m.*
guide : guide, *m.*
guide : guider, conduire.
guilty : coupable ; **to be** — **of** : se rendre coupable de.
guinea : guinée, *f.*
gun : fusil, canon, *m.* ; arme à feu, *f.*

habit : habit, *m.* ; habitude, coutume, *f.*
habitation : habitation, demeure, *f.*
hair : cheveu, *m* ; chevelure, *f.*
half : moitié, *f.*
half : demi, à (de) moitié ; — **an hour** : demi-heure, *f.*
hall : salle, *f.* ; vestibule, manoir, *m.*
hallowed : saint.
halt : faire halte.
halter : corde, hart, *f.* ; licou, m.
hammer : marteau, *m.*
hand : main, *f.* ; **on the one, the other** — : d'un côté, de l'autre côté, au contraire.
hand : remettre ; **to have something handed to one** : recevoir.
handful : poignée, *f.* ; petit nombre, *m.*
handsome : beau, élégant, bien fait.
hang : *tr.*, pendre, pencher, suspendre, *intr.*, pendre ; **to** — **out of** : *intr.*, sortir de.
Hanover : Hanovre, *m*
happen : arriver, avoir lieu, se passer, se faire.
happily : heureusement, par bonheur.
happiness : bonheur, *m.*
happy : heureux.
hard : dur, difficile, pénible, cruel, triste ; —**ly** : *ad.*, guère, presque pas.
harden : endurcir.
hardness : dureté, rigueur, *f.*
hardship : difficulté, misère, *f.*
harm : tort, dommage, mal, *m.* ; **to do no** — : ne pas faire de mal.
harmless : inoffensif, innocent.
harmony : harmonie, *f.*
harper : joueur de harpe, *m.*
Harry : Henri.
harsh : rude, farouche, âpre.
hasten : *tr.*, hâter, précipiter ; *intr.*, s'empresser, se dépêcher.
hat : chapeau, *m.* ; **to lift the** —: se découvrir.

haunt : repaire, *m.* ; retraite, *f.*
haunt : hanter, obséder.
have : avoir, posséder, contenir, trouver ; **to — something done** : faire faire qqch. ; **to — to do** : devoir faire.
hazard : hasard, risque, *m.* ; **to be exposed to —** : courir du danger.
he : il, lui, celui.
head : tête, *f.* ; chef, *m.*
headache : mal de tête, *m.*
headless : sans tête.
health : santé, *f.*
heap : amonceler, entasser ; **to — up** : entasser.
hear : entendre, écouter, apprendre ; **to — of** : entendre parler de, être informé de.
hearer : auditeur, *m.*
heart : cœur, courage, *m.* ; âme, *f.*
hearthrug : tapis de cheminée (de foyer), *m.*
heartily : sincèrement, de tout son cœur, d'une façon satisfaite.
heat : chaleur, *f.*
heath : bruyère, *f.*
heathen : païen.
heaven : ciel, *m.*
heavy : pesant, lourd.
hedgerow : haie, *f.*
heed : considérer, observer, comprendre, écouter.
heel : talon, *m.*
height : hauteur, élévation, colline, *f.* ; sommet, *m.*
heir : héritier, *m.*
helmet : heaume, casque, *m.*
help : aide, *f.* ; secours, *m.*
help : aider, secourir, servir.
helpless : abandonné, incapable, faible, sans secours.
Henry : Henri.
her : *poss. pr.*, son, sa, ses ; *pers. pr.*, elle, la.
herd : troupeau, *m.*
here : ici ; **— is** : voici.
hermit : ermite, *m.*
hero : héros, *m.*
herself : elle-même.
hesitation : hésitation, incertitude, *f.*
hidalgo : hidalgo, *m.*
hide : *tr.*, cacher, enfouir, céler.
high : haut' élevé, fier, altier, supérieur, long, sublime, grand.
highland : écossais montagnard.
highway : grand chemin, chemin public, *m.*
hill : colline, montagne, *f.* ; mont, *m.*
him : lui, le.
himself : se, soi-même, lui-même.
hint : insinuation, *f.*
his : son, sa, le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes.
historian : chroniqueur, *m.*
historic(al) : historique.
history : histoire, *f.*
hither : ici.
hoary-headed : à cheveux blancs.
hold : prise, *f.* ; appui. *m.*
hold : tenir, retenir, prendre, garder ; **to — out** : résister, tenir ; **to — up** : élever, présenter.
hollow : creux, val, *m.*
hollow : creux.
holy : saint.
homage (to do) : rendre hommage.
home : maison, *f.* ; **at —** : au logis, à la maison, chez soi, dans sa patrie, chez lui, chez elle ; **to come —** : rentrer (retourner) à la maison ; **to go —** : rentrer chez soi.
Homer : Homère.
homeward(s) : chez soi, vers son pays.
honest : honnête, sincère, intègre ; **an — man** : un homme d'honneur.
honour : honneur, respect, *m.* ; charge, dignité, *f.*
honour : faire honneur à.
honourable : honnête.
hoop : cercle, lieu, *m.*
hope : espérance, *f.* ; espoir, *m.*

hope: espérer, attendre, désirer.
horn: corne, pointe, *f.*
horse: cheval, *m.*; (*mil.*) cavalerie, *f.*; **on —back**: à cheval.
horseman: cavalier, *m.*
hospitable: hospitalier.
hospitably: avec hospitalité.
hospital: hôpital, *m.*
host: armée, *f.*
hostile: *a.*, hostile, ennemi.
hot: chaud; **to be —**: avoir chaud.
hour: heure, *f.*; moment, *m.*
house: maison, habitation, *f.*
household: ménage, *m.*; maison, *f.*
hovel: masure, baraque, *f.*
how: comment, comme.
however: cependant, pourtant, néanmoins, toutefois, quelque, tout.
huge: vaste, énorme.
human: humain; **— being**: homme, *m.*
humanity: humanité, *f.*
humble: humble, modeste.
humbly: humblement.
humour: humeur, disposition, *f.*; caprice, caractère, divertissement, *m.*
hundred: centaine, *f.*
hundred: cent.
hunter: chasseur, *m.*
hurry: *intr.*, presser, se presser, se hâter.
hurt: faire du mal, faire tort à.
husband: mari, *m.*
hush: se taire.
hut: hutte, *f.*

I: je, moi.
idea: idée, notion, *f.*
ideal: idéal.
identification: identification, identité, *f.*
identify: reconnaître.
idle: paresseux, oisif.
if: si, pourvu que; ou — ou; **if not**: sinon.
ignorance: ignorance, *f.*
ignorant: ignorant.
ill: mauvais, malade, méchant; *ad.*, mal.
illiberal: étroit, sordide.
illness: maladie, *f.*
illustrious: illustre, célèbre.
imaginary: imaginaire.
imagination: imagination, pensée, idée, *f.*
imagine: *tr.*, inventer; *intr.*, s'imaginer, concevoir.
imbecility: faiblesse, *f.*
immediate: immédiat; —**ly**: immédiatement, aussitôt, au même instant, sur le champ.
immense: immense, vaste.
immortality: immortalité, *f.*
impart: communiquer.
impartially: impartialement; avec impartialité.
impatient: impatient; —**ly**: *ad.*, impatiemment.
impending: imminent.
imperfectly: *ad.*, imparfaitement.
implicate: impliquer, compromettre.
implicitly: aveuglément.
import: importer.
importance: importance, conséquence, *f.*
important: important, considérable.
impossible: impossible.
impress: empreindre, graver; **to — upon**: appeler l'attention sur.
impression: impression, empreinte, trace, *f.*
imprint: imprimer, graver.
imprison: emprisonner.
imprisoned: en prison.
imprisonment: emprisonnement, *m.*
imprudence: imprudence, indiscrétion, *f.*
imprudent: imprudent.
impunity: impunité, *f.*; **with —**: impunément.

in : en, dans, sous, sur, à, de, dedans, pendant.
inanimate : inanimé.
incense : provoquer, exaspérer, irriter.
inch : pouce, *m.*
inclination : penchant, *m.*
inclined : enclin, porté.
include : inclure, comprendre.
included : compris, y compris.
increase : *tr.*, augmenter ; *intr.*, s'augmenter, s'agrandir, s'accroître, augmenter.
incursion : incursion, irruption, *f.*
indebted : endetté, redevable ; **I am — to you for** : je vous suis redevable de.
indeed : en vérité, vraiment, en effet.
independent : indépendant.
India : Inde, *f.* ; Indes, *f. pl.*
Indian : Indien, *m.*
indicate : indiquer, révéler.
indifference : indifférence, *f.*
indiscreet : indiscret, imprudent, inconsidéré.
indistinct : indistinct, confus.
individual : individuel, seul.
indomitable : indomptable.
induce : décider, persuader, engager.
industrious : actif, laborieux.
industry : industrie, *f.*
inestimable : inestimable.
inexpressible : inexprimable, ineffable.
infamous : infame, honteux.
infancy : enfance, *f.*
infant : jeune enfant, *m.* & *f.*
inferior : inférieur, au-dessous.
infest : infester.
infinite : infini, à l'infini.
inflexible : inflexible.
influence : influence, *f.* ; ascendant, *m.* ; autorité, *f.*
inform : informer, instruire, apprendre, avertir.
information : instruction, enquête, *f.* ; renseignement, *m.*
infrequently (not) : bien souvent.
inhabit : habiter, demeurer, vivre.
inhabitant : habitant, *m.*
inherit : hériter de, recevoir en héritage.
injure : faire tort à, blesser.
injury : injustice, *f.* ; tort, *m.* ; **to do an —**, nuire à.
inn : auberge, hôtellerie, *f.*
innocent : innocent.
innumerable : innombrable, un flot de.
inquire : demander, s'informer de.
insanity : folie, démence, *f.*
inscription : inscription, *f.*
insect : insecte, *m.*
inside : dedans, intérieur, *m.* ; **on the —** : au dedans.
insist : insister, exiger.
inspect : examiner.
instance : **for —** : par exemple.
instantly : immédiatement.
instinctive : instinctif ; **—ly** : d'instinct, par instinct.
instruct : instruire.
instruction : instruction, *f.*
instructive : instructif.
insure : assurer, garantir, exiger
insurgent : insurgé, révolté, *m.*
integrity : intégrité, probité,
intellect : intelligence, *f.*
intend : destiner, avoir l'intention, se proposer, prétendre.
intendant : intendant, *m.*
intense : intense, fort, excessif.
intensity : intensité, *f.*
intention : intention, *f.* ; **good —** : volonté droite, *f.*
inter : enterrer.
interest : intérêt, *m.*
interest : intéresser ; **to — oneself in** : s'intéresser à.
interesting : intéressant.
interior : intérieur, *m.*
intermingle : mêler (à), entremêler.
internal : intérieur, intime.

interrupt: interrompre, entre-couper, faire cesser, arrêter.
interval: intervalle, *m.*
intimate: intime.
into: en, dans, dedans.
intolerable: intolérable.
invade: envahir, usurper.
invader: envahisseur, *m.*
inveigh: invectiver; **to — against**: reprocher (à).
invent: inventer.
invincible: invincible.
invite: inviter, convier.
invoke: invoquer.
Irish(man): Irlandais, *m.*
irksome: fâcheux, ennuyeux.
iron: fer, *m.*
island: île, *f.*
issue: issue, sortie, conclusion, *f.*; événement, *m.*
it: il, elle, le, la, cela, ce.
Italy: Italie, *f.*
its: son, sa, ses.

jail: prison, *f.*
James: Jacques.
January: janvier, *m.*
jaw: mâchoire, *f.*
Jena: Iéna.
jest: plaisanter, se moquer de, railler.
Jesus: Jésus.
jewel: joyau, bijou, *m.*
Joan: Jeanne.
join: joindre, se joindre à.
joke: railler, plaisanter.
jolly: gai, enjoué, en goguettes.
Jordan: Jourdain, *m.*
journey: voyage, *m.*; **railway —**, parcours en chemin de fer.
joy: joie, *f*; plaisir, *m.*
judge: juge, *m.*
judge: juger.
judgment: jugement, *m.*
July: juillet, *m.*
jump: sauter.
just: *a.*, juste; *ad.*, juste, justement, également, exactement, tout à fait; **he is — gone out**: il vient de sortir; **— as if**: tout comme si; **— here**: ici même; **— now**: tout à l'heure; **— ly**: justement, exactement, à juste titre.
justice: justice, *f.*; **Court of Justice**: cour de justice, *f.*

keenly: âprement, vivement.
keep: tenir, garder; **to — up**: *tr.*, continuer.
kill: tuer, exterminer, mettre à mort, détruire.
killer: tueur, *m.*
kind: genre, *m.*; espèce, sorte, manière, *f.*
kind: *a.*, bienfaisant, bon, affable, bienveillant.
king: roi, *m.*
kingdom: royaume, règne, *m.*
kiss: baiser.
kitchen: cuisine, *f.*
knee: genou, *m.*; **to fall upon one's —s**: tomber à genoux.
kneel: s'agenouiller.
knife: couteau, poignard, *m.*
knight: chevalier, *m.*
knock: frapper.
knoll: hauteur, colline, *f.*
knot: nœud, *m.*
know: connaître, savoir, distinguer, discerner; **to — of**: savoir, connaître; **it is —n**: il est avéré; **not to —**: ignorer.
knowledge: connaissance, connaissances (*pl.*), science, *f.*

labour: travail, ouvrage, *m.*
lace: galonner, broder.
lad: jeune garçon, gaillard, *m.*
lade: charger
lady: dame, *f.*
lady-in-waiting: dame de compagnie, *f.*
laird: laird, *m.*
lamp: lampe, *f.*
land: pays, *m.*; terre, contrée, *f.*; terrain, *m.*
land: débarquer.

landlady: propriétaire, *f.*
language: langage, *m.*; langue, *f.*
large: gros, large, grand, fort, vaste.
last: dernier; **at** —: enfin.
last: durer, continuer, subsister.
late; tard, lent, feu; —**ly**: dernièrement, depuis peu.
latter: dernier, celui-ci, celle-ci, etc.
laugh: rire, ris, *m.*
laugh: rire.
laughable: risible.
law: loi, *f.*; droit, *m.*
lawgiver: législateur, *m.*
lawyer: avocat, *m.*
lay: *tr.*, mettre, placer, poser; **to** — **down**: étendre.
lead: conduire, mener.
leader: chef, *m.*
league: ligue, *f.*
learn: apprendre, étudier.
learned: savant; érudit; **the** —: les savants.
learning: science, érudition, *f.*; savoir, *m.*
least: *a.*, le plus petit, le moindre; *ad.*, moins; **at (the)** —: au moins, du moins; **not in the** —: point du tout, en aucune façon.
leather, cuir, *m.*; —**-covered**: recouvert de cuir.
leave (to take): prendre congé.
leave: *tr.*, quitter, abandonner, exposer, laisser; *intr.*, partir, renoncer à sa place; **to** — **behind**: laisser en arrière; **to** — **off**: s'arrêter, cesser de; **to** — **to**: départir; **to have something left**: rester, *imp.*
lecture: discours, *m.*; réprimande, *f.*
left: gauche, *f.*; *a.*, gauche; **on the** —: à gauche.
lend: prêter, fournir.
lender: prêteur, *m.*
length: longueur, étendue, distance, *f.*; **at** —: à la fin, enfin.
Leo: Léon.
less: *a.*, moindre, plus petit; *ad.*, moins.
lesson: leçon, instruction, *f.*
lest: de peur que, de crainte que, que . . . ne.
let: laisser, permettre, souffrir; **to** — **be**: oublier, laisser tranquille.
letter: lettre, *f.*; —**s**: *pl.*, lettres, alphabet, *m.*
levity: légèreté, inconstance, *f.*
liberal: libéral, généreux.
liberty: liberté, *f.*; **to be at** — **to**: être libre de.
library: bibliothèque, *f.*
licence: autorisation, *f.*; permission, *f.*
licentious: libertin, *m.*
lie: être couché, reposer, se reposer.
lieutenant: lieutenant, *m.*
life: vie, existence, *f.*; —**-giving**: vivifiant.
lift: lever.
light: lumière, lueur, clarté, *f.*; jour, *m.*
light: léger; —**ly**: légèrement,
lightning: éclair, *m.*; foudre, *f.*
like: *a.*, semblable, pareil, égal, même; *ad.*, comme; **to be** —: ressembler.
like: aimer, trouver bon, approuver, goûter.
likely: probablement.
likewise: pareillement, de même, aussi.
line: ligne, suite, rangée, *f.*; cordon, vers, *m.*
lion: lion, *m.*
lip: lèvre, *f.*
Lisbon: Lisbonne, *f.*
listen: écouter, prêter l'oreille, se mettre aux écoutes.
literary: littéraire.
literature: littérature, *f.*
litter: joncher.
little: peu, *m.*; faible partie, petite quantité, *f.*

little : *a.*, petit ; *ad.*, peu ; a — : un peu, quelque.
live : vivre, exister, demeurer, habiter.
lively : gai, vigoureux, enjoué.
lock : fermer à clef, refermer.
locust-tree : caroubier, *m.*
lodging : logis, *m.* ; quartiers, *m. pl.*
lofty : élevé, haut.
London : Londres, *m.*
lonely : solitaire, isolé, écarté.
long : *a.*, long, ennuyeux ; *ad.*, longuement, longtemps ; **no —er** : pas plus, ne . . . plus, plus ; — **-suffering** : longanimité, résignation, patience, *f.*
look : regard, coup d'œil, *m.* ; mine, *f.* ; air, aspect, *m.* ; présence, *f.*
look : *tr.*, regarder, voir, chercher ; *intr.*, sembler, avoir l'air, paraître ; **to — after** : avoir soin de, veiller à ; **to — at** : regarder, considérer ; **to — behind** : regarder par derrière ; **to — for** : attendre, chercher ; **to — up** : lever les yeux, porter le regard vers, regarder ; **to — out for** : épier ; **to — upon** : contempler.
lord : lord, *m.*
lose : perdre, être privé de ; **to — one's way** : s'égarer, se perdre.
loss : perte, *f.*
lost : déchu.
lothely : hideux.
love : amour, *m.*
love : aimer, chérir.
lover : amant, *m.*
low : *a.*, bas, peu élevé, profond.
loyalty : loyauté, fidélité, *f.*
lunch : goûter.
luncheon : goûter, *m.*
luxuriant : abondant.

machine : machine, *f.* ; mécanisme, *m.*
madam : madame, *f.*
Madeira wine : Madère, *m.*
magical : magique, merveilleux, enchanté.
magnanimity : magnanimité, *f.*
magnificence : gloire, splendeur, *f.*
magnificent : magnifique, pompeux.
maiden : jeune fille, *f.*
main : principal, *m.* ; **Spanish Main** : colonies espagnoles, *f. pl*
main : principal, capital, essentiel, le plus grand.
maintain : entretenir, soutenir.
majesty : majesté, *f.* ; **His Majesty** : Sa Majesté, *f.*
make : faire, composer, préparer, fabriquer, rendre, gagner ; **to — out** : déchiffrer.
maker : créateur, faiseur, *m.*
malleable : flexible.
man : homme, être, garçon, *m.* ; **men** : hommes, gens ; soldats, etc., *m. pl.*
manage : conduire, combiner, mener, administrer.
management : maniement, *m.* ; administration, *f.*
mankind : genre humain, *m.* ; hommes, *m. pl.*
manner : manière, habitude, mode, façon, *f.* ; —**s** : mœurs, *m. pl.* ; manières, *f. pl.*
mansion : maison, *f.* ; château, *m.*
manual : manuel, *m.*
manuscript : manuscrit, *m.*
many : *s.*, grand nombre, *m.* ; foule, *f.* ; peuple, *m.*
many : bien des, plusieurs, maint, beaucoup de, grand nombre, *m.* ; foule, *f.* ; force ; — **a time** : mainte fois ; **so —** : tant.
map : carte géographique, *f.* ; mappemonde, *f.*
marble : *a.*, de marbre.
March : mars, *m.*
march : marche, *f.*
march : marcher, se diriger vers.
Margaret : Marguerite.

mariner: marin, matelot, *m.*
mark: remarquer, considérer.
market: marché, *m.*; —-place: marché, *m.*
marquess, marquis: marquis, *m.*
marriage: mariage, *m.*
marry: *tr.* marier, épouser.
marshal: maréchal, *m.*
martial: martial.
Mary: Marie.
masquerade: mascarade, *f.*
mass: masse, *f.*; amas, *m.*
mass: amasser.
massive: massif, gros.
master: maître, *m.*; Monsieur (titre), *m.*
master: maîtriser, dompter, vaincre.
masterpiece: chef-d'œuvre, *m.*
match: mariage, parti, *m.*
mathematics: mathématiques, *f. pl.*
Matilda: Mathilde, *f.*
matrimony: mariage, *m.*
matter: matière, sujet, *m.*; affaire, *f.*; **no —**: n'importe; **what — ?** qu'importe ?
may: pouvoir; **— be**: il se peut, peut-être.
me: moi, me.
meadow: prairie, *f.*; pré, *m.*
mean: vouloir dire, signifier, penser; **to — to do**: vouloir faire; **what do you —?** que voulez-vous dire ?
meanly: médiocrement, pauvrement.
means: *pl.* moyen, expédient, *m.*; **by this —**: en conséquence.
meanwhile: en attendant, sur ces entrefaites, cependant.
measure (in some): en quelque façon, jusqu'à un certain point.
mediæval: du moyen-âge.
Medici: Médicis.
meek: doux, paisible.
meet: *tr.*, rencontrer, aller à la rencontre; *intr.*, se réunir, se rencontrer.
meeting: rencontre, assemblée, réunion, séance, *f.*
melodious: mélodieux, harmonieux.
member: membre, *m.*
memorable: important, mémorable.
memorial: souvenir. *m.*
Menelik: Ménélik.
mention: mention, *f.*
mention: mentionner, parler de, faire mention de.
merchant: négociant, commerçant, marchand, trafiquant, *m.*
mercy: miséricorde, pitié, clémence, *f.*
mere: simple, pur; **—ly**: seulement, simplement.
merit: mérite, *m.*; **to claim a —**: avoir une prétention au mérite.
mesmerism: magnétisme, *m.*
message: message, *m.*; commission, *f.*
metaphysics: métaphysique, *f.*
metropolis: métropole, capitale, *f.*
Mexico: le Mexique.
Michael: Michel.
middle: moyen, du milieu; **— of April**: la mi-avril.
middling: moyen, médiocre.
midst: milieu, centre, *m.*; **in the —**: au milieu.
mighty: puissant, vigoureux.
mile: mille, *m.*
military: militaire, des troupes.
milkman: laitier, *m.*
mill: moulin, *m.*
miller: meunier, *m.*
million: million, *m.*
mind: esprit, *m.*; intelligence, *f.*; **to make up one's —**: se décider, résoudre.
mine: le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes.
mingle: mêler, mélanger, confondre.
minister: ministre, *m.*
Ministry: Ministère, *m.*

minute: minute, *f.*; moment, *m.*
mirror: miroir, *m.*
mirthful: enjoué, amusant.
miscellaneous: mélangé, divers, varié.
misery: malheur, *m.*
misfortune: infortune, *f.*; malheur, *m.*
Miss: Mlle. (Mademoiselle).
miss: manquer, perdre.
mistake: faute, méprise, bévue, erreur, *f.*
mistake: *tr.*, se méprendre; *intr.*, se tromper; **to be —n**: se tromper.
misunderstand: comprendre mal.
mix: mêler, mélanger; **to — with**: fréquenter.
mobilisation: mobilisation, *f.*
mobilise: mobiliser.
modern: moderne.
modest: modeste.
modification: modification, *f.*
moment: moment, instant, *m.*
monarch: monarque, souverain, roi, *m.*
monarchy: monarchie, *f.*
monastery: monastère, couvent, *m.*
Monday: lundi, *m.*
money: argent, *m.*
month: mois, *m.*
moon: lune, *f.*
Moor: Maure, *m.*
moral: moral.
morals: mœurs, *f. pl.*
more: *ad.*, plus, davantage; **no —**: pas davantage, ne . . . plus.
moreover: de plus, en outre, d'ailleurs.
morning: matin, *m.*; matinée, *f.*; **next —**: le lendemain matin.
mortal: mortel, humain.
mortify: mortifier; **to feel mortified**: éprouver une mortification.
most: *a.*, le plus grand nombre, à peu près tout, la plupart; *ad.*, le plus, très; **—ly**: le plus souvent, pour la plupart.
mother: mère, *f.*
motionless: immobile.
mould: mouler, former, façonner, fondre.
mountain: montagne, *f.*
mourn: porter le deuil, être en deuil.
mourning: deuil, *m.*
move: mouvoir, toucher.
movement: mouvement, *m.*; marche, *f.*
Mr.: M. (Monsieur).
Mrs.: Mme. (Madame).
much: beaucoup, très, fort, bien; **as —**: **so —**: tant, autant; **too —**: trop; **very —**: beaucoup, fort; **how —**: combien?
mule: mulet, *m.*
multifarious: varié, multiple.
multiply: multiplier, étendre.
munificence: munificence, libéralité, *f.*
murmur: murmurer.
muscle: muscle, biceps, *m.*
music: musique, *f.*
must: falloir, devoir.
mutter: murmurer.
mutual: mutuel, réciproque.
my: mon, ma, mes.
mystery: mystère, secret, *m.*

nabob: nabab, *m.*
naked: nu, simple, clair, évident.
name: nom., surnom, *m.*; **of the — of**: nommé.
name: nommer, appeler.
Napoleon: Napoléon.
narrow: étroit, resserré, sec.
narrowness: étroitesse, *f.*
nascent: naissant.
nation: peuple, *m.*; nation, *f.*; pays, *m.*
national: national.
native: natif, naturel, *m.*
native: natal, natif, naturel, d'origine; **— land**: pays natal, *m.*

natural: naturel; — **philosophy**: philosophie naturelle, *f.*; —**ly**: naturellement, d'une façon naturelle.
nature: nature, *f.*; **by** —: de (par) nature.
naval man: officier de marine, *m.*
near: *a.*, proche, intime; *ad.*, près de, auprès, auprès de; —**ly**: presque.
neatness: propreté, *f.*
necessary: nécessaire, inévitable; **it is** —: il faut, avoir besoin de.
neck: cou, *m.*
need: avoir besoin de, falloir.
needful: nécessaire, indispensable, prudent.
neglect: négligence, *f.*
neglect: négliger.
neglected: négligé, sans grâce.
negotiation: négociation, *f.*
neighbour: voisin, *m.*
neighbourhood: voisinage, *m.*
neither: ni, non plus, ni l'un ni l'autre; — . . . **nor**: ni . . . ni.
nepenthe: remède, *m.*
Netherlands: Pays-Bas, *pl. m.*
Neva: Néva, *f.*
never: jamais; — **more (again)**, jamais plus.
new: neuf, nouveau.
news: nouvelle, *f.*; nouvelles, *f. pl.*
next: proche, prochain, suivant; **the** — **day**: le jour suivant, le lendemain.
nice: joli, agréable; —**ly**: soigneusement, proprement.
nigger: nègre, *m.*
night: nuit, *f.*; soir, *m.*: **to-** —: cette nuit, ce soir.
nightingale: rossignol, *m.*
Nile: Nil, *m.*
nine: neuf.
nineteen: dix-neuf.
ninety: quatre-vingt-dix.
no: *a.*, aucun, nul, pas un; *ad.*, non, non pas, nullement; — **one**: personne, aucun individu; — . . . **whatever**: aucun.
nobility: noblesse, *f.*
noble: noble, illustre, généreux.
noble: noble, *m.*
nobody: personne.
noise: bruit, fracas, *m.*
nominal: nominal.
nondescript: indescriptible.
noon: midi, *m.*
Norman: Normand.
Normandy: Normandie, *f.*
north: nord.
northern: du nord.
nose: nez, *m.*
not: non, pas, **ne point, ne . . . pas (point)**.
note: observer, remarquer.
nothing: rien.
notice: remarquer, s'apercevoir.
notion: notion, idée, pensée, *f.*
now: à présent, maintenant, actuellement, aujourd'hui, or; — **that**: alors que.
number: nombre, *m.*; quantité, *f.*; tas, *m.*
numberless: innombrable, en nombre infini.
numerous: nombreux.

oak: chêne, *m.*
oaken: de chêne.
obdurate: endurci, dur.
obedience: soumission, obéissance, *f.*
obey: obéir.
oblige: obliger, forcer, contraindre.
obscurity: obscurité, *f.*
observation: observation, *f.*
observer: observateur, témoin, *m.*
observe: observer, remarquer, faire remarquer, dire, constater.
obstacle: obstacle, *m.*
obstinately: obstinément, avec obstination.
obstruct: gêner, faire obstacle

obtain : obtenir, acquérir, se procurer.
occasion : fois, occasion, *f.*; **on this** — : cette fois-ci.
occasion : produire, causer.
occasionally : à l'occasion.
occupy : occuper, employer, habiter.
occur : avoir lieu, se rencontrer, arriver.
ocean : océan, *m.*
October : octobre, *m.*
odd : étrange, drôle, bizarre.
of : de, du, de la, des, en, par, sur, pour.
offence : affront, *m.*; **to give** — : offenser, choquer.
offend : offenser, irriter.
offer : offrir.
office : office, *m.*; charge, fonction, dignité, *f.*; rang, *m.*
officer : officier; représentant, *m.*
often : souvent, fréquemment.
old : vieux, âgé, ancien, antique; **to be ten years** — : avoir dix ans; —**-fashioned** : à la vieille mode, de forme ancienne; —**-man** : vieillard, *m.*
on : à, sur, en avant, après.
once : une fois, autrefois, jadis; **at** —: à la fois, immédiatement, aussitôt, en même temps.
one : *a.*, un, une; *pron.*, on; **the** — . . . **the other** : l'un . . . l'autre; — **another** : l'un l'autre, les uns les autres; **to make** — **of** : faire partie de, prendre part à.
only : *a.*, seul; *ad.*, seulement, simplement, ne . . . que; **not** — . . . **but also** : non seulement . . . mais encore; **I have** — **to** : je n'ai qu'à.
opal : opale, *f.*
open : ouvert; **in the** — **air** : en plein air.
open : ouvrir; **to** — **to** : *intr.*, ouvrir sur.
opinion : opinion, *f.*; jugement, *m.*
opportunity : occasion, *f.*
oppose : opposer, résister.
opulent : opulent, riche.
or : ou, soit, autrement.
oracle : oracle, *m.*
order : ordre, rang, arrangement, règlement, *m.*; **in** — **to** : pour, afin de.
order : disposer, arranger, ordonner, commander.
organisation : organisation, f.
organise : organiser.
original : originel, original primitif.
ornament : ornement, bijou, *m.*
ornament : décorer, orner.
Orpheus : Orphée.
other : autre; —**s** : *pl.*, autres, autrui.
ought : devoir, falloir.
our : notre, nos; —**s** : *pl.*, le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres.
out : hors; — **of oneself** : hors de soi.
outline : silhouette, *f.*; contour, *m.*
outside : dehors, en dehors.
outward : extérieur, étranger.
over : *prp.* sur, par, au-dessus de, par-dessus par; **to be** — : être passé.
overflow : se déborder; **to be** —**ed** : être noyé par.
over-knee : montant au-dessus du genou.
overreach : se fourvoyer.
overthrow : renverser, détruire.
overwhelm : accabler.
owe : devoir, être redevable de; être obligé de.
own : sien, particulier, propre.
owner : propriétaire.
ox : bœuf, *m.*

page : (of book) page, *f.*; (boy) page, *m.*
pain : peine, souffrance, douleur, *f.*
painful : pénible.
paint : peindre.
pair : paire. *f.*

palace: palais, *m.*
pale: pâle.
pamphlet: brochure, *f.*
paper: papier, journal, *m.*; —**s**: *pl.*, des papiers, paperasses, *f.*
parade: parade, *f.*
parade: *tr.*, faire parader.
parallel: parallèle, *f.*
paralyse: paralyser.
paramount: supérieur, premier, dernier, éminent.
parchment: parchemin, *m.*
pardon: pardon, *m.*; grâce, *f.*; **to beg —**: demander pardon.
park: parc, *m.*
parliament: parlement, *m.*
parlour: salle, salle de compagnie, *f.*; parloir, *m.*
parlour-maid: gardienne du parloir (école).
part: partie, *f.*; corps, *m.*; **for my —**: pour ma part, quant à moi.
part: se séparer, partir; **to — with**: quitter.
particle: parcelle, *f.*; brin, *m.*
particular: même, spécial.
partisan: partisan, *m.*
partly: en partie, en quelque sorte, à demi.
party: parti, groupe, *m.*; partie, *f.*; intérêt, *m.*
pass: *tr.*, passer, franchir; *intr.*, passer, donner, s'écouler.
passer-by: passant, *m.*
passion: passion, affection, *f.*; amour, *m.*
past: passé, *m.*
past: passé, dernier.
pateræ: patères, *f. pl.*
path: sentier, chemin, *m.*; route, *f.*
pathos: pathétique, *m.*; émotion, *f.*
patience: patience, *f.*
patrician: patricien.
patriotism: patriotisme, *m.*
patron: protecteur, *m.*
pave: paver.
pavilion: tente, *f.*; voile, *m.*
pay: payer, acquitter.
peace: paix, tranquillité, *f.*
peaceful: paisible, pacifique.
peasant: paysan, *m.*
peasantry: paysans, *m. pl.*
peculiar: particulier, singulier, unique.
penalty: peine, amende, *f.*; **under —**: sous peine.
pensive: *a.*, pensif; **—ly**: d'un air pensif.
people: peuple, *m.*; gens, *m.* & *f. pl.*, on; personne, *f.*
perceive: apercevoir, sentir, distinguer.
perfectly: parfaitement, complètement, tout à fait.
perfidious: perfide.
perform: exécuter; **to — on**: jouer de.
perhaps: peut-être.
peril: péril, risque, *m.*
perilous: de péril, périlleux, hasardeux.
period: période, époque, *f.*; **at a later —**: plus tard.
perish: périr, mourir, être perdu.
permanently: d'une manière permanente, pour toujours.
perpetrator: auteur, *m.*
perseverance: persévérance, *f.*
person, personne, *f.*; individu, personnage, *m.*; **of —**: de corps, **in —**, en personne.
personage: personnage, caractère, *m.*
personal: personnel.
persuade: *tr.*, persuader, décider.
Peter: Pierre.
petitioner: mendiant, *m.*
Philip, Philippe.
Philippa: Philippe.
philosopher: philosophe, moraliste, *m.*
philosophical: philosophique.
philosophy: philosophie, *f.*
physical: physique.
physiognomist: physionomiste, *m.*

physiognomy: figure, *f.*; caractère, m.
pick: cueillir: **to — up**: ramasser.
picture: tableau, *m.*; peinture, *f.*
picturesque: pittoresque.
piece: pièce, *f.*; morceau, *m.*; partie, *f.*; ouvrage, *m.*
pikeman: piquier, *m.*
pile: monceau, tas, *m.*; pile, *f.*; bûcher, *m.*
pilgrim: pèlerin, *m.*
pious: pieux, dévot.
pipe: tuyau, conduit, *m.*
piper: joueur de cornemuse, *m.*
pitch: degré, point, *m.*; **to reach a —**: être à son comble.
pity: prendre pitié, avoir pitié, plaindre.
place: place, *f.*; lieu, endroit, rang, emploi, *m.*: **in some —s**: par endroits; **to take —**: avoir lieu.
place: placer, mettre, ranger, construire.
plain: plaine, *f.*
plain: uni, simple, laid; **in — terms**: sans façon; **—ly**: nettement, clairement, évidemment.
plainness: laideur, *f.*
plan: plan, dessin, projet, *m.*; **to make —s**: dresser (former) des plans.
plant: plante, *f.*
plate: plaque (de métal), assiette, *f.*
play: jeu, divertissement, *m.*
play: *intr.*, jouer, s'amuser.
plaything: jouet, *m.*
plead: plaider.
pleasant: agréable, charmant, doux; **—ly**: agréablement.
please: plaire à; **as you —**: comme il vous plaira, à votre gré.
pleased: content, heureux.
pleasing: agréable, charmant.
pleasure: plaisir, *m.*; **to give —**: faire plaisir à, procurer du plaisir.
plebeian: plébéien, *m.*
pledge: gage, *m.*; caution, *f.*
pledge: engager; **to — a promise**: faire une promesse.
plenty: abondance, *f.*
pliant: pliant, flexible, docile.
plough: labourer.
plum: prune, *f.*
plunder: piller.
plunge: plonger, se précipiter.
pocket: poche, *f.*
poet: poète, *m.*
poetry: poésie, f.
point: pointe, *f.*; point, moment, degré, *m.*; **to — out**: indiquer, désigner.
poison: poison, *m.*
Pole: Polonais, *m.*
polite: poli; **—ly**: poliment, cérémonieusement.
political: politique.
politics: politique, *f.*
poor: pauvre, chétif, pitoyable, auvais; **a — man (beggar)**: pauvre, *m.*
Pope: pape, *m.*
popular: populaire.
popularity: popularité, *f.*
portal: portail, *m.*; porte, *f.*
portion: part, partie, *f.*; lot, *m.*
portrait(ure): portrait, *m.*; image, *f.*
position: position, situation, *f.*; **in —**: dans ses positions (*mil.*).
possess: posséder, jouir de.
possessed (to be — of): être en possession de, posséder.
possible: possible.
post: poste, *m.* & *f.*; position, *f.*
pound: livre sterling, *f.*
poverty: pauvreté, indigence, *f.*
power: pouvoir, *m.*; puissance, force, autorité, *f.*; talent, moyen, *m.*
powerful: puissant, efficace; **—ly**: puissamment, avec force
practical: pratique.

practice : pratique, expérience, habitude, *f.*
praise : louer, célébrer, vanter.
prattle : causer, murmurer.
pray : prier, supplier ; — (*imperat.*) je vous en prie.
prayer : prière.
preach : prêcher.
preacher : prédicateur, prêcheur, *m.*
precaution : précaution, prudence, *f.*
precious : précieux ; — **stone** : pierre précieuse, *f.*
precise : tout, précis, exact.
predecessor : prédécesseur, *m.*
predict : dire, prédire, pronostiquer.
prefer : préférer.
preparation : préparation, *f.* ; apprêt, préparatif, *m.*
prepare : *tr.*, préparer, disposer ; *intr.*, se disposer à.
presence : présence, *f.* ; maintien, port, *m.*
present : cadeau, *m.*
present : présent ; **at** — : à présent, maintenant ; —**ly** : alors.
present : présenter, offrir ; **to** — **oneself** : se présenter, paraître.
preserve : sauver, conserver.
press : presser, prier, contraindre.
presume : présumer, supposer, s'imaginer.
pretend : prétendre, feindre.
pretty : joli, gentil, élégant.
prevail : prévaloir, l'emporter.
prevent : empêcher.
previous : précédent, antérieur.
price : prix, *m.*
priest : prêtre, *m.*
primarily : en premier lieu, surtout.
prime minister : premier ministre, *m.*
prince : prince, souverain, *m.*
princess : princesse, *f.*
principal : principal, capital.
principle : principe, *m.* ; loi, *f.*
print : empreinte, *f.*
printing : imprimerie, *f.*
prison : prison, *f.* ; **take to** — : conduire en prison.
prisoner : prisonnier, -ière (*m.* & *f.*).
privilege : privilège, *m.*
probability : probabilité, *f.* ; **in all** — : en toute probabilité.
probable : probable, vraisemblable.
probably : probablement, sans doute.
proceed : provenir.
proceeding : moyen, procédé, *m.*
proclaim : proclamer, dénoncer, déclarer.
procure : procurer.
prodigality : prodigalité, *f.*
prodigious : prodigieux, énorme.
produce : produire.
profession : profession, protestation, *f.*
profit : profit, gain, revenu, *m.*
profit : profiter de.
profound : profond.
profusion : profusion, quantité, *f.*
progenitor : aïeul, ancêtre, *m.*
progress : progrès, *m.* ; **in** — : en voie d'exécution.
project : projet, dessein, *m.*
projecting : en saillie, *f.*
prominent : éminent, marquant, fort, saillant.
promiscuously : confusément, pêle-mêle.
promise : promesse, *f.*
pronounce : prononcer, déclarer.
proper : convenable ; —**ly** : convenablement.
property : propriété, *f.*
prophet : prophète, *m.*
propose : projeter, proposer.
prostration : prosternement, *m.*
protection : protection, défense, *f.*
proud : orgueilleux, fier ; **to be** — **of** : se montrer fier de ; —**ly** : fièrement, orgueilleusement.

prove: prouver, démontrer, donner une preuve ; **to — oneself**: se montrer.
provide: *tr.*, pourvoir, donner, procurer, fournir, munir ; **—d that**: à condition que, pourvu que.
providence: providence, *f.*
province: province, possession, *f.*
provision: provision, précaution, disposition, volonté, *f.*
Prussia: Prusse, *f.*
Prussian: *s.*, Prussien, *m.* ; *a.* prussien.
psalm-book: psautier, *m.*
public: public ; **—ly**: publiquement, en public.
publish: publier.
publisher: éditeur, libraire, *m.*
pull: tirer ; **to — down**: abattre, raser ; **to — out**: enlever, tirer, retirer ; **to — up**: arracher.
punch-bowl: bol à punch, *m.*
punish: punir, corriger.
purify: purifier, épurer.
puritan: puritain, *m.*
purity: pureté, innocence, *f.*
purple: pourpre.
purpose: intention, *f.* ; dessein, but, objet, projet, *m.* ; résolution, *f.* ; **for the — of**, pour, dans le but de ; **to this —**: à ce sujet.
purse: bourse, *f.* ; porte-monnaie, *m.*
pursue: poursuivre, suivre.
pursuit: poursuite, *f.*
push: pousser ; **to — into**: *intr.*, se précipiter dans.
put: *tr.*, mettre ; **to — in**: mettre en (dans), porter à ; **to — on**: revêtir, passer.

qualify: rendre capable, rendre propre, qualifier.
quality: qualité, *f.*
quantity: quantité, *f.*
quarter: quartier, *m.* ; **—s**: *pl.*, logement, quartier, *m.* ; **head—s**: quartier général, *m.*
queen: reine, souveraine, *f.*
quest: recherche, étude, *f.*
question: question, *f.* ; **to ask a —**: faire une question.
quick: vif, vite ; **—-whirling**: qu'un tourbillon emporte ; **—ly**: promptement, vite.
quiet: tranquille, calme, serein ; **—ly**: tranquillement, doucement, paisiblement.
quit: quitter.
quite: tout à fait, absolument, fort.

race: race, lignée, *f.*
rage: sévir.
rail: chemin de fer.
railway: chemin de fer, *m.* ; **—-station**: gare, *f.*
rain: pluie, *f.*
rain: pleuvoir.
raise: lever, soulever, hausser, élever, ériger, dresser, bâtir ; **to — an army**: lever une armée.
range: rangée, *f.* ; espace, *m.* ; **— of mountains**: chaîne de montagnes, *f.*
range: parcourir, planer sur, parcourir.
rank: rang, grade, *m.*
rank: fort, débordant, fertile, insigne.
rapid: rapide.
rapidity: rapidité, vitesse, *f.*
rare: rare, précieux ; **—ly**: *ad.*, rarement, guère.
rarity: rareté, *f.*
rather: plutôt, mieux, assez, un peu.
ratification: ratification, *f.*
ray: rayon, *m.*
reach: portée, atteinte, *f.*
reach: atteindre, toucher à, arriver à, gagner.

read : lire, parcourir, étudier ; **to — aloud** : lire (faire la lecture) à haute voix.
reader : lecteur, *m.*
reading : lecture, *f.*
ready : prêt, prompt, agile.
real : réel, vrai ; **—ly** : vraiment, en réalité, en vérité.
reason : raison, cause, *f.* ; motif, sujet, *m.*
reasoning : raisonnement, *m.*
rebuild : reconstruire, bâtir de nouveau.
receding : fuyant.
receive : recevoir, accepter, admettre, accueillir, subir.
reception : réception, *f.* ; accueil, *m.*
reckon : compter, calculer.
recognise : reconnaître.
recollect : se rappeler, se souvenir de.
recommence : recommencer.
recommend : recommander.
recommendation : recommandation, *f.* ; mérite, *m.*
reconcile : réconcilier ; **to — oneself to** : se faire à.
reconquer : reconquérir.
reconquest : reconquête, *f.*
record : histoire, *f.* ; registre, *m.* ; annales, *f. pl.*
recover : *tr.*, rattraper, regagner, reprendre ; *intr.*, se remettre.
red : rouge.
reduce : réduire.
re-embark : rembarquer.
refer : remettre ; **to — to** : faire allusion à.
reflect : *intr.*, réfléchir, penser, considérer.
refuge : refuge, *m.* ; ressource, *f.*
refuse : refuser.
regard : égard, respect, *m.* ; considération, *f.* ; **to have — to** : faire cas de.
regard : regarder, considérer.
regiment : régiment, *m.*
regimental : militaire.
regimental coat : uniforme, *m.*
region : région, contrée, *f.*
regret : regret, chagrin, déplaisir, *m.*
regret : regretter.
regular : régulier, réglé, véritable ; **—ly** : régulièrement.
regulate : régler, ordonner, diriger, gouverner ; **well —d** : bien pondéré.
reign : règne, *m.*
reign : régner.
reject : rejeter.
rejoice : se réjouir (de).
rejoin : répliquer, riposter.
relate : raconter.
related : associé, allié.
relation : relation, *f.* ; parent, *m.*
relationship : parenté, relation, *f.*
relieve : soulager, délivrer.
religion : religion, *f.*
religious : religieux.
remain : rester, demeurer, s'arrêter, continuer.
remark : remarque, observation, *f.* ; **to make a —** : faire une observation, réflexion.
remarkable : remarquable.
remember : se souvenir de, se rappeler.
remembrance : souvenir, *m.*
remote : éloigné, à quelque distance de.
remove : ôter, éloigner, retirer.
render : rendre, remettre, devenir.
renew : renouveler, répéter, réitérer.
renewed : nouveau.
rent : loyer, *m.*
repeated : répété, réitéré.
repent : se repentir.
replace : remplacer.
replenish : remplir, remplir de nouveau.
reply : réplique, réponse, *f.*
reply : répliquer, repartir, répondre.
repose : repos, *m.*

repose: *tr.*, reposer, mettre, poser, placer.
represent: représenter, décrire, prendre le rôle de.
republican: républicain.
repugnance: aversion, *f.*; dégoût, *m.*
repulsion: répulsion, *f.*
request: prier, demander, solliciter.
require: demander, avoir besoin; **to be —d**: être nécessaire.
requisite: nécessaire.
rescue: délivrance, *f.*
rescue: délivrer, secourir.
resemble: ressembler.
resembling: semblable.
reserve: réserve, *f.*; **without —**: sans réserve.
reserve: réserver.
resist: résister à, s'opposer à.
resolve: *tr.*, résoudre, expliquer, répondre; *intr.*, se résoudre.
resort: recourir, avoir recours à.
resource: ressource, *f.*
respect: respect, égard, *m.*; estime, vénération, *f.*; **in many —s**: sous bien des rapports; **in this —**: à cet égard; **in some —s**: sous quelques rapports, à un certain point; **to pay — to**: traiter avec déférence; **with — to**: quant à, par rapport à.
respect: respecter.
respecting: sur, quant à, à l'égard de.
responsible (for): responsable (de).
rest: repos, reste, *m.*
rest: *intr.*, poser, s'appuyer.
restore: restituer, rendre, rétablir, remettre, rapporter.
restrain: restreindre, limiter, réfréner.
result: résultat, *m.*; conséquence, suite, *f.*
retire: se retirer, s'éloigner.
retired: retiré, discret.
retirement: isolement, *m.*
retiring: discret, réservé, timide.
retreat: retraite, *f.*
retreat: se retirer.
retriever: chien rapporteur, *m.*
return: retour, *m.*
return: *tr.*, renvoyer; *intr.*, retourner, rentrer, revenir, répliquer, répondre; **to — to**: regagner (*tr.*); **to — "home"**: revenir au point de départ.
reverence: vénération, *f.*; respect, *m.*
reverent(ial): plein de respect, respectueux; **—ly**: respectueusement.
revive, *tr.*, ressusciter.
reward: récompense, *f.*; fruit, *m.*
reward: récompenser.
Rheims: Reims.
rich: beau, riche, opulent, abondant, précieux, magnifique; **—ly**: richement.
riches: richesses, *f. pl.*; opulence, *f.*
rid: **to be — of**: être débarrassé de.
riddle: énigme, *f.*; mystère, m.
ride: aller à cheval, monter; **to — through**: parcourir à cheval.
rider: cavalier, *m.*
ridiculous: ridicule.
right: droit, *m.*; prérogative, *f.*; privilège, *m.*; **on the —**: à droite.
right: *a.*, droit; *ad.*, droit, directement, justement; **on the — hand**: à droite; **to be —**: avoir raison.
rigid: inflexible, raide.
ring: sonner.
riotous: tumultueux.
rise: se lever, s'élever, se former, augmenter.
rising ground: élévation, éminence, hauteur, *f.*
rival: rival, *m.*
river: rivière, *f.*; fleuve, *m.*
rivulet: petit ruisseau, *m.*

road: route, *f.*; **high** — : grande route, *f.*
roar: rugir, mugir, tonner, gronder.
rob: voler, dépouiller, piller.
robber: voleur, *m.*
robbery: vol, *m.*
robe: robe, *f.*
rock: rocher, *m.*; roche, *f.*
rogue: coquin, *m.*
roll: rouleau, *m.*
roll: *intr.*, rouler, tourbillonner.
Roman: Romain, *m.*; romain.
roof: toit, *m.*
room: chambre, *f.*; appartement, *m.*; pièce, *f.*
root: racine, *f.*
rope: corde, *f.*
rose: rose, *f.*; — **tree**: rosier, *m.*; — **bud**: bouton de rose, *m.*
rough: grossier.
round: *ad.*, autour de, tout autour.
rouse: *tr.*, éveiller, attirer, exciter.
row: rangée, file, *f.*
royal: royal.
ruby: rubis, m.
rude: grossier, impoli, malhonnête, bruyant.
ruin: ruine, destruction, perte, *f.*; **in** — **s**: (tombant) en ruines.
ruin: *tr.*, ruiner, causer la ruine, démolir, perdre.
rule: règle, *f.*
run: *intr.*, courir, couler, passer, s'ecouler; **to** — **about**: courir çà et là; **to** — **along**: courir.
rush: s'élancer, se précipiter.
Russia: Russie, *f.*
Russian: Russe, *m.*; russe.
rust: rouille, *f.*
rustle: bruire.

sack: saccager, piller, dévaster.
sad: triste, mélancolique, sombre.
sagacity: sagacité, pénétration, clairvoyance, *f.*
sage: sage, *m.*
sailor: marin, *m.*
saint: saint, -e, *m.* & *f.*
St. Petersburg: Saint-Pétersbourg.
St. Petersburger: habitant de Saint-Pétersbourg, *m.*
sale: vente, *f.*
salute: saluer.
salvation: salut, *m.*
same: même, le même, la même, les mêmes.
sanctuary: sanctuaire, *m.*
sand: sable, *m.*
sapphire: saphir, *m.*
sarcasm: sarcasme, *m.*
satin: de satin.
satiric(al): satirique.
satisfy: satisfaire, contenter, donner satisfaction à.
Saturday: samedi, *m.*
saucy: gaillard, insolent.
savage: sauvage, barbare.
save: sauver, protéger, épargner, conserver.
Saxony: Saxe, *f.*
say: dire, parler, déclarer, raconter.
saying: proverbe, *m.*; expression, *f.*
scabbard: fourreau, *m.*
scaffold: échafaud, *m.*
scale: échelle, *f.*; **on a larger** — ; plus vaste.
scar: cicatrice, *f.*
scarcely: à peine; — **ever**; presque jamais.
scare: épouvanter, effrayer.
scarlet: écarlate.
scene: épisode, *m.*; scène, *f.*
sceptred: attaché au sceptre.
scheme: plan, projet, idée, *f.*
scholar: érudit, savant, *m.*
school: école, *f.*
science: science, *f.*; **cabinet** — : science de laboratoire.
scoff: railler.
Scotch: écossais, d'Écosse.
Scotland: Écosse, *f.*

scour : écurer, nettoyer,
scrap : fragment, petit morceau, lambeau, *m.*
scruple : scrupule, *m.* ; **tested to a — :** éprouvé à la coupelle.
scruple : hésiter, balancer.
sea : mer, *f.* ; — **-faring men** : marins, *m. pl.*
seaport : port de mer, *m.*
season : saison, *f.* ; **in — :** à temps, à propos.
seat : siège, *m.* ; chaise, demeure, situation, *f.*
seat : *tr.*, placer, faire asseoir.
seated (to be) : être assis, être placé.
secluded : retiré.
second : (deux), second, deuxième ; **—ly** : deuxièmement.
secret : secret, *m.*
secret : secret ; **—ly** : secrètement.
secretary : secrétaire, *m.*
secure : sûr, en sûreté.
secure : assurer.
security : sécurité, sûreté, tranquillité, *f.*
Sedan : Sédan.
see : voir, apercevoir, observer, remarquer.
seem : sembler, paraître.
seize : saisir, s'emparer de, se saisir de, attaquer ; **to — hold on** : saisir.
select : choisi, d'un goût exquis.
select : choisir.
selfish : égoïste.
sell : vendre.
senate : sénat, *m.* ; — **-house** : sénat, *m.*
send : envoyer, dépêcher, donner, renvoyer ; **to — back** : renvoyer ; **to — for** : envoyer chercher, faire venir, mander.
sense : jugement, *m.* ; raison, *f.* ; sentiment, *m.* ; opinion, *f.*
sensibility : sensibilité, délicatesse, *f.*
sentiment : sentiment, *m.*
separate : *tr.*, séparer.
separation : séparation, *f.*
September : septembre, *m.*
sequestered : écarté.
serene : serein, clair, pur.
serenity : sérénité, *f.* ; calme, *m.*
series : série, suite, *f.*
serious : sérieux, grave.
serpent : serpent, *m.*
servant : domestique, agent, *m.*
serve : *tr.*, servir, obéir à ; **to — for** : servir de, tenir lieu de.
service : service, *m.* ; **to do a — :** rendre service.
set : placé, posé, serré.
set : *tr.*, mettre, placer, fixer, poser, appliquer, se coucher (du soleil) ; **to — forth** : publier, exprimer, partir ; **to — in** : *intr.*, gagner, envahir (*tr.*) ; **to — off** : relever, ressortir.
setting ; monture, *f.* ; coucher (du soleil).
settle : *tr.*, fixer, établir, déterminer, régler ; *intr.*, s'installer ; **to — upon** : se répandre sur, reposer sur.
settlement : donation contractuelle, *f.*
seven : sept.
seventeenth : dix-septième, le dix-sept.
seventh : septième, le sept.
sever : séparer, diviser.
several : plusieurs, divers.
severe : sévère, fort, rigoureux ; **—ly** : sévèrement, rigoureusement.
severity : sévérité, rigueur, *f.*
sew : coudre.
shade : ombre, *f.* ; ombrage, *m.*
shadow : ombre, *f.* ; ombrage, *m.*
shaggy : poilu, velu, aux poils hérissés, épais.
shake : *tr.*, secouer, agiter ; *intr.*, trembler.
shall : **I — do it** : je le ferai.
shame : honte, *f.*

shape : forme, figure, *f.* ; aspect, *m.* ; **in the — of** : sous la forme de ; **nothing in the — of** : pas l'ombre de.
sharp : aigu, tranchant, effilé.
shave : faire la barbe ; **to be clean —n** : avoir la barbe entièrement rasée.
shed : *tr.*, répandre, verser, épancher.
sheep : brebis, *f.* ; mouton, *m.*
sheet of water : nappe d'eau, *f.*
shelf : rayon, *m.* ; tablette, *f.*
shelter : mettre à l'abri, défendre, protéger, couvrir.
shepherd : berger, *m.*
shepherdess : bergère, *f.*
shine : luire, briller.
ship : vaisseau, navire, *m.*
shipwreck : naufrage, *m.*
shoal : écueil, *m.*
shock : coup, *m.* ; secousse, *f.*
shooter : tireur, *m.*
shore : rivage, *m.* ; côte, rive, *f.* ; **on —** : à terre.
short : court, bref ; **a — time** : peu de temps ; **far — of** : bien loin de.
shout : cri, *m.*
shout : pousser des cris de joie, applaudir, crier.
show : ostentation, parade, pompe, *f.*
show : montrer, faire voir, indiquer, signaler, enseigner.
shut : *tr.*, fermer ; **to — up** : fermer, entourer.
shut in : clos.
sick : malade.
sickness : maladie, indisposition, *f.*
side : côté, *m.* ; **by the — of** : à côté de, aux côtés de.
sideways : de côté, obliquement.
siege : siège, *m.* ; **to lay — to** : assiéger.
sight : vue, *f.* ; spectacle, *m.* ; **to catch — of** : apercevoir (un instant).
sign : signe, geste, *m.*
sign : signer.
silence : silence, *m.* ; **to break —** : rompre le silence.
silence : faire taire.
Silesia : Silésie, *f.*
silk : soie, soierie, *f.*
silken : de soie, soyeux.
silver : argent, *m.*
silver : d'argent, argenté.
similar : semblable, analogue, pareil.
simple : brave, simple, naïf.
since : depuis, depuis que, puisque, parce que ; **long —** : depuis longtemps, il y a longtemps ; **many years —** : il y a bien des années.
sincere : sincère, franc.
sing : chanter.
single : seul.
singular : singulier.
sink : *intr.*, s'abaisser, retomber sur.
Sir : Monsieur, sire, *m.*
Sire : seigneur, *m.*
sister : sœur, *f.*
sit : *intr.*, s'asseoir, être assis, asseoir ; **to — down** : s'asseoir, prendre place ; **to — down to eat** : se mettre à table.
site : site, *m.* ; place, *f.*
sitting : assis.
situate(d) : situé, placé.
situation : situation, position, *f.*
six : six.
sixteen : seize.
sixteenth : seizième.
sixth : le six, sixième.
sixty : soixante.
size : grandeur, taille, *f.*
skeleton : squelette, *m.*
skin : peau, *f.*
skirmishing : escarmouche, *f.*
sky : ciel, *m.*
slake : étancher, apaiser.
slate : ardoise, *f.*
slavish : servile.
Slavonic : slave.

slay: tuer, massacrer.
sleep: sommeil, repos, *m.*; **to go to —**: s'endormir.
sleep: dormir.
sleeping: endormi.
sleepy: endormi.
slight: petit, mince, fluet, moindre, léger, faible; **—ly**: légèrement.
slip: *intr.*, glisser, couler.
slope: pente, déclivité, *f.*
slow: lent, tardif.
small: petit, bas.
smell: odeur, senteur, *f.*
smell: sentir, flairer.
smile: sourire; **to — grimly**: ébaucher un sourire macabre.
snow: neige, *f.*
so: ainsi, si, tellement, tant, aussi, comme cela, donc, c'est pourquoi; **— ... as**: si (aussi) ... que; **— as to**: de façon à; **— many**: tant.
sob: sangloter.
society: société, *f.*
Socrates: Socrate.
soft: doux, tendre, calme.
soften: amollir, adoucir.
soil: sol, *m.*
sojourn: séjour, *m.*
soldier: soldat, *m.*
sole: seul, unique; **—ly**: seulement, uniquement, entièrement.
solecism: solécisme, *m.*
solemn: solennel, pompeux.
solid: massif.
solitary: solitaire.
solitude: solitude, *f.*
solve: résoudre, expliquer.
some: quelque, un peu, du, de la, quelques-uns, certains.
somebody: quelqu'un.
someone: quelqu'un.
something: quelque chose, *f.*
son: fils, *m.*
sonorous: sonore, résonnant.
soon: bientôt, tôt, sans tarder; **as — as**: aussitôt que; **— after**: bientôt après, quelques instants après, peu de temps après, à quelque temps de là.
Sophy: Sophie.
sorrow: chagrin, *m.*; peine, *f.*
sort: sorte, espèce, *f.*; genre, m.
soul: âme, *f.*
sound: son, *m.*
sound: *tr.*, sonner, sonder.
source: source, fontaine, origine, cause, *f.*; **to take its —**: prendre sa source.
sovereign: souverain, monarque, *m.*
spacious: spacieux, vaste,
Spain: Espagne, *f.*
Spaniard: Espagnol, *m.*
Spanish: espagnol.
spare: épargner.
spasm: convulsion, *f.*; choc, *m.*
speak: parler, discourir, adresser la parole (un discours), prononcer; **to — out**: parler ouvertement; **to — with one**: parler avec qqn., parler à qqn.
speaking: parlant, expressif.
spear: lance, *f.*
special: spécial, particulier.
specimen: modèle, *m.*
spectacles: *pl.*, lunettes, *f. pl.*
speech: discours, langage, *m.*; paroles, *f. pl.*
spend, *tr.*, dépenser, employer, passer, dissiper.
spider: araignée, *f.*
spin: filer.
spindle: fuseau, *m.*
spirit: esprit, *m.*; âme, *f.*; (liquor) spiritueux, *m. pl.*; **high —s**: gaieté, *f.*; entrain, *m.*
spiritual: spirituel.
spite (in — of): en dépit de, malgré, quoi que.
splendid: splendide, magnifique.
splendour: éclat, *m.*; splendeur, magnificence, *f.*
spontaneously: spontanément, subitement.
sportful: gai, folâtre.

spot: lieu, *m.*; place, *f.*; **on the —**: sur-le-champ, de suite.
spread: *tr.*, étendre, déployer; *intr.*, s'étendre, se répandre.
spring: *intr.*, naître, descendre, procéder, s'élancer, sauter, bondir; **to — from**: sortir de; **to — up into**: se gonfler comme.
spy: espion, *m.*
square: carré, *m.*; place, *f.*
stable: étable, écurie, *f.*
staff: état-major, *m.*; **General —**: état-major, *m.*
stairs: *pl.*, escalier, *m.*
stake: poteau, bûcher, *m.*; **at —**: en jeu.
stale: vieux, moisi, caduc.
stammer: bégayer, balbutier.
stand: *intr.*, être debout, se tenir (debout), se dresser, s'élever, paraître, être situé, se trouver: **to — by**: soutenir, défendre; **to — open**: être ouvert.
standard: étendard, *m.*; bannière, *f.*
standstill (to come to a): s'arrêter court.
star: étoile, *f.*
start: *intr.*, se mettre en route, partir; **to — on**: commencer.
state: état, *m.*; condition, situation, *f.*
station: station, noblesse, distinction, charge, situation, position, *f.*; emploi, *m.*; gare, *f.*
statue: statue, *f.*
stay: *tr.*, arrêter; *intr.*, rester.
steady: ferme, solide, impassible.
steel: acier, *m.*; lame, *f.*
steel: en acier.
sterility: stérilité, infécondité, *f.*
stern: poupe, *f.*
stern: dur, sévère.
stick: bâton, *m.*
still: tranquille; **to lie —**: se tenir tranquille, rester tranquille.
still: encore, cependant, toujours, pourtant.
stimulate: stimuler.
stir: remuer, bouger.
stoicism: stoïcisme, *m.*
stone: pierre, *f.*; **— -headed**: à tête de pierre.
stop: *tr.*, arrêter; *intr.* s'arrêter.
store: provisions, *f. pl.*
storey: étage, *m.*
storm: orage, *m.*; tempête, *f.*
story: histoire, *f.*; conte, *m.*
stout: fort, gros.
strain: série, *f.*
strange: étrange, extraordinaire.
stranger: étranger, *m.*
stray: s'égarer; **to — from**: s'écarter de.
stream: courant, ruisseau, torrent, *m.*
street: rue, voie, *f.*
strength: force, vigueur, *f.*
stretch: *tr.*, étendre, allonger; *intr.*, s'étendre.
stride: marcher à grands pas.
strife: dispute, querelle, lutte, *f.*; combat, *m.*
strike: *tr.*, frapper, heurter, battre.
stroke: coup, trait, coup de rame, *m.*; **to pull —**: ramer comme chef de nage.
stroke: caresser, flatter.
strong: fort.
struggle: effort, *m.*; lutte, *f.*
student: étudiant, *m.*
stuff: matière, étoffe, *f.*
stump: tronc, *m.*
sturdy: brave, brusque.
style: style, *m.*
subject: sujet, citoyen, *m.*; **fellow —**: concitoyen, *m.*
subjugation: assujettissement, *m.*
sublime: sublime, élevé.
submission: soumission, *f.*
submit: *intr.*, se soumettre, se conformer; **to — oneself to**: se soumettre à.

substantial: réel, solide, vrai.
substitute: substituer.
succeed: réussir, avoir du succès.
success: succès, *m.*
successful: heureux, prospère.
such: tel, pareil, semblable.
sudden: soudain, subit; **—ly**: soudain(ement), tout-à-coup, inopinément.
suffer: *tr.*, permettre, souffrir, être puni.
suffering: souffrance, peine, calamité, *f.*
sufficient: suffisant; **to be —**: suffire; **—ly**: suffisamment, assez.
suggest: suggérer.
suite: suite, *f.*
sullen: chagrin, sombre, morose.
sum: somme, *f.*
summer: été, *m.*
summon: sommer, faire venir; **to — back**: rappeler.
sun: soleil, *m.*
sunbeam: rayon du soleil, *m.*
Sunday: dimanche, *m.*
sunlit: éclairé par le soleil.
sunrise: lever du soleil, *m.*
sunset: coucher du soleil, *m.*
sunshine: clarté du soleil, *f.*; soleil, *m.*
sup: souper.
superior: supérieur, insigne, le plus élevé.
superstitious: superstitieux.
supper: souper, *m.*
supply: pourvoir à, fournir, compenser, remplacer.
support: support, aide, appui, *m.*
support: soutenir, maintenir.
suppose: supposer, conjecturer, se figurer, imaginer, croire.
supreme: suprême, souverain, au-dessus; **—ly**: souverainement.
sure: sûr, certain, assuré; **—ly**: assurément, certainement.
surprise: surprise.
surprise: surprendre, attaquer subitement, étonner.
surprising: surprenant, étonnant.
surrender: abandon, *m.*
surrender: se rendre.
surround: entourer.
surrounded: enclos.
surtout: surtout, *m.*
survive: survivre.
swamp: marais, *m.*
sway: puissance, *f.*; pouvoir, *m.*; force, *f.*
sweep: balayer; **to — upwards**: s'élever au-dessus.
sweet: doux, joli, gracieux, aimable, ravissant, agréable.
swift: vite, prompt, rapide.
swiftness: vitesse, rapidité, *f.*
swim: nager.
sword: épée, *f.*; **at the point of the —**: à la pointe de l'épée; **— handle**: poignée d'épée, *f.*
sympathy: sympathie, *f.*
symptom: symptôme, indice, *m.*
system: système, *m.*

table: table, *f.*
tactician: tacticien, *m.*
take: *tr.*, prendre, saisir, s'emparer de, arrêter, emporter, voler, se munir de, accueillir; **to — off**: enlever, retirer, ôter.
tale: conte, *m.*; histoire, *f.*; **to tell a —**: raconter.
talent: talent, génie, *m.*
talk: parler, causer, raisonner, dire; **to — of**: ébruiter; **to — to someone about**: entretenir qqn. de.
tall: grand, haut.
tapestry: tapisserie, *f.*
target: targe, cible, *f.*
Tartar: tartare.
taste: goût, m.; mœurs, *f. pl.*
taste: goûter.
tattered: en haillons, en lambeaux, en loques.
tattler: babillard, *m.*

tax: impôt, *m.*; —-**gatherer**: percepteur, *m.*
tea: thé, *m.*
teach: *tr.*, enseigner, donner des instructions.
teacher: maître, *m.*; maîtresse, *f.*
tear: larme, *f.*; **in** —**s**: en larmes.
tear: déchirer, arracher; **to** — **off**: arracher.
tell: dire, conter, instruire, informer, parler, déclarer, raconter.
temper: tempérament, caractère, *m.*
temperance: tempérance, modération, *f.*
temperature: température, *f.*
ten: dix.
tenour: teneur, *f.*
tent: tente, *f.*
tenth: dix, dixième.
term. terme, *m.*
termagant: querelleux.
terrible: terrible, formidable.
terrify: terrifier, effrayer.
territory: territoire, *m.*
test: essayer, évaluer, éprouver.
testimony: témoignage, *m.*
text: sujet, *m.*
Thames: Tamise, *f.*
than: que, de.
thank: remercier (de).
that: *pr.*, ce, celui, celle, **ce . . . là**, cet, cette, que, qui; *c.*, que, afin que, pour que, de manière que; **so** —: si bien que, afin que, de sorte que; — **is**: c'est là, voilà, tel est.
thatch: chaume, *m.*
the: le, la, les.
theatre: théâtre, *m.*
thee: *pr.*, toi, te.
their: leur, leurs.
them: eux, elles.
themselves: eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes, se.
then: alors, après, ensuite, puis, donc, par conséquent.
theory: théorie, *f.*
there: là, y, en, cela; — **is**, — **are**: il y a.
thereat: y.
therefore: c'est pourquoi, pour cette raison, aussi.
thereupon: là-dessus.
these: ces, ceux-ci, celles-ci.
they: ils, elles, on.
thick: épais, gros; — (atmosphere): chargé de poussière, *f.*
thief: voleur, *m.*
thin: mince, maigre.
thine: le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, à toi.
thing: objet, *m.*; chose, affaire, *f.*
think: penser, méditer, considérer, examiner, juger, réfléchir, croire; **to** — **of**: songer à, trouver, se souvenir de; **to** — **over**: bien songer à, réfléchir à.
third: troisième.
thirst: soif, *f.*
thirteenth: treize, treizième.
thirtieth: trente, trentième.
thirty: trente.
this: ce, cet, cette, ceci.
thither: là, y, à cet endroit.
those: ces, ceux-là, celles-là.
thou: tu, toi.
though: quoique, bien que, quand même, en dépit de.
thought: pensée, réflexion, *f.*
thoughful: pensif, rêveur, soucieux.
thousand: mille.
threaten: menacer.
three: trois.
throne: trône, *m.*
through: à travers, par.
throughout: au travers de; — **the day**: pendant toute la journée.
throw: jeter, lancer, précipiter; **to** — **down**: renverser, jeter à terre; **to** — **loose**: jeter pêle-mêle.
thunder: tonnerre, *m.*; foudre, *f.*
thunder: tonner, gronder.

thus: ainsi, si, de cette manière.
thy: ton, ta, tes.
thyself: toi-même.
tide: marée, *f.*; cours, *m.*
tie: lier, attacher; **to — up**: attacher.
tie-wig: perruque nouée.
tile: tuile, *f.*
till: jusqu'à, jusqu'à ce que.
time: temps, intervalle, *m.*; fois, époque, *f.*; **at (in) this —**: à cette époque; **for a long —**: pendant longtemps; **at —s**: parfois, de temps à autre; **each, every —**: chaque fois, toutes les fois; **once upon a —**: une fois, un jour; **at the same —** en même temps.
tire: fatiguer, excéder, ennuyer.
tired: fatigué, accablé.
title: titre, nom, *m.*
to: à, au, de, à la, vers, auprès de, devant, pour, afin de, dans, en, envers, jusque.
toad: crapaud, *m.*
Toby: Tobie.
toe: orteil, *m.*
together with: avec, en compagnie de, ensemble, de compagnie.
tolerable: supportable, presque.
tolerate: tolérer, souffrir, permettre.
tone: ton, accent, *m.*
tongue: langue, *f.*
too: trop, aussi.
tooth: dent, *f.*
top: sommet, dessus, haut, *m.*
topic: topiques, *m. pl.*; sujet, *m.*
torrent: torrent, *m.*
torture: torture, *f.*
toss: enlever.
total: total, *m.*
touch: contact, *m.*
touch: toucher, atteindre.
touching: touchant, pathétique.
toward(s): vers, envers, à.
tower: tour, forteresse, *f.*; **the Tower**: la Tour de Londres.
towering: très-élevé, très-grand, majestueux.
town: ville, cité, *f.*
toy: jouet, *m.*
track: trace, *f.*; sentier, *m.*
trade: commerce, *m.*
trade: trafiquer, commercer, faire le commerce.
tradition: tradition, *f.*
traffic: commercer.
train: train, convoi, *m.*
trait: trait, *m.*
tranquil: tranquille, calme.
transact: *tr.*, arranger, négocier, traiter; *intr.*, se passer.
transport: transport, vaisseau de transport, *m.*
travel: voyager.
traveller: voyageur, *m.*
travelling: voyage, *m.*
traverse: traverser, parcourir.
tread: marcher.
treason: trahison, *f.*
treasure: trésor, *m.*
treat: traiter.
treaty: traité, *m.*; convention, *f.*
tree: arbre, *m.*; — **-top**: cime d'arbre, *f.*
tremble: trembler.
tremblingly: en tremblant, tout tremblant.
trial: essai, *m.*; épreuve, tentative, *f.*; jugement, procès, *m.*
tribune: tribun, *m.*
trident: trident, *m.*
trifle: obole, *f.*
trinket: bagatelle, *f.*; brimborion, *m.*
triumph: triomphe, *m.*
troop: troupe, *f.*; gens, *m. pl.*
tropical: tropical, tropique.
trouble: peine, *f.*
trouble: inquiéter, tourmenter.
true: vrai, véritable, sincère.
truly: véritablement, réellement, tout.
trumpery: friperie, *f.*
trumpet: trompette, *f.*

trunk: tronc, *m.*
trust: confiance, assurance, *f.*
truth: réalité, vérité, bonne foi, *f.*
truthful: véridique.
try: *tr.*, essayer, éprouver, tenter, (*leg.*) juger; *intr.*, essayer.
Turkey: Turquie, *f.*
turn: tour, *m.*; **by —s, in —**: tour à tour.
turn: *tr.*, tourner; *intr.*, tourner, retourner; **to — from**: détourner de; **to — into**: changer, transformer en; **to — out**: chasser, retirer de; **to — towards**: s'acheminer vers.
tutelary: tutélaire.
twang: son nasillard, *m.*; cacophonie, *f.*
twelve: douze.
twenty: vingt.
two: deux.
type: type, moule, *m.*
tyrannical: tyrannique.

ugliness: laideur, *f.*
ultimate: définitif.
unable: incapable.
unaccountable: inconcevable, invraisemblable, bizarre.
unaffected: simple, sincère, franc.
unbenignantly: sans bienveillance.
uncle: oncle, *m.*
unconsciously: *ad.*, sans s'en douter, sans le savoir.
uncork: déboucher.
uncovered: découvert; **to stand —**: se tenir découvert.
uncultivated: inculte.
undeniable: incontestable.
under: sous, au-dessous de.
understand: comprendre, entendre, concevoir, se faire une idée de.
understanding: entendement, *m.*; intelligence, *f.*; jugement, *m.*
undertake: entreprendre, se charger de.
unembellished: uniforme.
unemployed: désœuvré, oisif; **the —**: les oisifs, les désœuvrés.
unenclosed: sans clôture, *f.*
unfavourable: défavorable.
unfavoured: peu favorisé.
unfold: déplier, ouvrir.
unforced: libre, sans contrainte.
unfortunate: infortuné, malheureux.
ungracious: désagréable, déplaisant.
uniform: uniforme, égal.
union: union, alliance, *f.*
unite: unir, joindre, réunir.
universal: universel, général, entier.
universe: univers, *m.*
unjust: injuste, inique; **—ly**: injustement, iniquement.
unknown: inconnu.
unless: à moins que.
unnatural: dénaturé, guindé, surnaturel.
unnoticed: inaperçu.
unobtrusive: peu voyant, simple.
unpleasant: déplaisant, désagréable.
unproportioned: mal calculé.
unpunished: impuni, sans punir.
unspeakable: inexprimable, indicible.
unsuccessful: infructueux, malheureux.
until: jusque, jusqu'à, jusqu'à ce que.
unwillingly: involontairement.
up: en haut.
upon: sur, dessus.
upright: droit, équitable, intègre.
upstairs (to come): monter.
urge: presser, solliciter.
us: nous.
use: usage, emploi, *m.*; **to put to —**; faire servir à un usage; **what is the —?** à quoi bon? quel besoin y a-t-il?

use: faire usage de, se servir de, employer, user de.
useful: utile, avantageux, profitable.
useless: inutile.
usual: usuel; **as** — : comme à l'ordinaire.
utensil: ustensile, *m.*
utmost: le plus grand, extrême, dernier, profond.

vain: vain, orgueilleux, futile; **in** — : en vain.
Valencia: Valence, *f.*
valley: vallée, *f.*
valour: bravoure, *f.*
valuable: précieux, estimable.
value: valeur, *f.*
vanish: s'évanouir, disparaître.
variety: variété, diversité, *f.*
various: divers, plusieurs, quantité de.
vast: vaste, considérable, énorme, immense.
vaulted: voûté.
vegetation: végétation, *f.*
venerable: saint, vénérable.
Venetian: Vénitien, *m.*
Venice: Venise, *f.*
verdure: verdure, *f.*
verily: vraiment, certes.
very: vrai, réel, tout; *ad.*, très, fort, même, lui-même, elle-même.
vessel: vaisseau, navire, *m.*
veteran: vétéran, *m.*
vex: contrarier, vexer.
vice: vice, *m.*; faute, *f.*
vicious: vicieux, méchant.
victory: victoire, *f.*; triomphe, *m.*; **to get the** — : remporter la victoire.
view: vue, idée, notion, *f.*
view: voir, apercevoir, considérer.
vigorous: vigoureux, robuste.
vigour: vigueur, force, énergie, *f.*
village: village, *m.*
village: *a.*, de village.
villainy: bassesse, méchanceté, *f.*
vine: vigne, *f.*; — **-leaf**: feuille de vigne, *f.*
violence: violence, *f.*
violent: violent.
violin: violon, *m.*
virtue: vertu, qualité, *f.*
virtuous: vertueux, pur.
visible: visible, évident, clair.
visit: visite, *f.*: **to be on a** — : être en visite.
visit: voir, visiter, rendre visite. aller voir, faire visite, faire des visites.
visitor: visiteur, *m.*
voice: voix, *f.*
volume: volume, *m.*
voluminous: volumineux.

wages: gages, *m. pl.*; appointements, *m. pl.*
waggon: fourgon, *m.*
wailing: lamentation, *f.*; gémissement, *m.*
wait: attendre; **to** — **for**: attendre.
wake: *tr.*, éveiller, réveiller; **to** — **(up)**: *intr.*, veiller, s'éveiller, se réveiller.
Wales: Galle, *f.*
walk: traverser, passer par, marcher, se promener; **to** — **down**: descendre.
wall: mur, *m.*; muraille, *f.*
wander: rôder, errer, s'aventurer.
want: besoin, manque, défaut, *m.*
want: *tr.*, vouloir, avoir besoin de, désirer, chercher; *intr.*, manquer **à**, manquer de.
wantonness: licence, *f.*
war: guerre, hostilité, campagne, *f.*
warm: enflammé.
wash: laver, nettoyer.
waste: gâter, gaspiller.
watch: *tr.*, surveiller, épier, garder.
water: eau, *f.*

way : voie, *f.* ; chemin, *m.* ; moyen, *m.*; manière, *f.* ; sentier, *m.* ; **by the** — : chemin faisant, en passant, le long du chemin ; **that** — : par là ; **this** — : par ici.
we : nous.
weak : faible, affaibli.
weal : bien, bien-être, *m.* ; **public** — : bien public, chose publique.
wealth : prospérité, f. richesses, *f. pl.*
wear : *tr.*, porter, avoir ; **to** — **smooth** : lustrer.
weather : temps, *m.*
wedding : mariage, *m.*; noce, *f.*; noces, *f. pl.*
week : semaine, *f.*
welcome : *tr.*, souhaiter la bienvenue, saluer.
welfare : bonheur, bien-être, *m.*
well : *ad.*, bien ; **to get** — **again** : regagner la santé, guérir ; **as** — **as** : aussi bien que ; —! : *interj.* eh bien ! bon ! —**known** : bien connu ; —**being** : bien-être, *m.*, bonne marche, *f.*; —**dressed** : bien mis.
west : de l'ouest, à l'ouest.
westward(s) : vers l'occident.
what : *relat. pr.*, ce que, ce qui ; *interr. pr.*, quel, quelle.
whatever : quel que quoi que, tout ce que, tout ce qui, quelconque, tout.
when : quand, lorsque, tandis que, alors que.
whenever : quand, toutes les fois que, chaque fois que.
where : où.
whereas : au lieu que, tandis que.
wherefore : pour quoi, pour quelle raison.
wherein : en quoi, où, dans lequel.
whereupon : sur quoi, là-dessus.
wherever : dans (en) quelque lieu que, n'importe où, partout où.
wherewith : avec quoi, avec lequel, avec laquelle, de quoi.
whether : si.
which : *relat. pr.* qui, que, lequel, laquelle ; *interr. pr.* quel, quelle.
while : temps, *m.*
while : en, pendant que, tandis que, tant que, en même temps que, alors que, au temps où.
whilst : pendant que, en même temps que.
whimsey : fantaisie, idée folle, *f.*
whirlwind : tourbillon, remous, *m.*
whistle : siffler.
white : blanc.
whiteness : blancheur, pâleur, *f.*
whitewash : blanchir.
who : *pr. relat. & interr.*, qui, que.
whoever : quiconque.
whole : *a.*, tout, entier ; **on the** — : en somme.
wholesome : sain, salutaire.
wholly : entièrement, tout à fait.
whose : dont, de qui, à qui.
why : pourquoi, pour quelle raison.
wicked : méchant, vicieux.
wide : large, vaste, ample, loin.
widow : veuve, *f.*
wife : femme, épouse, *f.*
wild : sauvage, bouleversé, extravagant, fou.
will : volonté, *f.* ; désir, testament, *m.*
will : vouloir, désirer.
William : Guillaume.
willing : volontaire, disposé à, spontané ; **to be** — **to** : consentir à ; —**ly** : volontiers, de bon gré.
win : gagner, conquérir, vaincre.
wind : vent, *m.*
window : fenêtre, croisée, *f.*
windy : exposé au (battu par le) vent.
wine, vin, *m.*
wing : aile, *f.*
winter : hiver, *m.*

wintry: hivernal, hiémal, d'hiver, brumal.
wisely: sagement.
wish: souhait, désir, vœu, *m.*
wish: souhaiter, désirer, vouloir, avoir envie.
wit: esprit, *m.*; **man of —**: bel-esprit, homme d'esprit, *m.*; gens d'esprit, *m. pl.*
with: avec, de, par, parmi, près de, auprès de.
wither: flétrir, dessécher.
within: dans.
without: sans.
witness: *tr.*, être témoin de.
woman: femme, *f.*
wonder: étonnement, *m.*
wonder: s'étonner, se demander.
wood: bois, *m.*
wooden: de bois.
woody: boisé.
word: mot, *m.*; parole, *f.*
work: travail, labeur, ouvrage, *m.*
work: travailler.
world: monde, *m.*; terre, *f.*; hommes, *m. pl.*
worn: usé.
worse: *a.*, pire, plus mauvais; *ad.*, pis.
worship: adorer, vénérer, honorer, fêter.
worth: valeur, *f.*; prix, *m.*; **to be —**: valoir.
worth: valant, digne de; **it is not — while**: cela ne vaut pas la peine.
worthy: digne.
wound: blessure, plaie, *f.*
wound: blesser.
wrath: colère, *f.*; courroux, emportement, *m.*
wreck: naufrage, chaos, *m.*
wren: roitelet, *m.*
wretched: misérable.
write: écrire.
writer: écrivain, auteur, *m.*
writing: écrit, *m.*; écriture, *f.*; **—-table**: bureau, *m.*
wrong: faux, injuste, mauvais; **to be in the —**: avoir tort.

yard: aune, *f.*; mètre, *m.*; **church—**: cimetière, *m.*
year: an, *m.*; année, *f.*
yes: oui.
yesterday: hier; **the day before —**: avant-hier.
yet: encore, malgré cela, cependant; **as —**: déjà, encore.
you: vous.
young: jeune, nouveau, tendre.
your: votre, vos.
yours; le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres.
youth: jeunesse, *f.*; jeune homme, *m.*
youthful: jeune, frais, vigoureux, juvénile.

zeal: zèle, *m.*; ardeur, *f.*
zenith; apogée, *f.*
zest: plaisir, *m.*

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections of the book.

In the case of references to "Tolerations," see the Abridgment of the Grammatical Reforms of 1901 prefixed to this book.

I.—GENERAL INDEX, etc.

Accusative and Infinitive, 71.

Adjective, Agreement, 93-5; Compound Adjectives of Colour, 93 (note 2); Position of Adjectives, 96-8; Adjectives that generally precede, 97; Adjectives that generally follow, 98; two or more Adjectives qualifying same Substantive, 98, 4; Indefinite, 141-57; Ways of rendering Adjectives, 218-23.

Adverbs, Variable, 146; Position of, 189-96; followed by Inversion, 198 (iii); 199 (iii); Adverbs in *-ly*, 256; contained in French Verbs, 257.

Agent or Cause, 180.

Any, Anything: Affirmatively, 155; 171; Negatively, 156; after *if*, 157.

Article, Definite omitted after *tout*, 142 (note); Repetition of, 163; used in French but not in English, 167-9; Indefinite, 170; 172 (note); Partitive, 171-4; omitted after *en* and *de*, 167, 4 (notes 1, 2); before Substantive preceded by *de*, 173; in Enumerations, 174; Indefinite omitted, 186.

Auxiliaries, 7-13; *avoir* and *être*, 7; *avoir* or *être*, 8-10; Modal Auxiliaries, 60, 4; 83; of Reflexive Verbs, 86.

Be, rendering of, 249-53.

Can translated by *savoir* and *pouvoir*, 11 (note 3).

Cardinals for ordinals, 158.

Clauses, Noun, 201; Adjective, 202; Adverb, 203; Relative, 204; 226; Replaced, 227-9.

Collective Subject, 4, 6; agreement of Past Participle, 81.

Comparison, Inversion, 199 (v).

Comparatives followed by expletive *ne*, 184.

Concord of Subject and Predicate, 1-6; two or more Subjects with Singular Verb, 2; Subjects united by *ou*, *ni*, 3; Subjects different Grammatical Persons, 3 (iii).

Conjunctions, Final, 49; Consecutive or Final, 49 (note); Conditional, 50; Temporal, 51; Concessive, 52; Negative, 53; Repetition of avoided, 54.

Dates, 158 (i).

Dimensions, 159-61.

Enumerations, 169.

Gerund in *-ant*, 75; and Present Participle, 76; preceded by *tout*, 77; English Gerund, 240.
Get, rendering of, 255.
Government of Verbs, 14-19; Transitive Verbs in English to be rendered by Intransitive Verbs in French, 14; Intransitive Verbs in English rendered by Transitive Verbs in French, 15.

Have, rendering of, 254.

Infinitive, 60-72; Pure Infinitive, 60-64; Subject of *être*, 60, 1; Logical Subject of Impersonal Verbs, 60, 2; Nominative Complement, 60, 3; after Modal Auxiliaries, 60, 4; after Verbs of Motion, 60, 5; after Verbs of Wishing, 60, 6; after Verbs of Thinking, 60, 7; after Verbs of Assertion, 60, 8; in Elliptical Constructions, 60, 9; Infinitive with *à*, 65; as complement of Adjectives, 65, 2; as equivalent of Latin Gerundive, 65, 3; to modify Substantives and Adjectives, 65, 4; Adverbially, 65, 5; Infinitive with *de*, 66; after Impersonal Verbs, 66, 2; after Adjectives, 66, 3; for English Verbal Substantives in *-ing*, 66, 4; after other Prepositions, 67-9; after Compound Prepositions, 70; Accusative and Infinitive, 71; replaced by Subordinate Clause, 72; in Exclamations, 103, 9.
Intransitive Verbs in English rendered by Transitive Verb in French, 15; conjugated with *être*, 7; 79; used reflexively, 88.
Impersonal Verbs and Expressions denoting Desire, 45; Emotion, 46; Doubt, 47; Past Participle of, 89.
-ing, Verbal Form, rendering of, 238-45.
Inversion, 198–200.

Measure or Quantity, 172.
Might have, 11 (note 2).
Must, 11 (note 1).

Names of Sovereigns, 158.
Nominative Complement of *être*, 108; 119.
Numerals, 158.

Objects, Order of, 188.
Order of Conjunctive Pronouns, 101-2; of words in Sentence, 187–200; of Clauses, 201-4.
Ought, 11 (notes 1, 2).

Participle, Present, 73-7; Past, 78-89; distinguished from Verbal Adjective, 74; and Gerund in *-ant*, 76; Past Participle as Adjective, 78; Past Participle with *être*, 79; with *avoir*, 80-84; Past Participles of *voir*, *laisser*, *entendre*, 84; Agreement of Past Participle after *en*, 82; of Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs, 86-8; of Impersonal Verbs, 89; Present Participle, rendering of in French, 221-2; Past Participle, 223; English Present Participle, rendering of, 238-9; 244-5; English Past Participle, 246-8.
Passive Voice, Past Participle, 79; English Passive, rendering of, 237.

Possessive Adjective, replaced by Definite Article, 167, 5; by Definite Article and *en*, 167, 5 (note 2); expanded, 230.
Possessor, expressed by Dative Pronoun, 167, 5 (note 1).
Prepositions, repetition of, 162; rendering of in French, 258; lists of, 260-76; expanded, 277; terminating a sentence, 278.
Price, 167, 6.
Pronouns, 99–157; Conjunctive, 99–102; position of, used as objects, 101; normal order of, 101; governed by an Infinitive, 101, 5, 6; governed by Imperative Affirmative, 102; Disjunctive, 103; for Dative, 101 (note 4); Reflexive, *me, te, nous, vous, se*, 101 (note 2); *soi*, 104-5; Emphatic, 181; governed by an Infinitive depending on *faire, laisser, entendre, sentir, voir*, 101, 5; Indefinite, 104; Relative, 106-19; Interrogative, 120-32; Demonstrative, 133-40; Indefinite, 141-57; Personal Pronoun before Relative, 135; repetition of Personal Pronoun, 164-6; Personal, 175-82; rendering of, 224-5; Possessive, expanded, 230; Demonstrative replaced by Substantive, 233.

Repetition of words in French, 162.

Some, 171.
Stand, rendering of, 249-50.
Subjunctive, 42-59; in Principal Sentences, 42-4; in Subordinate Clauses, 45-59; with *que*, 45-8; with Compound Conjunctions, 49-53: introduced by Relative, 57-9; as Imperative, 42, 1; Optatively, 42, 2; 198, 1; Concessively, 42, 3; Imperfect Subjunctive concessively, 42, 3 (note); Pluperfect Subjunctive for Conditional Perfect, 41; Subjunctive after Verbs denoting Desire, 45; after Verbs denoting Emotion, 46; after Verbs expressing Doubt, 47; replaced by Future after *espérer*, 46 (note 3); used as Future, 48.
Subordinate Clause for Accusative and Infinitive, 71.
Substantives, used as Adjectives of Colour, 93 (note 2); in Apposition, 186; rendering of Abstract, 207; 213; 216; with Preposition, 208; 210; two Substantives united by *and*, 209; used as Adjectives, 211; Derivative and Compound Substantives, 212; names of Personal Attributes, 214; *man, woman* omitted, 215; Collectives, 216; Substantives repeated, 217; English Verbal Substantive, 241-3.

Tenses, Use of, 27-41; Historic Present, 27; Present and Imperfect for English Perfect and Pluperfect, 28; Imperfect for Conditional Perfect, 29; Imperfect and Past Definite, 30-31; Past Definite, 32; in Conversation, Vivid Narrative, 32; Past Anterior, 33; Future and Future Perfect, Conditional Present and Perfect for English Present and Past Definite, Perfect and Pluperfect, 34; Future and Future Perfect express Probability,

36; Conditional in diffident Questions and Statements, 37; after *si*, 38; Conditional after *quand*, *quand-même*, etc., 39; Conditional Perfect replaced by Pluperfect Subjunctive, 41.
Through, 77.
Transitive Verb in English rendered by Intransitive Verb in French, 14; used reflexively, 87; direct Pronoun Object of, 103, 10.
Translation, Hints on, 205-78.

Verbs, varying in meaning according to their Complement, 16; varying in meaning according to Preposition following, 17; of teaching, taking away, 18; Reflexive, 20-21; 86-9; used reciprocally, 21; Verbs Transitive or Intransitive in English, 20 (ii) (note); French Reflexive for English Passive, 20 (iii); 237, 3; Impersonal, 22; of Fearing followed by *ne*, 46 (note 1); 184, 2; list of Verbs followed by Infinitive without Preposition, 61; of Verbs followed by Infinitive with *à*, 65; Verbs followed by Infinitive with *de*, 66; Verb with two or more Subjects or Objects, 103, 8; of Hindering, 184, 4; of Denial, Doubt, 184, 5; rendering of Verbs, 234-55; of English Verbal Phrases, 235.

While, 77.
Words used in French but not in English, 167.
Would, expressing habit, 38 (note).

II.—FRENCH WORDS.

Aimer mieux, 60, 6 (note).
Aller, Auxiliary, 12.
A peine, with Past Anterior, 33.
Après que, 51 (note).
Après, with Infinitive, 67.
Assez de, followed by Plural Substantive, 4.
Assurer, 18 (note 2).
Aucun, 156.
Aussitôt que, with Past Anterior, 33; 51 (note).
Avoir, as Auxiliary, 7-10; Past Participle with, 80-84.

Beaucoup de, followed by Plural Substantive, 5.
Bien, position of, 189, 3.
Bien des, followed by Plural Substantive, 5; 172, 2, obs.

Cas (dans le — où, au — que), 39; 50 (note).
Ce, used for Personal Pronouns, 100; Demonstrative Adjective, 133; before *être*, 138.
C'est, 23-6, replaced by *ce sont*, 24, note 1; Nominative Complement of, 103, 5; expletively, 183; *c'est . . . que*, with Inversion, 199 (ii).
Ce . . . ici, ce . . là, emphatic before *être*, 139.
Ceci, cela, 140.
Celui, 135.
Celui-ci, celui-là, 136; 137.
Ce qui, ce que, 115; 117; 183, 3.
Ce que, Nominative Complement of *être*, 119.
-ci, for contrast and emphasis, 134.

Comme, 186, 6.
Commencer, 68.
Comment, position of, 196.
Condition (à — que), 50 (note).

De ce que, with Indicative, 46 (note 2).
Demi, agreement, 94; but see "Tolerations."
Depuis que, 184, 7.
Dernier, regarded as Superlative, 59 (note).
Dès que, with Past Anterior, 33; 51 (note).
Devoir, as Auxiliary, 11; 60, 4.
Dommage (c'est), 24 (note 2).
Dont, Relative, 110-11; replaced by *de qui*, *duquel*, 112.

En, with Gerund, 75; Agreement of Past Participle after, 82; as Pronoun, 101, 3, 6; for *de lui*, *d'elle*, etc., 103 (note); not translated in English, 179: Agent or Cause, 180; 225; = like, 186, 6.
Entendre, 62-4.
Entendu, followed by Infinitive, 84.
Epais, in Statements of Dimension, 160.
Et, between the Adjectives, 98, 4 (note).
Être, as Auxiliary, 7-10; with Past Participle, 79; with Reflexive Verbs, 86.

Faire, 60, 4; 62-4; Past Participle, 85.
Faut (il s'en —; peu s'en —), 184, 6.
Feü, Agreement, 95; but see "Tolerations."
Faire (*ne — que*), 13 (note); (*ne — que de*), 13; 257.
Finir, 68.

Habiter, 19.

Il est, 23.

-là, for Contrast and Emphasis, 134.
Laisser, 60, 4; 62-4.
Laissé, followed by Infinitive, 84.
Le, la, les, as Predicative Nominatives, 176.
Lequel, Relative, 109; replaced by *où*, 114; Interrogative, 132.
Le, Neuter, 177.
Loin (*aussi — que*), 52 (note).
Lorsque, with Past Anterior, 33; followed by Inversion, 199 (iv).
Lui, used Conjunctively for Emphasis, 103 (note).

Même, forms Emphatic Pronoun, 103, 4; Various Uses, 148-51.
Mil for mille, 158, obs.
Moi for *me*, 102 (note 1).
Moins (à —que), 184, 3.

Ne, to express Negation, 90-91; Obligatory, 90; Optional, 91; in Stereotyped Phrases, 92; Expletive with *le*, 177 (note 1); Expletively, 184.
Ne . . . pas, Position of, 189, 3.
Ne . . . que, with Direct Object of Transitive Verb, 103, 10.
Ni, Subjects united by, 3.
Ni l'un ni l'autre, 3 (ii).
Ni . . . ni, with Expletive *ne*, 184, 9.
Nu, Agreement, 94; but see "Tolerations."
Nul, 156.

Obéir, Intransitive used in Passive, 14 (note).
On, 153; 237, 2; l'on, 154.
Oser, with Auxiliary force, 60, 4.
Ou, Subjects united by, 3.
Où, used instead of Relative governed by Preposition, 57 (note); 114; Position of, 196.
Où que, with Subjunctive, 52 (note).

Par, with Infinitive, 68; referring to Payment by Time, 167, 6 (note).
Paraît (il—), 47, 2.
Pardonner, Intransitive used in Passive, 14 (note).

Pas, omitted, 91.
Personne, 156.
Persuader, 18 (note 2).
Peu de, followed by Plural Substantive, 5.
Plaisir (c'est), 24 (note), 2.
Plupart, followed by Plural Substantive, 5; 172, 2, obs.
Plus d'un, 5 (note).
Pour, with Infinitive, 69.
Pouvoir, as Auxiliary, 11; 60, 4.
Premier, regarded as Superlative, 59 (note); used in Dates, etc., 158 (note 2).
Profond, in Statements of Dimension, 160.

Quand, with Past Anterior, 33; = even if, 39; replaced by Inverted Imperfect Subjunctive 42, 3; Position of, 196; with Inversion, 199 (iv).
Quand même, 39; replaced by Inverted Imperfect Subjunctive, 42, 3 (note).
Que, with Subjunctive in Principal Sentences, 42, 1; Optatively, 42, 2; Concessively, 42, 3; Idiomatic Uses, 54-6; for *comme*, *quand*, *si*, 54 (note); for Compound Conjunctions, 55; for *sans que*, 55 (note); never omitted, 56; 107; Relative, 107; Nominative Complement to *être*, 108; for *où*, 114; Interrogative, 123; replaced by *quoi*, 123; by *qu'est-ce qui*, 124; by *ce qui*, 125; used for *pourquoi*, 126; for *combien*, 127; replaced by *lequel*, 132; Expletive, 185.
Quel, Interrogative, 120; Exclamatory, 186, 4; n'importe — 155.
Quel que, 52 (note); 152 (5); 200, 1.
Quelque (en — lieu que), 52 (note); 152 (1) (2).
Quelque . . . que, 52 (note); 152 (3); 200, 1.
Quelque chose, 157 (note), 1, 2.
Quint, 158 (note 1).
Qui que, 52 (note).
Qui, Relative, 106; *de qui* replaced by *dont*, 106, 110; Interrogative, 121; replaced by *qui est-ce qui*, 122; replaced by *lequel*, 132; Indefinite, 155.
Quoi, Relative after Preposition, 116; 118; 128; with *est-ce que*, 129; in Nominative, 130; in Accusative, 131; replaced by *comment*, etc., 131 (note); Indefinite, 155.
Quoi que, 52 (note).

Raison (c'est), 24 (note 2).
Re-, Verbal Prefix, 236.
Retourner, 19.
Rien, 156; 157 (note 2).

Sache (je ne — pas), 44.
Sache (que je —), Parenthetical, 44.
Savoir, as Auxiliary, 11; 60, 4; with *pas*, 91 (note).
Semble (il —, il me —), 47 (note 2).
Sentir, 62-4.
Seul, regarded as Superlative, 59 (note).
Si (= if), not followed by Future or Conditional, 38; followed by Pluperfect Subjunctive, 50 (note).
Si . . . que, 52 (note); 152 (4); 200, 1.
Soi, of Persons, 104; of Things, 105.
Sur, in Dimensions, 161.

Tel, Uses of, 141.
Toi, for *te*, 102 (note 1).
Tout, with Gerund, 77; as Adjective, 142; 143; as Pronoun, 144; 155; as Adverb, 145; 146.
Tout . . . que, followed by Indicative, 147; 200, 1.
Trop de, followed by Plural Substantive, 5.
Tu, Use of, 99.

(l)'Un l'autre, after Reflexive Verbs, 21.

Unique, regarded as Superlative, 59 (note).

Vaut (il — mieux), 60, 2 (note).
Venir à, 13 (note).
Venir de, 13; 257.
Voilà, — quel, 139 (note); in preference to *voici*, 140 (note).
Voir, 62-4.
Vouloir, as Auxiliary, 11; 60, 4.
Vu, followed by Infinitive, 84.

Y, as Pronoun, 101, 3, 6.

PRINTED AT THE BURLINGTON PRESS, FOXTON, NEAR CAMBRIDGE. ENGLAND.